

## 1. FOCUS ON: separable and nonseparable phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are either separable or nonseparable. Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to look at a phrasal verb and always know whether it is separable or nonseparable.

### Separable phrasal verbs

Separable phrasal verbs can be separated by their object. When the object is a noun, it is usually entirely optional whether the object is placed between the verb and the particle or placed after the particle. Both sentences below are correct:

I took my shoes off.

I took off my shoes.

However, when a pronoun is used instead of a noun, the pronoun must be placed between the verb and the particle:

I took them off.

I took off them.

But in one type of sentence, separable phrasal verbs must be separated — when the phrasal verb has two objects:

She put a blanket on.

She put on a blanket.

She put a blanket on the bed.

She put on a blanket the bed.

### Nonseparable phrasal verbs

Nonseparable phrasal verbs cannot be separated by their object:

He ran into a tree.

He ran a tree into.

Throughout this book, phrasal verbs that can be separated have three dots (...) between the verb and the particle.

### come from

1. come from p.v. When you come from a place, you were born there or lived there previously. When you come from a family or a social situation, your past experience helps to explain your present attitudes and behavior.

Mike comes from Alaska, so he's used to cold weather.

Jane had a difficult childhood. She came from a broken home.

2. come from p.v. When something comes from a source, that is where it originated.

The word "admiral" comes from an Arabic word.

The mechanic heard a strange sound coming from the engine.

### figure out

1. figure ... out p.v. [the object can be a noun or a noun clause] When you figure out something, such as the answer to a question, the solution to a problem, or why a person is a certain way or acts a certain way, you think about and succeed in understanding it.

Joe's so hostile all the time. I can't figure him out.

I looked everywhere for my keys, but I couldn't figure out where I put them.

**give back**

1. give ... back (to) p.v. When you return something to someone, you give it back.

Can I use your pen? I'll give it back after the test.

Timmy, give that toy back to your sister right now!

**look for**

1. look for p.v. When you look for things or people, you try to find them.

I looked for you at the party, but I didn't see you.

Excuse me, can you help me? I'm looking for 303 Main St.

**put on**

1. put... on p.v. When you place something on or apply something to your body, you put it on.

I put on my new dress before going to the party.

Eric forgot to put suntan lotion on, and now he's as red as a lobster.

2. put... on p.v. When you place something on or apply something to another surface, you put it on.

I put the book on the table.

Jerry put too much fertilizer on his lawn, and now he has to cut it twice a week.

3. put... on p.v. When you attach or affix something to another thing, you put it on.

The Wilson's put a new roof on their house last year.

I told the tailor to put red buttons on the dress he's making for me.

4. put... on p.v. When you put on weight, you gain weight.

Did you see Mike? He's put on so much weight that I didn't recognize him.

I need to go on a diet. I've been putting on a lot of weight lately.

5. put ...on p.v. When you organize or perform something for other people's entertainment, such as a play or a concert, you put it on.

The club put on a show to raise money for the party.

That opera hasn't been put on in more than 200 years.

6. put.. .on p.v. [informal] When you put people on, you kid or tease them.

You won the lottery? You're putting me on!

Don't put me on — tell me the truth.

put-on n. Something done with the intention of fooling or deceiving people is a put-on.

He didn't really win the lottery. It was all a big put-on to impress his girlfriend.

**run into**

1. run into p.v. When you are driving and hit another vehicle or something near the road, such as a tree or a telephone pole, you run into it.

Ali was driving too fast, and he ran into a telephone pole.

I was run into by a drunk driver.

2. run into p.v. When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you run into them. Bump into is the same as run into.

We ran into Karen and her new boyfriend at the supermarket yesterday.

I owe Frank \$300, so I hope I don't run into him.

3. run into p.v. When you unexpectedly encounter difficulties or problems, you run into them.

I thought it would be easy to fix my car, but I've been running into problems.

Janice ran into one problem after another at work today.

4. run into p.v. When the total of something grows to a large amount or number, it runs into that amount or number.

If you fixed everything on that old car that needs fixing, it would run into thousands of dollars.

The number of starving people in the country ran into millions.

### show up

1. show up p.v. When you appear somewhere, you show up. Turn up is similar to show up.

I was supposed to meet my sister for lunch, but she hasn't shown up yet.

Over a hundred people showed up for the news conference.

2. show up p.v. When something appears or becomes visible, it shows up.

It's hard to photograph polar bears because they don't show up well against the snow. The spots won't show up until the last stages of the disease.

### take off

1. take ...off p.v. When you remove something from your body, you take it off.

I was so tired when I got home that I took my clothes off and went straight to bed. Take off your shoes. You're getting mud on the carpet.

2. take ...off p.v. When you remove something from a surface, you take it off.

I took the book off the table. You need to take the old wax off the floor before you wax it again.

3. take ...off p.v. When you remove something from something it is attached or affixed to, you take it off.

Alfonso always takes the skin off chicken before he cooks it. After Jane took the flat tire off her bicycle, she put on the new one.

4. take ... off p.v. When you take time off from work or study, you do something different, instead of working or studying.

I can't work tomorrow. I have to take the day off for some tests at the hospital. Our company always lets us take the week between Christmas and New Year's Day off.

5. take off p.v. When an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air, it takes off.

Our plane took off an hour late because of the snow.

Put on your seat belt; we're taking off now.

takeoff n. Takeoff is when an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air. The takeoff was delayed because of the snow.

6. take off p.v. When a business or other organized activity becomes very successful, it takes off.

The new restaurant's business is taking off because it got a good review in the news-paper.

If this business takes off, we could make a lot of money.

7. take off p.v. [informal] When you leave suddenly or quickly, you take off.

After he found out the FBI was looking for him, he took off in a hurry.

This party's boring — let's take off.

8. take ... off p.v. When you reduce the price of something that is for sale by a certain amount, you take that amount off the price.

The sign in the store window said, "Every Monday take 10 percent off all marked prices."

The car dealer took \$2,000 off the list price.

EXERCISE 1 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

Example: Sergeant Jones is very strict with his children. He COMES FROM a military family.

1. After the police arrived, we \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.
2. Sales of air conditioners really \_\_\_\_\_ when the temperature got over 100 degrees last summer.
3. Megan \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of weight \_\_\_\_\_ when she was pregnant.
4. I'm going to install a new program tonight, and I hope I don't \_\_\_\_\_ any problems.
5. The invisible ink \_\_\_\_\_ only under ultraviolet light.
6. I was expecting 100 people at the party, but only around 50 \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Jane was lucky; she \_\_\_\_\_ a good family.
8. Be sure you \_\_\_\_\_ a coat of primer \_\_\_\_\_ before you paint the fender.
9. My cousin is so weird that even his mother can't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I don't feel well; I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ and stay home.
11. We were scared to death when we heard voices \_\_\_\_\_ the attic.
12. My son always forgets to \_\_\_\_\_ his coat before he goes outside.
13. I was surprised when our plane \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ our dog all night, but we couldn't find him.
15. Paul finally \_\_\_\_\_ my CDs after I asked him for them about a million times.
16. I'm not going to the party because I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ Janice.
17. The real estate agent said that our asking price was too high and that we should \_\_\_\_\_ at least \$10,000 \_\_\_\_\_ it if we want to sell our house.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ those muddy shoes before you come inside.
19. Sending my son to Stanford and my daughter to Yale is going to \_\_\_\_\_ some serious money.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ the ornaments \_\_\_\_\_ the Christmas tree isn't as much fun as putting them on.
21. You can't be serious — you're \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_!
22. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ a stamp \_\_\_\_\_ that letter before you mail it.
23. A special performance of The Nutcracker was \_\_\_\_\_ at the children's hospital.
24. The maid \_\_\_\_\_ the dirty sheets \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
25. Be careful! You almost \_\_\_\_\_ that truck back there.

EXERCISE 1 b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

Example: I can't figure out. (the answer, it)

I can't figure out the answer. I can't figure the answer out. I can't figure it out.

1. I finally figured out. (the instructions, them)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Give back when you are finished, (my tools, them)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. She put on. (her slippers, them)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. I took off. (my shoes, them)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The hurricane took off. (the roof, it)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 1c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

Example: I can't understand where my wallet is. What can't I do?

You can't figure out where your wallet is.

1. A lot of guests didn't come to the wedding. What didn't a lot of guests do?
2. Raul thought about the math problem, and he knows the answer now. What did Raul do?
3. The jet is leaving the ground and flying into the air. What is the jet doing?
4. In Question 3, what would you call what the airplane did?
5. Omar speaks Arabic because he was born in Egypt. Why does Omar speak Arabic?
6. We left Bob's house quickly. What did we do?
7. I met Uncle John at the baseball game today. What did I do today?
8. The source of the smoke was a window on the tenth floor. What did the smoke do?
9. You almost hit a tree while you were driving your car. What did you almost do?
10. Mr. Taylor attached his name to his mailbox. What did Mr. Taylor do?
11. I have to remove the flat tire from my car. What do I have to do?
12. We didn't have any problems cooking the turkey. What did we do?
13. I'm removing the dirty dishes from the table. What am I doing?
14. Sales of the company's new product were very successful. What did sales of the company's new product do?
15. Linda is trying to find her golf ball. What is Linda doing?
16. Susie's blue eyes aren't visible in this photo. What don't Susie's eyes do in this photo?
17. Jim always forgets to place salt and pepper on the table. What does Jim always do?
18. Bill didn't go to work last Friday. What didn't Bill do?
19. Sally returned Frank's camera. What did Sally do?

## 2. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and do, does, and did

Like ordinary verbs, phrasal verbs form negatives and questions with do, does, and did.

present tense questions

In the present tense, questions are formed with do (except when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing):

Why do I always fall for losers?

Do you sometimes doze off in class?

Do we ever give in to pressure?

How do these bottle tops come off?

When the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, does is used. Remember that the -s form of the verb is not used in questions:

Does this welding torch throw sparks up into the air?

present tense negatives

In the present tense, negatives are formed with do not or don't (except when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing):

I used to doze off while driving, but I don't anymore.

I think he has the flu because you don't usually throw up when you have a cold.

We don't usually fall for crazy stories like that.

If his dogs do not stay off our lawn, I'm going to call the dogcatcher.

When the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, does not or doesn't is used. Remember that the -s form of the verb is not used in negatives:

If Mark doesn't pull through, five children will be without a father.

Past tense questions

In the past tense, questions are formed with did. Remember to use the form of the verb:

I'm so embarrassed. Why did I fall for his lies?

Did the patient pull through?

How many times did he throw up?

Did we give in to their demands?

Did they hear about the explorer who was eaten by piranhas?

Past tense negatives

In the past tense, negatives are formed with did not or didn't. Remember to use the form of the verb:

I was really sick, but I didn't throw up.

You didn't fall for that nonsense, I hope.

He pulled and pulled, but the bowling ball did not come off.

We didn't hear about the half-price sale until it was too late.

I'm sorry. We tried everything, but she didn't pull through.

### come off

1. come off p.v. When something comes off, it becomes detached from what it was attached or fastened to.

Be careful with this old book. The cover's coming off.

That paint won't come off your hands unless you use turpentine.

2. come off p.v. When an event comes off, it is successful.

The party came off well. Everyone had a lot of fun.

The attack didn't come off the way the general planned it.

3. come off p.v. When you say "Come off it" to people, you are saying that you think something they have said is untrue or foolish.

It's 2:00 A.M., you come home smelling like beer, and you say you were working late at the office? Oh, come off it!

### **doze off**

1. doze off p.v. When you fall into a light sleep, you doze off.

I went to a movie last night, but it was so boring I dozed off.

If I have a drink at lunch, I'm sure to doze off at my desk.

### **fall for**

1. fall for p.v. When someone successfully tricks or deceives you, you fall for the trick or deception or you fall for it.

I feel like an idiot. The salesman promised me it was a real diamond, not glass, and I fell for it.

Your girlfriend told you that guy she was dancing with at the party was her brother? How could you fall for a story like that?

2. fall for p.v. When you suddenly feel a strong attraction to someone or something, you fall for that person or thing.

Jim met Sam's sister last week, and now he calls her every day. I guess he really fell for her in a big way.

When I saw this house, I fell for it immediately, and I made an offer the same day.

### **give in**

1. give in (to) p.v. When someone pressures or forces you to do something or allow something even though you do not want to, you give in.

My son drove me crazy asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally gave in.

The strike lasted for eight months, but the company never gave in to the workers' demands.

### **hear about**

1. hear about p.v. When you hear and learn information about someone or something, you hear about it.

Have you heard about the new Thai restaurant downtown?

I heard about the earthquake on CNN.

### **pull through**

1. pull through p.v. When you recover from a serious illness or injury, you pull through.

The doctor didn't think his chances were very good, but he pulled through.

Erik is very sick, but he's young and strong, so I'm sure he'll pull through.

### **stay off**

1. stay off p.v. When you stay off something, you don't walk or sit on it.

You kids can play in the living room, but stay off the Persian rug.

What can I do to get my cat to stay off the kitchen counter?



### throw up

1. throw up p.v. When people throw up, they vomit.

Alex was so sick that he threw up all over my shoes.

I feel like I'm going to throw up.

1. throw... up p.v. When something causes small particles of dirt, dust, or a liquid to rise into the air, it throws them up.

Be careful with that chain saw — It'll throw sawdust up in your eyes.

Don't stand too close to the fire; it's throwing up sparks.

EXERCISE 2a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Heather calls Tom every day. I have a feeling she's \_\_\_\_\_ him.
2. I went to the shoe repair guy because the heel \_\_\_\_\_ my shoe.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes after the movie started, and I missed the whole thing.
4. The bride drank too much champagne, and she \_\_\_\_\_ all over the best man.
5. I needed a car to go to the party, so I told my father I needed his car to go to the library to study, and he \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Uncle Fred's really sick. If he \_\_\_\_\_, it'll be a miracle.
7. I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. The coup \_\_\_\_\_ without any bloodshed.
9. I don't care if you beg me all night — I'm not \_\_\_\_\_!
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ your brother's accident last night. Is he all right?
- 11
11. Don't get close to the fire. It's \_\_\_\_\_ ashes and sparks.
12. Do you really expect me to believe a crazy story like that? \_\_\_\_\_ it!

EXERCISE 2b — Change the sentences to questions using do, does, or did.

*Example: Francisco usually dozes off after dinner.*

*Does Francisco usually doze off after dinner?*

The sick boy threw up.

Rosa falls for every boy she meets.

The tops come off easily.

The dog stays off the bed.

Erik heard about the new job.

EXERCISE 2c — Change the sentences to negatives using do not or don't, does not or doesn't, or did not or didn't.

*Example: Francisco dozes off after dinner.*

*Francisco doesn't doze off after dinner.*

1. I always give in to her demands.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor fell for the salesman's promises.
3. These machines throw up sparks.
4. The patient pulled through.
5. The plot come off as planned.



EXERCISE 2d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My mother told me not to walk on the kitchen floor. What did my mother tell me?
2. When Dan saw that new motorcycle, he decided he had to buy it no matter how much it cost. How did Dan feel about the motorcycle?
3. The students are so tired that they are starting to sleep in class. What are the students doing?
4. Nicole learns about everything that happens in town. What does Nicole do?
5. The meeting didn't happen the way I planned it. What didn't the meeting do?
6. You had an accident after one of the wheels separated from your car. Why did you have an accident?
7. You can ask a thousand times if you want to, but I'm not agreeing to your demands. What am I not doing to your demands?
8. My cousin made a lot of promises to me, and I believed them. How did I react to her promises?
9. Dr. Wood said Ted's disease is very serious, and she doesn't think there's much hope that he'll recover. What doesn't Dr. Wood think?
10. Timmy is very sick, and he was vomiting all night. What was Timmy doing all night?

EXERCISE 2e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 1. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 1.

come from      give back      put on      show up  
figure out      look for      run into      take off

1. Look what time it is! We have to be at work in fifteen minutes. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ right now.
2. I waited for Joe for three hours, but he never \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The maid \_\_\_\_\_ the dirty sheets and washed them.
4. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a job closer to home.
5. Potatoes originally \_\_\_\_\_ South America.
6. That's mine! \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now or I'm telling Mom!
7. They were killed when they \_\_\_\_\_ a truck.
8. The mechanic can't \_\_\_\_\_ what the problem is with my car.

### 3. FOCUS ON: three-word phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are not always composed of two words. Three-word phrasal verbs are composed of a verb and two particles: the first particle is normally an adverb, and the second a preposition. Like two-word phrasal verbs, three-word phrasal verbs are either separable or nonseparable:

I know it's been a long day, but do you feel up to playing tennis after dinner?

Jake always went in for fishing when he was a kid. It was nice to meet you, and I look forward to seeing you again.

I'm sorry I can't say yes about the motorcycle, but I have to go along with your mother's decision.

I've put up with these love handles long enough — next week I'm getting liposuction.

Mr. Baker tried to screw his ex-wife out of her share of the lottery prize.

You talk down to me like I'm some kind of idiot. Karen's nervous about the job interview.

She just wants to get it over with so she can stop worrying about it.

#### feel up to

1. feel up to p.v. When you feel up to doing something, you have the confidence or energy to do it.

I'm sorry to cancel, but I just don't feel up to going dancing tonight.

The top of the mountain is only 1,000 feet away — do you feel up to it?

#### get over with

1. get... over with p.v. [always separated] When you want to get something over with, it is because it is something unpleasant that you want to finish so that you can stop worrying about it or dreading it.

Let's fix both cavities today, doctor; I just want to get it over with.

I think it's better to get the exam over with first period than to be nervous about it all day long.

#### go along with

1. go along with p.v. When you agree with people or agree with what they are saying, you go along with them.

I understand your concern, Linda, but I have to go along with Maria on this matter.

What's my opinion? I go along with Omar.

2. go along with p.v. When you obey a rule or follow a decision, you go along with it.

Mrs. Taylor wasn't happy about the committee's decision, but she went along with it anyway.

I don't care what the boss says — I'm not going along with any changes that will mean longer hours for less money.

#### go in for

1. go in for p.v. When you go in for a certain activity, you like it and do it regularly.

Bryan really goes in for any kind of outdoor activity.

When I was a kid I went in for football, but I don't watch it much anymore.

#### look forward to

1. look forward to p.v. When you look forward to something or look forward to doing something, you are excited about something in the future because you enjoy it or because it will benefit you in some way.

It's been four years since my brother went overseas. I'm looking forward to seeing him again.

I look forward to an opportunity to meet with you in person.

**put up with**

1. put up with p.v. When you put up with something you do not like or are not happy about, you accept it and do not try to change it.

Her neighbors have loud parties every night, but she doesn't complain. She just puts up with it.

My husband said, "I've put up with your brother long enough!"

**screw out of**

1. screw... out of p.v. [informal] When you get money or something valuable from people in a dishonest way, you screw them out of it.

That con man screwed me out of my life savings.

Their sleazy son-in-law screwed them out of thousands of dollars.

**talk down to**

1. talk down to p.v. When you talk down to people, you use a tone of voice or an attitude that shows you think they are less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

I was furious about the way he talked down to me!

Bob hates Jane because of the way she talks down to him.

EXERCISE 3a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Thanks for inviting me, but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ card games.

2. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ my husband's smoking any longer.

I told him to choose between cigarettes and me.

3. I'm sorry, but I think your plan is a big mistake, and I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it.

4. Even though Mr. Watson is the richest man in town, he never \_\_\_\_\_ people.

5. It's been only two weeks since the tragedy. I'm sure they don't \_\_\_\_\_ going to the party.

6. If that crook thinks he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ 500 bucks, he's crazy!

7. The whole family's going to be here for Thanksgiving, and Mom is really \_\_\_\_\_ it.

8. I volunteered to give my speech first just so I could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Even if you don't like the rules, you have to \_\_\_\_\_ them.

EXERCISE 3b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jerry's brother-in-law talks to him like he's an idiot. How does Jerry's brother-in-law talk to Jerry?

2. Nicole can't work tomorrow, and she's nervous about telling her boss. What should Nicole do?

3. They paid \$5,000 too much for their house because the salesman lied to them. What did the salesman do to them?

4. Sally's going to fly in an airplane for the first time, and she's very excited about it. How does Sally feel about flying in an airplane?

5. The winters in Minneapolis are terrible, but you can't move or change the weather. What do you have to do?

6. Erik just got out of the hospital, and he doesn't feel strong enough to go back to work. Why can't Erik go back to work?

7. I thought the new policy was an excellent idea, and I agreed with it 100 percent. How did I feel about the new policy?

EXERCISE 3c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 2. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 2.

come off      fall for    hear about      stay off  
doze off      give in    pull through      throw up

1. Miguel told me he didn't steal my TV, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ his lies.
2. Jim is really sick, and he stayed home from school today. He \_\_\_\_\_  
twice last night.
3. After a few weeks, the gold on this cheap jewelry starts to \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He kept nagging and nagging, and I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If that cat doesn't learn to \_\_\_\_\_ the table, it will have to go.
6. After Betty's temperature got up to 105 degrees, we started to think she might not
7. The meeting was so boring that I \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ a country where people use big stones for money.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

#### 4. FOCUS ON: present and past continuous phrasal verbs

Like one-word verbs, phrasal verbs can normally be used in the continuous tense (also called the progressive tense) using the -ing form of the verb (also called the present participle) and a form of be:

The principal told me you'd been cheating on the test.

I've been going after my master's for nearly five years.

Which dictionary is he looking up the words in?

How will she be paying for her tuition bill?

The compass needle couldn't be pointing to the south.

We would be planning for a bigger crowd if the weather weren't so bad.

They should be wrapping the meeting up in a few minutes.

Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry for putting you to so much trouble.

##### **cheat on**

1. cheat on p.v. When you cheat on your sexual partner, you have sex or a romantic relationship with another person.

Sarah filed for divorce after she caught George cheating on her. Can you believe it? She was cheating on me with my best friend!

2. cheat on p.v. When you do something dishonest so that you can do better on a test, you cheat on the test.

The teacher caught Ali cheating on the exam.

If I didn't cheat on the tests, I'd never pass any of my classes.

##### **go after**

1. go after p.v. When you chase and try to physically stop or to attack people, you go after them.

A policeman saw him stealing the car and went after him.

Captain Morgan was ordered to go after the enemy soldiers.

2. go after p.v. When law enforcement officials try to prosecute people through a legal procedure, they go after them.

Federal prosecutors are now going after the top drug dealers.

The senator introduced a bill designed to go after deadbeat dads.

3. go after p.v. When a business tries to increase its profits by trying to increase its market share or its number of customers, it goes after them.

The tobacco company denied going after the teenage market.

The CEO said he wanted to go after new customers in China.

4. go after p.v. When you go after something, you try to obtain it even though it may be difficult to do.

Sofia went after a degree in accounting.

Todd trained for a year before going after the record in the 100-yard dash.

##### **look up**

1. look... up p.v. When you get information from a reference book, such as a word from a dictionary or a telephone number from a telephone book, you look the word or number up.

The teacher told the students to look the new words up in a dictionary.

I looked up his number, but it's not in the phone book.

2. look... up p.v. When you locate and visit people you have not seen for a long time, you look them up.

I was in Dallas on business, and I looked up Dan Jones, my old college roommate.

If you're ever in Kempton, look me up.

3. look up p.v. When a situation is looking up or starting to look up, it is improving.

Business was pretty bad for a while, but things are starting to look up. I'm much happier than I was last year.

Things are looking up.

### **pay for**

1. pay... for p.v. When you give someone money in exchange for something, you pay for it or pay someone for it.

Can I pay for this stuff with a credit card?

Alfonso paid the waiter for his dinner.

paid for part.adj. After you have paid for something, it is paid for. My car is old, but at least it's paid for.

2. pay for p.v. When you are punished for something, you pay for what you have done.

I caught the guy who's spreading these false rumors about me, and he paid for ruining my reputation. Young people think that drugs are harmless, but they'll pay for their foolishness someday.

### **plan for**

1. plan for p.v. When you make preparations for something in the future, you plan for it.

The festival was a disaster because they didn't plan for such a huge crowd.

It's never too early to start planning for retirement.

### **point to**

1. point to p.v. When you indicate people or things with your hand or a finger, you point to them. When an arrow or a sign indicates something, it points to it.

The waitress couldn't hear me, so I pointed to my empty glass and she understood. The prosecutor asked, "Can you point to the man you saw carrying the gun?"

2. point to p.v. When a situation or occurrence causes you to consider something else, it points to that thing.

These terrible test scores point to a need for some major changes in our educational system.

The fact that all the people with food poisoning ate tuna salad sandwiches pointed to contaminated mayonnaise as the source of the illness.

### **put to**

1. put... to p.v. When you confront people with a difficult or thought-provoking question, accusation, or proposition, you put it to them.

He didn't want to tell me the truth, but I really put it to him, and he finally told me the whole story.

When Prof. Kline put his theory to me like that, I realized what he was talking about.

2. put... to p.v. When you put people to trouble or put them to an expense, you cause them to do extra work or to spend money.

Thanks for helping me with my flat tire. I'm sorry to put you to so much trouble.

I know my father would pay my dental bill if I asked him, but I hate to put him to such an expense.

3. put ...to p.v. When you put part of your body or something in your hand to something, you touch or press it to something.

The neighbors were arguing again, so we put our ears to the wall to try to hear what they were saying.

When he put a gun to my head, I realized he wasn't joking.

**wrap up**

1. wrap... up p.v. When you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, you wrap it up.

I have to wrap this gift up before I go to the party.

The movers wrapped up the china with newspapers.

wrapped up part.adj. After you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, it is wrapped up.

2. wrap... up p.v. When you conclude an event that has been happening for some time, you wrap it up. Wind up is similar to wrap up.

We wrapped up the meeting around 4:00 and went home.

The salesman blabbered for two hours before I finally told him to wrap it up.

EXERCISE 4a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. It's 12:30. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ this meeting \_\_\_\_\_ and goto lunch.
2. There was no way he could deny his guilt after the prosecutor \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
3. The high crime rate \_\_\_\_\_ a need for more police officers.
4. You'll \_\_\_\_\_ what you did to me if it's the last thing I ever do!
5. The principal gave a zero to each of the students who \_\_\_\_\_ the test.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ my ear \_\_\_\_\_ the wall to try to hear what Sally was saying about me.
7. Mike is \_\_\_\_\_ the words \_\_\_\_\_ in the dictionary.
8. The police officers \_\_\_\_\_ the robbers, but they didn't catch them.
9. Linda told Ned that she would divorce him if he ever \_\_\_\_\_ her again.
10. Yes, it was quite a surprise — we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ twins.
11. We saw an arrow \_\_\_\_\_ the door at the end of the hallway.
12. After she won the silver medal, she \_\_\_\_\_ the gold.
13. Most insurance companies won't \_\_\_\_\_ plastic surgery.
14. I returned to my hometown for the first time in forty years and \_\_\_\_\_ my first girlfriend.
15. The guy in the seafood store \_\_\_\_\_ the fish \_\_\_\_\_ in old newspapers.
16. The FBI is \_\_\_\_\_ major drug smugglers.
17. These last six months have been difficult for Sally, but now things are starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
18. The company started in California, but now it's \_\_\_\_\_ customers all over the country.
19. You \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trouble to help you move your piano, and you didn't even say thank you.

EXERCISE 4b — Write sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I was looking up in the dictionary, (a word, it) \_\_\_\_\_
2. I was in Boston looking up. (some old army buddies, them) \_\_\_\_\_
3. Dad's upstairs wrapping up. (Mom's birthday present, it) \_\_\_\_\_
4. The committee is wrapping up. (their discussion, it) \_\_\_\_\_



EXERCISE 4c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. He showed me where the bathroom was with his finger. What did he do?
2. We're preparing for 300 wedding guests. What are we doing?
3. The situation is getting better. What is the situation doing?
4. The little boy ran away, and his father chased him and tried to catch him. What did the father do?
5. Sofia is going to try to break the record in the high jump. What is Sofia going to try to do?
6. Tom did a lot of work to get his guest bedroom ready for me when I visited him. What did I do to Tom?
7. I'm giving money to the cashier for the book I want to buy. What am I doing?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the book after I give the money to the cashier?
9. The people in the meeting are concluding the meeting. What are they doing?
10. When Rosa was in New Orleans, she looked for and visited a childhood friend. What did Rosa do to her friend?
11. Jim asked you a really difficult question. What did Jim do to you?
12. Megan is trying to find Erik's telephone number in a telephone book. What is Megan doing?
13. Tom is married, but he slept with another woman. What did Tom do to his wife?

EXERCISE 4d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

come from, 2    figure out, 1    hear about, 2    pull through, 2  
fall for, 2    give in, 1    look for, 1    show up, 1

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ your mother on our first date, and we got married three months later.
2. Carmen's family \_\_\_\_\_ Michoacan around twenty years ago.
3. Paul was supposed to meet us at 8:00, but he never \_\_\_\_\_.
4. These instructions don't make any sense at all. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
5. After Aunt Mary's stroke, her chances didn't look good, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My daughter begged me to let her get her ears pierced, and I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
7. My father was listening to the radio, and he said he \_\_\_\_\_ a new car that runs on water. I spent two hours \_\_\_\_\_ the remote control before I found it.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 5. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-word phrasal verbs

### Nonseparable phrasal verbs

Intransitive nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that do not allow an object) are usually accented on the particle:

The barn got hit by lightning, and it burned **DOWN**.

Ned drank so much that he passed **OUT** on the bathroom floor.

Transitive nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that require an object) are usually accented on the verb:

Hank's been **CHEATING** on his wife for years.

I told the teacher my dog ate my homework, but she didn't **FALL** for it.

### Separable phrasal verbs

Separable phrasal verbs (which are always transitive) are usually accented on the particle:

The British soldiers tried to burn **DOWN** the White House.

The teacher passed them **OUT**.

As the examples above show, a single phrasal verb can belong to more than one category depending on its meaning.

### break down

1. breakdown p.v. When something mechanical breaks down, it does not function.

I was late for work because my car broke down.

This photocopier is a piece of junk — it breaks down every day.

broken-down part.adj. When something is old, in bad condition, or not functioning properly, it is broken-down.

My car is a broken-down piece of junk.

breakdown n. A breakdown is a situation in which something mechanical has broken down.

After that last breakdown, I decided it was time for a new car.

2. breakdown p.v. When an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage breaks down, one or more persons involved is not cooperating or participating because of a disagreement or problem.

After he started drinking heavily, their marriage started to break down.

The peace negotiations broke down because neither side was willing to compromise.

breakdown n. A situation in which an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage has broken down is a breakdown.

Neither side would give an inch, and there was a breakdown in the negotiations.

3. breakdown p.v. When you break down, you lose self-control and become emotionally or mentally confused.

When the judge sentenced Jones to life in prison, he broke down and begged for mercy.

Tom breaks down whenever he thinks of the tragedy.

breakdown n. A situation in which someone has broken down and is very upset or confused is a breakdown.

Marvin had a complete mental breakdown and started to see invisible people.

4. break down p.v. When something decomposes or reduces to its smallest parts or is reduced by someone to its smallest parts, it breaks down.

After the poison breaks down, it's quite harmless.

Anticoagulant drugs are used to break down blood clots.

5. break... down p.v. When you reduce a process, situation, problem, plan, or idea to its basic parts to make it easier to understand, you break it down.

The professor's plan seemed really complicated, but after he broke it down for us, we understood it a little better.

If you break the manufacturing process down into steps, it's easier to train new workers.

6. break ... down p.v. When you use force to go through a door that is locked, you break it down.

The police broke the door down and arrested the bank robbers.

A door had to be broken down to rescue the people trapped by the fire.

### **burn down**

1. burn ... down p.v. When a building or other structure burns down or someone burns it down, it is completely destroyed by fire.

Though most of Chicago burned down in 1871, a few buildings survived.

The owner was arrested for deliberately burning his factory down.

### **call in**

1. call in p.v. When you call your place of employment to say you cannot work that day because you are sick, you call in or call in sick.

The manager was angry when her secretary called in three days in a row.

Calling in sick too often is a good way to get fired.

2. call... in p.v. When you request the help of people or of an organization with more experience, power, or knowledge to help with a problem or difficult project, you call them in.

When the local police couldn't handle the riot, the National Guard was called in.

The local police chief considered calling the FBI in to help solve the crime.

### **find out**

1. find ... out p.v. [not usually separated — the object can be a noun, a noun clause, or a complete sentence]

When you find out information or a fact, you learn or become aware of that information or fact.

If you don't know when the movie starts, look in the newspaper to find out.

I met a nice man at the party, but I never found out his name.

I met a nice man at the party, but I never found out what his name was.

I was surprised when I found out that he can speak fourteen languages.

I was surprised when I found out he can speak fourteen languages.

I tried to get the information, but I couldn't find it out.

### **hand back**

1. hand... back (to) p.v. When you return things to people by holding them in your hand and extending your arm, you hand them back or hand them back to them.

The teacher will hand the tests back in third period.

The guard handed my ID card back to me.

### **look at**

1. look at p.v. When you focus your eyes on people or things, you look at them.

I looked at her and told her I loved her.

Look at me when I talk to you!

2. look at p.v. When you examine something or a situation and decide what to do about it, you look at it.

The mechanic looked at my car but couldn't find anything wrong with it.

Your finger might be broken; you should have Dr. Smith look at it.

3. look at p.v. When you think a certain way or have an opinion about something, that is the way you look at it.

The way I look at it, Congress is to blame for this mess, not the President.

What should be done about this situation depends on how you look at it.

4. look at p.v. [informal — always continuous] When you say that people are looking at an amount of money or a length of time, you mean that this is how much they think something will cost or how long something will take. That was a serious injury. You're looking at months and months of physical therapy.  
Putting a new roof on this house isn't going to be cheap. You're looking at at least \$15,000.

### pile up

1. pile... up p.v. When things increase in number and start to form a pile, they pile up. When people add things to a pile, they pile them up.

The snow piled up so high that I couldn't open my door. In the fall we pile the dead leaves up in the driveway and burn them.

piled up part.adj. When things are in a pile, they are piled up.

A lot of dirty laundry is piled up in the basement.

2. pile up p.v. When work or something else that must be done increases faster than you can do it, it piles up.

I'm really worried about money. My bills are piling up faster than I can pay them.

My work really piled up while I was on vacation.

### setup

1. set... up p.v. When you arrange the parts of something so that they are in their proper position and can function, you set it up.

The kids got a swing set for Christmas, and Dad had to set it up in the snow.

When you're camping, be sure to set your tent up before it gets dark.

set up part.adj. After the parts of something are in their proper position and function properly, they are set up.

The party is starting in one hour. Are the tables set up?

setup n. A collection or arrangement of parts or equipment necessary for a certain procedure or task is a setup.

The nurse prepared setups for the hospital emergency room.

2. set... up p.v. When you plan and organize an activity or project, you set it up.

I set up a 4:00 meeting with Jones and his lawyer.

Setting up a meeting of all fifty governors took a lot of planning.

set up part.adj. When an activity or project is planned, arranged, or organized, it is set up.

The arrangements for the wedding were very complicated, but everything is set up now.

setup n. How an activity or project is planned or arranged is the setup. What's the setup for the Fourth of July picnic?

3. set... up p.v. [informal] When you commit a crime but make it appear that another, innocent person is guilty of the crime, you set the innocent person up.

Joe robbed the bank and tried to set me up by leaving some of the stolen money in my apartment and then telling the police about it. The detective didn't believe me when I told him I was set up.

setup n. [informal] An attempt by someone to make it appear that an innocent person is guilty of a crime is a setup.

I told the detective it was a setup and that I could prove I had been at the racetrack when the bank was robbed.

EXERCISE 5a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When he heard that his brother had been killed, he \_\_\_\_\_ and cried.

2. We're expecting company. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the card table in the dining room?

3. Can you help wash the dishes, please? They're really beginning to \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I gave the cashier my credit card, and then she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
5. I don't know the answer, but I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We were very busy at work today. Two people \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
7. Raul \_\_\_\_\_ his watch and told me he had to leave.
8. My car is a real piece of junk. It \_\_\_\_\_ at least once a week.
9. I'm a little confused about your theory. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for me?
10. I'll tell the judge that I'm innocent and that Ned Kelly \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Hey, any way you \_\_\_\_\_ it, one thing's for sure — we have to get more crooks off the streets and into the jails.
12. This is the FBI — open the door or we'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!
13. Maybe I can fix your computer. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it after dinner.
14. The family doctor has never seen a case of malaria before, so he is \_\_\_\_\_ a specialist.
15. Some chemical compounds start to \_\_\_\_\_ after only a few hours.
16. The arsonist tried to \_\_\_\_\_ several houses in the neighborhood.
17. The secretary is \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting.
18. The civil war started again after the peace talks \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Jim buys a newspaper every day, but he never puts it in the garbage when he is finished. Newspapers are slowly \_\_\_\_\_ in his basement.
20. The mechanic said, "To fix a car after an accident that bad, I'd say you're \_\_\_\_\_ at least \$4,000."

EXERCISE 5b — Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 5a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.

EXERCISE 5c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The firefighters broke down. (the door, it) \_\_\_\_\_
2. They burned down, (the old barn, it) \_\_\_\_\_
3. He called in. (Dr. Shapiro, her) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Our teacher handed back. (the papers, them) \_\_\_\_\_
5. I set up. (the ironing board, it) \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 5d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jane arranged a baby shower. What did she do?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the baby shower after Jane arranged it?
3. I get magazines in the mail faster than I can read them. What are my magazines doing?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe my magazines?
5. Todd returned the pen to Mark. What did Todd do?
6. Uncle Fred's car had a mechanical problem, and it stopped running. What did it do?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe Uncle Fred's car?
8. In Question 6, what did Uncle Fred have?
9. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the soldiers do?
10. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the building do?
11. When the detective told Jake he could get the death penalty, he became very nervous and upset. What did Jake do?

12. In Question 11, what did Jake have?
13. The boss was angry because you didn't call to say that you were sick and couldn't work. Why was the boss angry?
14. Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use. What did she do to her computer?
15. In Question 14, after Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use, how would you describe it?
16. The door was locked, but Hank forced it open and got inside. What did Hank do?
17. I learned that Ali's excuse was a big lie. What did I do?

EXERCISE 5e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

come off, 2

feel up to, 3

get over with, 3

go along with, 3 go in for, 3

look forward to, 3 put up with, 3

stay off, 2 talk down to, 3 throw up, 2

1. Her husband is a real jerk. How does she \_\_\_\_\_ him?
2. I wasn't sure if Charles \_\_\_\_\_ going scuba diving again so soon after the shark attack.
3. I'm telling you for the last time! \_\_\_\_\_ the grass!
4. Can you help me with this jar? The top won't \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I've never been to Italy, and I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ going there.
6. I'm sorry I can't agree with you Dad, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ Mom.
7. When I had food poisoning I \_\_\_\_\_ all night long.
8. You can be sure Paul will take his vacation out west. He really \_\_\_\_\_ outdoor stuff like camping and mountain climbing.
9. Can you believe the nerve of that guy in the meeting yesterday? He \_\_\_\_\_ me as if I was the stupidest guy on Earth!
10. I'm tired of arguing about the divorce settlement. I just want to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

#### 6. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs

The pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs is generally quite simple: the second, or middle, particle is accented regardless of whether the phrasal verb is separable or inseparable:

I think I've come UP with an answer to your problem.

The detective didn't get any information OUT of him.

#### boil down to

1. boil down to p.v. When you say that something boils down to something else, you are saying that it is the basic cause of a more complicated situation or problem.

Most of the crime in this city boils down to drugs.

My decision to stay at this awful job boils down to one thing — money.



**come down with**

1. come down with p.v. When you are starting to get sick, you are coming down with something or coming down with an illness.

I don't feel well. Maybe I'm coming down with something.

My grandmother said, "If you don't wear an undershirt, you'll come down with pneumonia."

**come up with**

1. come up with p.v. When you think of an idea, plan, or solution, you come up with it.

It took me all night, but I came up with the answer.

Lydia wants to come up with a great idea for the party.

**get around to**

1. get around to p.v. When you do something after waiting for some time because you are lazy, inefficient, or do not want to do it, you get around to it.

I didn't get around to doing my taxes until April 14.

Don't worry about the broken window. I'll get around to it one of these days.

**get out of**

1. get out of p.v. When you get out of something or get out of doing something you must do but do not want to do, you find a way to avoid it.

Sam got out of gym class by pretending to be sick.

The boss wants me to work a double shift, but I'll get out of it.

I got out of going to church with my parents by pretending to be sick.

2. get... out of p.v. If an activity gives you pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit, you get pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit out of it.

I sat through that boring class for three months and didn't learn a thing. I didn't get anything out of it.

The judge didn't get any pleasure out of imposing such a harsh penalty.

3. get... out of p.v. When you use force, pressure, or deceit to get something, such as information or money, from people, you get it out of them.

They tortured him for days, but they couldn't get any information out of him.

It took me a while, but I got the whole story out of her.

**go back on**

1. go back on p.v. When you make a promise, but you do not do what you promised to do, you go back on your promise.

I promised to take my son to a baseball game, and I'm not going back on my word.

The President went back on his pledge not to raise taxes.

**go through with**

1. go through with p.v. When you do something that you have decided to do even though it may be dangerous or unpleasant or others may object, you go through with it.

The spokeswoman said the company would go through with its plan to move the company to Mexico.

Despite his family's opposition, Erik went through with his decision to quit his job and start his own business.



**monkey around with**

1. monkey around with p.v. [informal] When you adjust or try to repair mechanical devices even though you do not have permission or do not have the skill to do it properly, you monkey around with them.

I monkeyed around with my camera, and I think maybe I fixed it.

Frank was monkeying around with my printer, and now it doesn't work.

EXERCISE 6a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I'm not surprised that Ali stayed home from work today. Yesterday he thought he might be \_\_\_\_\_ a cold.
2. Last year, the company \_\_\_\_\_ its plan to move from downtown to the suburbs.
3. I've thought and thought, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ any reason why your idea won't work.
4. Fixing the leak in the roof is going to be a big job, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it before the next rain.
5. Heather didn't want to tell me why she was mad, but I finally \_\_\_\_\_ the reason \_\_\_\_\_ her.
6. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ much satisfaction \_\_\_\_\_ teaching students who don't want to be in the class.
7. The explanation for our failure to solve this problem isn't complicated. It really \_\_\_\_\_ a lack of funding.
8. I think you should take your VCR to a repair shop. If you \_\_\_\_\_ it, you'll just make it worse.
9. I'm supposed to report for jury duty on Monday, but I don't want to. I've got to think of a way to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. You lied to me! You promised me you would quit smoking, and now you've \_\_\_\_\_ your word.

EXERCISE 6b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom was very nervous about getting married, but he did it. What did Tom do?
2. We were in Paris for five days, but we never found time to go to the Eiffel Tower. What didn't we do?
3. My father said I had to cut the grass, but I told him I would do it tomorrow. What did I do?
4. Janice really likes teaching because it gives her a lot of satisfaction. Why does Janice like teaching?
5. Ms. Cummings thought of a way to manufacture her company's products more cheaply. What did Ms. Cummings do?
6. There are many reasons why one house sells for a higher price than other houses, but the main reason is the house's location. Why does one house sell for more than another?
7. You feel a little sick now, and you think you'll have a cold tomorrow. What's happening to you today?
8. I don't really know what to do, but I'll try to fix the air conditioner anyway. What will I do to the air conditioner?
9. My wife didn't talk to me all day, but she said nothing was wrong. I asked her again and again what the problem was and she finally told me. What did I do?
10. Raquel promised Alex she would go to the dance with him, but she went with Carlos instead. What did Raquel do?

EXERCISE 6c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burn down, 5	cheat on, 4	find out, 5	go after, 4
hand back, 5	look at, 5	look up, 4	pile up, 5
plan for, 4	point to, 4	put to, 4	wrap up, 4

1. We've been at this meeting all afternoon. Don't you think we should \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and go home?
2. If we send out 75 invitations to the wedding, and everyone we invited brings his or her spouse, we should \_\_\_\_\_ 150 guests.
3. Lydia \_\_\_\_\_ her best friend from college \_\_\_\_\_ when she was in Las Vegas.
4. The students who \_\_\_\_\_ the test by writing the answers on their hands were expelled from school.
5. This camera isn't working right. I'm going to take it to Jim at the photo shop and ask him to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Bill won't be happy if he \_\_\_\_\_ that you scratched his car.
7. My son's thinking about \_\_\_\_\_ his master's degree.
8. Evidence gathered after the air plane crash \_\_\_\_\_ engine failure as the cause.
9. I really \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ her, and she admitted that I was right.
10. We'd better do the laundry soon; it's starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The police officer \_\_\_\_\_ my driver's license \_\_\_\_\_ to me along with a ticket.
12. The detective thinks the owner \_\_\_\_\_ his restaurant for the insurance money.

EXERCISE 6d — Review the explanation at the beginning of Section 5 of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 6c aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 7. FOCUS ON: separable phrasal verbs with long objects

We have seen that the object of separable verbs can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

clear: I looked up the word. clear: I looked the word up.

When the object is short — one word or just a few words in length — the meaning is clear either way. However, when the object is several words long, it can be awkward and confusing to place the object between the particles:

clear: I looked up the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam. confusing: I looked the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam up.

It boils down to the following.

Short objects can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

She put on her dress.

She put her dress on.

pronouns, such as him, her, and it must be placed between the verb and the particle:

She put it on.

and long objects should be placed after the particle to avoid confusion:

She put on the new dress with the red, yellow, and blue flowers that she bought last week for 40 percent off.

### cut up

1. cut... up p.v. When you use a knife or pair of scissors to cut something so that there are many small pieces, you cut it up.

The boy's mother is cutting a piece of meat up for him.

I was so angry at her that I cut her picture up and flushed it down the toilet.

cut up part.adj. After something has been cut up, it is cut up.

This steak is for Aunt Kathy, but give the cut-up one to Uncle Fred — he doesn't have any teeth.

### hold up

1. hold... up p.v. When a wall, column, or other structure supports the weight of something above it, such as a ceiling, it holds it up.

The workers were killed when they removed a column holding the roof up.

The house was held up by jacks the foundation was repaired.

2. hold... up p.v. When you prevent something from happening or cause it to happen late, you hold it up. When things or people delay you, they hold you up.

The band hasn't arrived yet, and they're holding up the whole wedding.

I'm sorry I'm late. I was held up by traffic.

holdup n. Something that prevents something else from happening or causes it to happen late is a holdup.

Why haven't you finished this work yet? What's the holdup?

3. hold... up p.v. When you use a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, you hold it up. Stick up is the same as hold up.

The jewelry store owner was held up by three men wearing ski masks.

Some idiot tried to hold the bank up with a squirt gun.

holdup n. When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, it is a holdup. A stickup is the same as a holdup.

The robber fired his gun in the air and yelled, "This is a holdup."

There was a holdup at First National Bank this morning.

4. hold up p.v. When an object remains in good condition after heavy use, it holds up.

These cheap shoes won't hold up more than six weeks.

Some Roman aqueducts have held up for 2,000 years.

5. hold up p.v. When a plan, idea, or agreement is still believed in or respected after a period of time, it has held up.

Einstein's theories have held up despite occasional challenges.

The ceasefire is holding up longer than anyone expected.

### let out

1. let ...out p.v. When you allow animals or people to leave a place by giving permission or opening a door, you let them out.

The guard lets the prisoners out of their cells every day at 1:00.

I opened the door and let the dog out.

2. let... out p.v. When you make an item of clothing bigger by changing the seams, you let it out.

After I gained twenty pounds, I had to have all my pants let out.

The tailor let her old dress out so that she could wear it again.

3. let... out p.v. When you reveal secret or sensitive information, you let it out.

This information is secret. Don't let it out.

I was furious when my secretary let out that I had interviewed for a new position.

4. let out p.v. When you make a sound that shows your emotion or feelings, you let out that sound.

Heather knew Jim was lying again, and let out a sigh.

The lion let out a loud roar before he attacked the hunter.

### point out

1. point... out p.v. When you bring things or people to someone's attention or indicate the location of things or people with your hand or index finger, you point them out.

As we walked through the museum, the tour guide pointed several famous paintings out.

General Johnston showed the satellite photo to the reporter and pointed out the enemy tanks.

2. point ...out p.v. When you are writing or speaking and you stress or emphasize some important information you think the reader or listener needs to know, you point out the information.

I pointed several flaws out in Prof. Childress's theory.

He said that he thought my plan was basically good but that he wanted to point out several possible problems.

### run over

1. run over (to) p.v. When you run from where you are to where someone else is, you run over or run over to that person.

I saw a man hitting a child, and I ran over and stopped him.

When I saw Melanie, I ran over to her and gave her a big hug.

2. run... over p.v. When you drive over people or things with a car, truck, or other vehicle causing damage, injury, or death, you run them over.

John was run over by a bus and killed.

I ran over a glass bottle and got a flat tire.

3. run over p.v. When liquid in a container fills the container and goes over the top, it runs over.

Keep an eye on the bathtub so that it doesn't run over.

There's too much water in this pot. It's going to run over the side.

4. run over p.v. When you go beyond a limit, you run over or run over the limit.

I hope the 11:00 meeting doesn't run over; I'm meeting a client for lunch at 12:00.

The speaker was given fifteen minutes for her speech, but she ran over.

### see about

1. see ... about p.v. When you talk to someone to get permission for something or to arrange something, you see about it or see someone about it.

Is Luis going to see about changing his flight from the fifth to the sixth?

The carpet in my office is filthy. I need to see the maintenance guy about getting it shampooed.

2. see about p.v. When you are upset about a change or a new policy, and you want to say that you will take some action or talk to someone in authority to prevent or reverse the change or new policy, you say "I'll see about that" or "We'll see about that."

Now they're saying I can't even smoke in my own office. I'll see about that!

Those crooks in City Hall want to double my real estate taxes. We'll just see about that.

### take apart

1. take ... apart p.v. When you completely separate the parts of something, you take it apart. Take apart is the opposite of put together.

I had to take my bike apart when I moved.

The mechanic took the engine apart.

### take in

1. take ... in p.v. When you bring a car or other household appliance to a mechanic or repair person, you take it in. Sally took her car in to have the oil changed.

The VCR is broken again. I need to take it in.

2. take ... in p.v. When you take in a play, movie, museum, or other attraction, you go to it or see it.

We stopped in Charleston and took in the sights.

After dinner we took in a movie.

3. take... in p.v. When you allow people to live with you, you take them in.

Judy's brother had nowhere to go, so she took him in.

The Ortegas offered to take their neighbors in after the fire.

4. take... in p.v. [usually passive] When you are taken in by someone, that person successfully tricks or deceives you.

Stalin was taken in by Hitler's assurances.

They were completely taken in by Jake's elaborate hoax.

5. take ... in p.v. When you make an item of clothing smaller by changing the seams, you take it in. Let out.

She likes some of her maternity clothes so much that she's going to take them in after the baby is born.

If I lose any more weight, I'll have to have all my pants taken in.

EXERCISE 7a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When the bullet hit him, he \_\_\_\_\_ a slight gasp and fell dead.
2. My friends were supposed to be here an hour ago. What is \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Will you please drive more carefully! You almost \_\_\_\_\_ that lady back there.
4. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ that she was going to go to Las Vegas with her boss, and the whole office was talking about it.
5. Take two pounds of beef, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, and put it in a frying pan.
6. The expedition leader spoke to us and \_\_\_\_\_ the importance of taking plenty of water with us in the desert.
7. Open the gate and \_\_\_\_\_ the horses \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm embarrassed to admit I was \_\_\_\_\_ by his lies.
9. After Todd's parents were killed, his Aunt Judy and Uncle Henry \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The soldier was \_\_\_\_\_ his rifle \_\_\_\_\_ and cleaning it.
11. In Ecuador I rode on a steam locomotive that's still \_\_\_\_\_ after 80 years.
12. After we saw the Empire State Building, we \_\_\_\_\_ a Broadway play.
13. These aluminum poles \_\_\_\_\_ the tent.
14. Nicole is at the computer store \_\_\_\_\_ getting more memory installed in her computer.
15. I had my old uniform \_\_\_\_\_ so that I could wear it to the reunion.
16. A robber \_\_\_\_\_ a liquor store with a shotgun last night.
17. When I got into the tub, the water \_\_\_\_\_ the side and onto the floor,
18. The health department inspector walked around the restaurant and \_\_\_\_\_ several rats \_\_\_\_\_ to the owner.
19. Jim's phone was ringing, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to his desk and answered it.
20. The suit was too big, but the store's tailor said he could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
21. I heard a weird noise coming from my car's transmission. I think I'd better \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
22. It's an unusual arrangement, but it has \_\_\_\_\_ for several years.
23. The conference is scheduled to end Tuesday at 5:00, but there's a good chance that it will \_\_\_\_\_.
24. I was just notified that I'm going to be transferred to Mongolia. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ that! I'm going to talk to the boss.
25. The robber was shot while trying to \_\_\_\_\_ an off-duty police officer.

EXERCISE 7b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses.

1. The cook cut up. (the meat, it)

-----  
-----  
-----

2. The snowstorm held up. (air travelers, them)

-----  
-----  
-----

3. Don't let out. (the dog, it)

-----  
-----  
-----

4. The real estate agent pointed out. (the swimming pool, it) )

-----  
-----  
-----

5. The truck ran over. (the man, him) )

-----  
-----  
-----

6. I'm going to take apart, (the broken doorknob, it) )

-----  
-----  
-----

7. The tailor took in. (the pants, them) )

-----  
-----  
-----

EXERCISE 7c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I don't like this hotel room. I'm going to ask the desk clerk about changing to a different room. What am I going to do?
2. No one believes in the scientist's theories anymore. What haven't the scientist's theories done?
3. Janice is going to make her pants smaller. What is she going to do?
4. Mr. Ortega was tricked by the salesman. What happened to Mr. Ortega?
5. A car drove over you. What happened to you?
6. The jeweler showed me several flaws in the diamond. What did the jeweler do?
7. The game started late because it was raining. What did the rain do?
8. Susie is using scissors to make several small pieces of paper from a larger piece of paper. What is Susie doing?
9. The posts are supporting the porch. What are the posts doing?
10. The woman told the bank teller to give her all the money in the cash register or she would shoot him. What did the woman do?
11. In Question 10, what happened at the bank?
12. I put my broken TV in my car, drove to the repair shop, and carried the TV in. What did I do to my TV?
13. Bill separated all the parts of his typewriter. What did Bill do?
14. There was too much water in the bathtub, and it spilled onto the floor. What did the water do?
15. After my parents died, my grandparents let me live with them. What did my grandparents do?
16. Mr. Young told some people about the secret information. What did Mr. Young do with the secret information?
17. I saw an empty luggage cart at the airport, and I went to it quickly and grabbed it. What did I do?
18. When the thief started to open the woman's door, a scream came from her mouth. What did the woman do?
19. I've been using this lawn mower for twenty-five years, and it still works fine. What has the lawn mower done?
20. The cowboy opened the gate so that the cattle could leave the corral. What did the cowboy do?
21. Dr. Smith went to a museum while he was in Rome. What did Dr. Smith do?
22. The meeting was supposed to end at 2:00, but it hasn't ended yet. What is the meeting doing?
23. I'm making my pants bigger. What am I doing?



EXERCISE 7d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

boil down to, 6	figure out, 1	go through with, 6
come down with, 6	get around to, 6	look forward to, 3
come off, 2	get out of, 6	monkey around with, 6
come up with, 6	go after, 4	put on, 1
doze off, 2	go back on, 6	

1. I thought about what I was going to say to her, but when the time came, I was so nervous I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. The President's news conference didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well because it revealed his poor understanding of the situation.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ watching Aunt Kathy's vacation videotape by saying I had to study for a test.
4. I don't usually \_\_\_\_\_ doing my Christmas shopping until December 24.
5. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ this broken refrigerator all day, but I still don't know what's wrong with it.
6. Mexico City's problems \_\_\_\_\_ one thing — too many people.
7. Have you seen my pen? I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what happened to it.
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a coat of paint \_\_\_\_\_ that old house, it wouldn't look so bad.
9. One police officer helped the mugging victim while her partner \_\_\_\_\_ the mugger.
10. My son promised that he would stop cutting school, and so far he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ that promise.
11. The company \_\_\_\_\_ a way to decrease labor costs without lowering wages.
12. I have never been to Thailand, and I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ going there.
13. She was so tired she \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as she sat down.
14. The show was canceled after the star \_\_\_\_\_ laryngitis.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 8. FOCUS ON: present perfect phrasal verbs

The present perfect is used to talk about the past and the present at the same time:

They have torn down the building. (The building is not there now because they tore it down in the past.)

or to say that something is completed:

She has picked out some library books.

The present perfect is formed with have, or when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, has, and the past participle of the verb:

present: The tree falls over.

past: The tree fell over.

present perfect: The tree has fallen over.

Remember that have can be combined with pronouns as 've:

They've never heard of him. and has with nouns and pronouns as's:

The tree's fallen over.

He's never heard of her.

Be careful not to confuse the's contraction of has and the's contraction of is:

She's picked out some library books. (She has...) She's picking out some library books. (She is...)

### burn out

1. burn out p.v. When a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it burns out.

We need more wood; the fire has burned out.

Don't worry; the sun won't burn out for another four billion years.

burned-out part.adj. After a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it is burned-out.

The burned-out rocket landed in the ocean.

burned-out part.adj. When people are extremely tired, either physically or psycho-logically, because of stress or hard work, they are burned-out.

Teaching those awful students for so many years has left him burned-out.

Taking care of four small children day after day would leave any mother burned-out.

2. burn out p.v. When a light bulb stops producing light because it has reached the end of its useful life, it burns out.

These new bulbs are guaranteed not to burn out for ten years. I can't see what I'm doing because this bulb has burned out.

burned-out part.adj. A light bulb that no longer produces light because it has reached the end of its useful life is burned-out.

I climbed the ladder and unscrewed the burned-out bulb.

3. burn ...out p.v. When people are forced to leave their home or some other shelter or hiding place because of fire or fire damage, they are burned out.

The only way to get the enemy soldiers out of the tunnels was to burn them out.

Seven families were burned out of their homes by the huge fire.

burned-out part.adj. Something that has been damaged or destroyed by fire is burned-out.

After the war, nothing was left but burned-out cars and buildings.

**fall over**

1. fall over p.v. When people or things fall over, they fall to the ground from an upright position.

That tree has been dead for fifty years, but it still hasn't fallen over.

I almost fell over when I heard the terrible news.

2. fall over p.v. When you fall over yourself or (usually) fall all over yourself, you try so hard to serve someone or to make someone like you that you appear foolish.

The supervisor fell all over himself trying to satisfy the customer.

Mike was falling all over himself trying to impress Heather.

**fight back**

1. fight back p.v. When you fight back, you fight, either physically or with words, someone or something that attacked you first.

The soldiers fought back bravely, but the situation was hopeless.

After being accused of corruption, the senator said she would fight back and prove her innocence.

2. fight back p.v. When you fight back an emotional response, such as tears or fear, you try very hard to overcome the emotion.

The mother fought back tears when she saw the little white coffins.

I had to fight back the urge to punch him in the nose.

**hear of**

1. hear of p.v. When you learn about something for the first time, you hear of it.

Do I know Fred Smith? No, I've never heard of him.

I told my real estate agent, "If you hear of a good deal on a three-bedroom house, please call me right away."

2. hear of p.v. When you learn information about something that makes you angry and you say you will not hear of it, you mean that you will not tolerate or allow it.

Our daughter wants to fly to Mexico with her boyfriend?

I won't hear of it! I told him that his scheme was outrageous and that I wouldn't hear of such a thing.

**pick out**

1. pick... out p.v. When you choose something from a group because you prefer it to the others in the group, you pick it out.

Have you picked out a dress to wear to the party yet?

Mike's dog had puppies, and he asked me to pick one out.

2. pick... out p.v. When you are able to find and recognize something in a group, you pick it out.

Even though the class photo was fifty years old, I picked my father out easily. The police detective asked me if I could pick the mugger out from a group of photos.

**ring up**

1. ring ... up p.v. When you want to buy something in a store, a cashier uses a cash register to ring up what you want to buy in order to determine how much money you must pay.

Well, I guess I'll take this one. Can you ring it up please?

I couldn't believe it when the clerk finished ringing it all up — \$946!

2. ring ... up p.v. (mainly British) When you call people on the telephone, you ring them up.

He rang up Nancy and asked her to go to the dance.

If you need a ride, ring me up when you arrive at the airport.

**tear down**

1. tear... down p.v. When you tear down a building, you deliberately and completely destroy it.  
They tore so many old buildings down in my hometown that I barely recognize it.  
A lot of smaller homes in the suburbs are being torn down and replaced with larger ones.

**work in**

1. work... in p.v. When you make room, with some difficulty, for something in a schedule or plan, you work it in.  
We're going to be in Chicago for only a couple of days, but I'll try to work in a Cubs game. I told him my schedule was pretty tight, but that I'd try to work the meeting in.

EXERCISE 8a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Every year I have to replace the Christmas tree lights that have \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The enemy was so strong that there was no way we could have \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I don't have time to talk about it now. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ after dinner.
5. Sarah always tries to \_\_\_\_\_ a little sightseeing on her business trips.
6. My brother is pretty easy to \_\_\_\_\_ in a crowd — he's almost seven feet tall.
7. If you haven't \_\_\_\_\_ a video yet, you'd better hurry — the store's closing in five minutes.
8. The firefighters decided to let the fire in the lumberyard \_\_\_\_\_ itself \_\_\_\_\_.
9. That cashier has been yakking with his friends for ten minutes and still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ our stuff \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A screen door on a submarine? That's the most ridiculous thing I've ever \_\_\_\_\_.
11. When I told the waiter I was the owner of the restaurant, he \_\_\_\_\_ all \_\_\_\_\_ himself trying please me.
12. The taco stand moved across the street after it was \_\_\_\_\_ by the fire.
13. When I found out that one of my employees cheated a customer, I said I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ such a thing in my store.
14. I had to \_\_\_\_\_ my fear as I waited for my turn to jump from the plane,
15. They'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ most of the buildings that were damaged by the earthquake.

EXERCISE 8b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The sheriff burned out. (the escaped convicts, them) ) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Bill has picked out. (a new car, one) ) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The clerk hasn't rung up yet. (these CDs, them) ) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The new owners have torn down. (the garage, it) ) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The mayor tried to work in. (a tour of the factory, it) ) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 8c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs present perfect.

1. I asked my father if I could smoke in the house, and he became angry and said he wouldn't allow it. What did my father say about smoking in the house?
2. The forest fire has stopped because there aren't any more trees left to burn. What has the fire done?
3. The cashier has totaled how much we must pay for our groceries. What has the cashier done?
4. They have chosen a hotel for their wedding reception. What have they done?
5. Sally's mother couldn't stop her tears. What couldn't Sally's mother do?
6. One of my car's headlights isn't working anymore. What did the headlight do?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the headlight?
8. The stack of books was too high, and now the books are on the floor. What did the books do?
9. The coffee shop had to move to a different location because of a fire. What happened to the coffee shop?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the coffee shop's previous location?
11. After they attacked us, we didn't attack them. What didn't we do?
12. I've made room in my busy day for a game of tennis. What have I done?
13. She hasn't called me on the telephone. What hasn't she done?
14. They've completely destroyed the old factory. What have they done?
15. The sergeant tried extremely hard to show the captain how well he was training the soldiers. What did the sergeant do?
16. I asked Jim if anyone had ever told him about the new seafood restaurant in the mall. What did I ask Jim?

EXERCISE 8d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                  |              |                 |               |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| cut up, 7        | go in for, 3 | point out, 7    | see about, 7  |
| fall for, 2      | hold up, 7   | pull through, 2 | show up, 1    |
| get over with, 3 | let out, 7   | put up with, 3  | take apart, 7 |
| give in, 2       | look up, 4   | run over, 7     | take in, 7    |

1. My bicycle was really dirty, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and cleaned it.
2. It was a very serious injury, and no one expected Raul to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I've been waiting for the TV repair guy all day, but he still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I feel just awful. I was driving to work, and I \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.
5. The detectives weren't \_\_\_\_\_ by the crook's explanation.
6. The detectives didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the crook's explanation.
7. Mrs. Taylor's husband doesn't have any teeth, so she has to \_\_\_\_\_ all his food \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The freight train \_\_\_\_\_ traffic for twenty minutes, so we were late for work.
9. In his report yesterday, the head of marketing \_\_\_\_\_ several ways to increase the company's sales.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ the word Internet \_\_\_\_\_ in an old dictionary, but I couldn't find it.
11. Susie's mother told her, "I'm not going to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ of this house until you finish your homework."
12. The company finally \_\_\_\_\_ to demands that it hire more women and minorities.
13. I'm having root canal surgery next week. I'll be glad to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
14. David called the travel agency to \_\_\_\_\_ getting his ticket changed.
15. Karen loves to ski. In fact, she \_\_\_\_\_ most winter sports.
16. Betty told the doctor she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the pain any longer, and she asked him for morphine.

## 9. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, 1

With some two-word verbs you must use a second particle when the verb has an object:

The criminal broke out.

The criminal broke out prison.

The criminal broke out of prison.

Tom and Jerry don't get along.

Tom and Jerry don't get along each other.

Tom and Jerry don't get along with each other.

Sometimes, as with break out and break out of, there is no change in meaning. Sometimes, as with hang up and hang up on, there is a small change in meaning. And sometimes, as with hook up and hook up to, the second particle is necessary not when there is one object but only when there are two:

I hooked up my new CD player.

I hooked up my new CD player my stereo.

I hooked up my new CD player to my stereo.

There is no good way to always know which second particle must be used or if and how it will change the meaning of the verb. The best thing to do is to simply memorize each case.

Throughout this book, two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object are shown with the second particle in parentheses:

break out (of).

Do not confuse two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object with three-word phrasal verbs. Three-word phrasal verbs always have three words — there is no two-word version, or if there is a phrasal verb with the same verb and first particle, it has a different meaning and is classified as a different verb. For example, break out and break out (of) are included in one definition because they have the same meaning, but put up and put up with have different meanings and are classified separately.

### break out

1. break out (of) p.v. When you escape from a place where you are a prisoner, you break out or break out of that place.

Bubba broke out of prison last month.

The police have been looking for him ever since he broke out.

breakout n. An escape from prison is a breakout.

There hasn't been a successful breakout from the state prison in more than twenty-five years.

1. breakout p.v. When fighting begins suddenly, it breaks out.

Rioting broke out after the general canceled the election.

Millions will be killed if nuclear war breaks out.

### catch up

1. catch up (with) p.v. When you move faster and reach the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you were, you catch up or catch up with them.

We left an hour before Luis, but he drove fast and quickly caught up.

After missing several weeks of class, Raquel is so far behind that she'll never catch up.

Pepsi has caught up with Coca-Cola in some markets.

The mugger was running so fast that the angry mob couldn't catch up with him.

caught up part.adj. After you have moved faster and reached the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you are, you are caught up.



When I was sick, I missed a lot of schoolwork, but I worked hard and now I'm caught up.

1. catch up (on) p.v. When you study or learn something you are interested in but have not had time for, you catch up on it.

I wonder what the latest gossip is. Let's call Michael so we can catch up. After I returned from vacation, I read the newspaper to catch up on the local news.

caught up part.adj. After you have studied or learned something you are interested in but have not had time for, you are caught up.

Now that I've read the newspapers I missed while I was on vacation, I'm caught up.

### chicken out

1. chicken out (of) p.v. [informal] When you do not do something because you are afraid, you chicken out or chicken out of it.

I was going to ask Heather to go to the dance with me, but I chickened out. Miguel's mad at himself because he chickened out of asking his boss for a raise yesterday.

### get along

1. get along (with) p.v. When you get along with people, you have peaceful, harmonious relations with them. Get on is similar to get along.

Jim and his cousin aren't good friends, but they get along.

I haven't gotten along with my neighbors for years.

2. get along p.v. When you are able to do some sort of work without any serious problems, you get along.

How are you getting along in your new job?

Oh, I'm getting along okay, thank you.

### give up

1. give up (on) p.v. When you stop trying to do something because you think you will never succeed, you give up or give up on it.

Forget it! This is impossible — I give up!

I've tried for years to have a nice looking lawn, but I've just given up on it.

2. give... up p.v. When you are running from or fighting with the police or enemy soldiers and you surrender, you give up or give yourself up.

When the bank robbers realized they were surrounded by police, they gave up. The suspect got tired of hiding from the police, and he gave himself up.

3. give ...up p.v. When you stop doing something you do regularly, such as a sport or a job, you give it up.

My father didn't give sky diving up until he was eighty-two.

I had to give up my second job because I was so exhausted all the time.

### hang up

1. hang up (on) p.v. When you stop talking on the telephone and put down the receiver, you hang up the telephone. When you are angry and hang up the tele-phone without saying good-bye to someone, you hang up on the person you are talking to.

After I finished talking to her, I said good-bye and hung up.

When he called me a moron, I got so mad I hung up on him.

2. hang ... up p.v. When you hang something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, you hang it up.

When I get home, the first thing I do is hang my coat up.



Timmy never hangs anything up; he just leaves it on the floor.

hung up part.adj. After you have hung something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, it is hung up.

Timmy, why are your clothes on the floor and not hung up?

### hook up

1. hook... up (to) p.v. When you connect one electronic device to another, you hook it up or hook it up to something.

I bought a new printer, but I haven't hooked it up yet.

I hooked my sound system up to my TV, and now the TV is in stereo.

hooked up part.adj. After one electronic device has been connected to another, it is hooked up.

There's a VCR on my TV, but don't try to use it because it's not hooked up. hookup n. A hookup is an electrical connection.

The cable TV hookup usually costs \$20, but it's free this month.

1. hook up (with) p.v. [informal] When you meet people somewhere, usually after you have done some things separately, you hook up or hook up with them.

You do your shopping, I'll go to the post office, and we'll hook up around 2:30, okay?

I'll hook up with you at 12:00 at the corner of State and Madison, and we'll have lunch.

### work up

1. work up (to) p.v. When you gradually improve at something difficult that you do regularly, you work up to that improvement.

You can't lift 200 pounds on your first day of weight training. You have to work up to it.

When I started running, I couldn't go more than a mile, but now I've worked up to five miles.

2. work up p.v. When you gradually develop the energy, confidence, courage, and so on, to do something difficult or something you do not want to do, you work up the energy, confidence, courage, and so on. When you gradually develop a feeling, you work up the feeling.

It took me a long time to work up the nerve to ask my boss for a raise.

If I work up some energy, I'll wash the car.

I really worked up a sweat in the gym today.

Raking leaves all day sure works up an appetite.

worked up part.adj. [informal] When you are anxious, worried, or upset about something, you are worked up or worked up about it.

Mark has been acting nervous all day. What's he all worked up about?

Relax, we're only a few minutes late. It's nothing to get worked up about.

EXERCISE 9a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My elbow has gotten so bad that I think I might have to \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.

2. After several years of tension between the two countries, war \_\_\_\_\_ in 1972.

3. Maria, how are you \_\_\_\_\_ at your new job?

4. I am so lazy today. I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ the energy to finish my school project.

5. The murderer was tired of running from the police, and he \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The other runners were so far ahead that I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Susie, \_\_\_\_\_ your clothes right now!

8. For a long time I could type only around twenty-five words per minute, but I've slowly \_\_\_\_\_ to sixty.

9. I'm really behind in my work. If I don't take work home with me, I'll never \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Lydia is a nice, easygoing person. You won't have any trouble \_\_\_\_\_ her.
11. I tried and tried to learn to speak Japanese, but I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Hello Mark? I'm really angry, and I've got some things to tell you, and don't you dare \_\_\_\_\_ on me!
13. Dan is so shy. He was supposed to give a speech today at school, but he \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Okay, here's the plan: You go to the bookstore, I'll get my laundry, and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ around 11:00.
15. I wonder what's been happening while we were on vacation. I think I'll read the newspaper so I can \_\_\_\_\_.
16. This is a maximum security prison. No one has ever \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Bob tried to \_\_\_\_\_ my new dishwasher, but he didn't do it right, and he flooded the kitchen.

EXERCISE 9b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. I called my girlfriend to apologize for forgetting her birthday, but she hung up \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. When I started lifting weights, I could lift only thirty kilograms, but little by little I worked up \_\_\_\_\_ fifty.
3. He's very sick, but the doctors haven't given up \_\_\_\_\_ him yet.
4. Sofia was going to bleach her hair, but she chickened out \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. Don't invite Carmen to Rosa's birthday party. They don't get along \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
6. The bank robber was carrying 2,000 quarters, so it was easy for the police catch up \_\_\_\_\_ him.
7. No prisoner has ever broken out \_\_\_\_\_ this prison.
8. I need a different cable to hook my monitor up \_\_\_\_\_ my computer.
9. You've been gone a long time, and you have to catch up \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things.

EXERCISE 9c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Tonight I'm going to try to hook up. (my fax machine, it)
2. After my accident, I had to give up. (scuba diving, it) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You can hang up in the closet, (your coat, it) \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 9d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When I went on vacation three weeks ago, my sister and her husband were talking about getting a divorce. Now that I'm back from vacation, I want to know what happened while I was gone. What do I want to do?
2. Lydia has to stop driving because her eyesight is so bad. What does Lydia have to do?
3. Susie was walking with us, but she stopped to look in a store window, and we continued walking. What does Susie need to do now?
4. I spilled wine on your white carpet, and you became angry and upset. How would you describe yourself?
5. Connecting a printer to a computer is easy. What is easy?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the printer after it is connected to a computer?
7. Several prisoners are going to try to escape from the state prison tonight. What are the prisoners going to try to do tonight?
8. In Question 7, if the prisoners are successful, what would their escape be called?
9. Linda and Nicole don't like each other, and they argue sometimes. What don't Linda and Nicole do?
10. We argued with our daughter for months, but we stopped trying to get her to stop smoking. What did we do?
11. Fights start in that bar all the time. What happens in that bar all the time?
12. Paul slowly developed the courage to ask his boss for a raise. What did Paul do?

13. In Question 12, what didn't Paul do?
14. The police told the robber to surrender. What did the police tell the robber?
15. Karen is trying to gradually be able to lift 100 pounds. What is Karen doing?
16. Betty was so angry with her boyfriend that she put the telephone receiver down without saying good-bye. What did Betty do to her boyfriend?

EXERCISE 9e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burn out, 8	find out, 5	pick out, 8	ring up, 8
cheat on, 4	hand back, 5	pile up, 5	run into, 1
fall over, 8	hear of, 8	point to, 4	tear down, 8
fight back, 8	look at, 5	put to, 4	work in, 8

1. Who is he? I've never \_\_\_\_\_ him before, and I don't know anything about him.
2. My mail \_\_\_\_\_ while I was on vacation.
3. Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ so much trouble.
4. That dead tree is rotten. I'm surprised it hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ several cars last weekend, but I can't decide which one to buy.
6. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ a tie \_\_\_\_\_ to wear with this shirt?
7. What a surprise! I \_\_\_\_\_ my fifth grade teacher at the mall today.
8. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful Mercedes-Benz across the street and said it was his.
9. Okay, class, you've got until the bell rings. When you're finished with your tests, \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
10. Everyone in town knows that Jake has been \_\_\_\_\_ his wife for years.
11. I'm not sure if there will be time to meet with you today, but I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_ it
12. The invasion was so sudden that there was no way to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The cashier \_\_\_\_\_ our stuff and said, "That comes to \$142.56."
14. Bob's not in a good mood today. He just \_\_\_\_\_ that he needs surgery.
15. It was fun to visit my hometown, but I was sad to see that my old house was being \_\_\_\_\_
16. I need to buy a new 100-watt bulb; this one \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

## 10. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 1

Many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. All the verbs in this section have a noun form. Notice that the two-word noun is sometimes written with a hyphen:

verb: go ahead

noun: go-ahead

and sometimes as one word:

verb: lay off

noun: layoff

Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to always know which form to use. Also, not everyone agrees which nouns should be hyphenated and which should be written as one word, so you will occasionally see a noun written both ways.

### fall off

1. fall off p.v. When people or things drop to a lower level from a higher place, they fall off the place where they were.

The dish fell off the table and broke.

Be careful you don't fall off your bicycle.

61

2. fall off p.v. When the quality, degree, or frequency of something decreases, it falls off.

Sales of fountain pens fell off after the ballpoint pen was invented.

The quality of his work has fallen off as he has gotten older.

falloff n. A decrease in the quality, degree, or frequency of something is a falloff.

The chairman was asked to explain the falloff in the company's sales.

Egypt experienced a big falloff in tourism after several terrorist incidents.

### fill in

1. fill... in p.v. When you fill in a form, you put information in the correct spaces.

Fill out is the same as fill in.

Maria filled in the job application and gave it to the secretary.

The teacher gave us the quiz and told us to fill the blanks in with the correct answers.

filled in part.adj. After you write all the information in the correct spaces of a form, the form is filled in.

Are those forms blank or filled in?

This check isn't any good — the amount isn't filled in.

2. fill... in p.v. When people want or need more information about a plan, situation, or occurrence and you supply that information, you fill them in.

Something interesting happened while you were gone. I'll fill you in later.

I fell asleep during the meeting. Can you fill me in?

3. fill in (for) p.v. When you temporarily do someone else's job, you fill in for that person.

The regular bartender is on vacation, so Todd is filling in.

She's the star of the show. No one can fill in for her.

fill-in n. Someone who temporarily does someone else's job is a fill-in.

Jerry is Ann's fill-in while she's on vacation.

The regular driver is in the hospital, and the fill-in doesn't know the route.

**go ahead**

1. go ahead (with) p.v. When you take an action you have already considered doing, you go ahead with the action.  
I've decided to go ahead with my plan to reorganize the company.

After she learned about Jim's drug problem, Raquel went ahead with the marriage anyway.

2. go ahead p.v. When you tell people to go ahead, you tell them to do something without any further delay or hesitation. If you are in a position of authority and you tell someone to go ahead with an action, you give permission for that action.

What are you waiting for? Go ahead.

Yes, go ahead and leave work early. It's no problem.

go-ahead n. When you give people permission to perform an action, you give them the go-ahead.

We approved his plan and gave him the go-ahead.

The Food and Drug Administration gave the pharmaceutical company the go-ahead to test the drug on humans.

**grow up**

1. grow up p.v. When you grow up, you gradually change from a child to an adult.

I grew up on a small farm in North Dakota.

Growing up without a father wasn't easy.

grown-up part.adj. [informal — used primarily by children] When children behave in a mature way, they are grown-up. Something that relates to adults, and not children, is grown-up.

Susie is only eleven, but she acts very grown-up.

Timmy doesn't like grown-up books because they don't have any pictures.

grown-up n. [informal — used primarily by children] A grown-up is an adult.

There were children and grown-ups at the party.

Only grown-ups are allowed to sit in the front seat of the car.

2. grow up p.v. When you tell people to grow up, you are saying that their behavior is childish and immature.

You're acting like a baby. Why don't you grow up!

When he put his fist through the wall, I said, "Oh, grow up!"

**hand out**

1. hand ... out p.v. When you distribute something to other people, you hand it out. Give out is similar to hand out.

The teacher handed the tests out to the class.

Emergency loan applications were handed out to the flood victims.

handout n. Something given free to people in need to help them is a handout.

Handouts of food and clothing were given to the homeless people.

Even though my father was poor, he was too proud to ask for a handout.

handout n. Printed material given to students or other people to provide them with important information.

The teacher prepared a handout for his students.

There are several handouts on a table by the library entrance.

**kick back**

1. kick back (to) p.v. When you kick back money or kick back money to businesspeople or government officials, you illegally and secretly give them a percentage of the money that they spend with your company as a reward for giving you the business.

The prosecutor said that 5 percent of every contract was kicked back to the head of the purchasing department. She offered to kick back 10 percent if I'd switch to her company.

kickback n. Money you illegally and secretly give to businesspeople or government officials as a reward for giving you business is a kickback.

The FBI agent heard the governor asking for a kickback. The reporter discovered that the loan was really a kickback.

2. kick back p.v. [informal] When you kick back, you relax.

It's been a tough week. Tonight I'm going to buy a case of beer and kick back.

Let's kick back and watch the football game tonight.

### lay off

1. lay... off p.v. When a company no longer needs workers because it does not have enough business, it temporarily or permanently lays off the workers.

Ford laid off 20,000 workers during the last recession. My wife had to go back to work after I was laid off from my job.

layoff n. Jobs cut by a company because it does not have enough business are layoffs.

The company said there wouldn't be any layoffs, despite the decline in profits.

2. lay off p.v. [informal] When you lay off people, you stop criticizing, teasing, or pressuring them.

You've been bugging me all day. If you don't lay off, you're going to be sorry.

Lay off Nancy — she's having a bad day.

3. lay off p.v. When you lay off something, such as a food or an activity, you stop consuming the food, or doing the activity.

Listen to the way you're coughing. You've got to lay off cigarettes.

After Ned had a heart attack, he laid off cheese and butter sandwiches.

### screw up

1. screw... up p.v. [informal] When you damage something or do something wrong or badly, you screw up or you screw up what you are doing.

I tried to fix my computer, but I couldn't do it, and I just screwed it up instead.

Mark sent his wife a letter that he wrote to his girlfriend. He sure screwed up.

screwed up part.adj. When people or things are screwed up, they are damaged or confused.

My back is so screwed up I can't even walk.

George was a nice guy, but a little screwed up in the head.

screwup n. A problem or confused situation caused by someone's mistake is a screwup.

Two babies were switched because of a screwup in the maternity ward. There was a screwup in the finance department, and the bill was paid twice.

2. screw... up p.v.[informal] When people make a mistake that causes a problem for you, they screw you up.

The travel agent forgot to reconfirm my flight, and it really screwed me up.

You really screwed me up when you lost my car keys.



EXERCISE 10a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The teacher asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ the exams \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Why don't you let a mechanic fix the car? If you try to do it yourself, you'll just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Nobody likes the new priest in our church, and attendance has \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My feet were killing me a couple of weeks ago, so I \_\_\_\_\_ jogging for a while, and now they're fine.
5. It really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ when you told my boss what I said about him.
6. The Ortega's won't take a vacation this year because Mr. Ortega has been \_\_\_\_\_ and they need to save money.
7. When Mother was \_\_\_\_\_, there wasn't any TV. People went to the movies or read instead.
8. The head of purchasing at my company went to jail because he made all the suppliers \_\_\_\_\_ \$2,000 of every contract.
9. My husband told me my plan to enter medical school was crazy, but I \_\_\_\_\_ with it anyway.
10. The secretary in the human resources department said Here's an application. Take it and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_."
11. If you want to borrow my car tonight, \_\_\_\_\_. I'm not going anywhere.
12. The other mountain climbers are nervous about Jim because they think he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ a cliff.
13. You've been criticizing me for the last three hours! Will you \_\_\_\_\_!
14. The manager asked his assistant to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ about the problems in the warehouse.
15. It's Friday night. Let's buy some beer and \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I can't work tomorrow. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ for me?
17. You're acting like a big baby. \_\_\_\_\_!

EXERCISE 10b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. At the party, the children ate in the living room, and the \_\_\_\_\_ ate in the dining room.
2. The boss said, "One more \_\_\_\_\_ and you're fired."
3. The reporter discovered that the mayor was taking \_\_\_\_\_ from the construction company.
4. Every year at this time the king gives \_\_\_\_\_ to the poor.
5. Ned will be my \_\_\_\_\_ while I'm on my honeymoon.
6. The teacher prepared a \_\_\_\_\_ to give to the students.
7. The CEO said he regretted the \_\_\_\_\_ but that there was no other way for the company to avoid bankruptcy.
8. The team lost every game of the season and suffered a 60 percent \_\_\_\_\_ in attendance.
9. The president called General Chambers and gave him the \_\_\_\_\_ for the attack.

EXERCISE 10c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. You haven't filled in. (all the spaces, them) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Is the teacher handing out? (the tests, them) \_\_\_\_\_
3. The company is going to lay off. (my brother, him) \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'm sorry I screwed up. (your plan, it) \_\_\_\_\_



EXERCISE 10d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I wasn't sure if my plan would work, and I thought about it for a long time before I finally decided to try it. What did I do with my plan?
2. The secretary gave me an application and told me to put the correct information in the spaces, What did the secretary tell me to do?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the application after I put the correct information in the spaces?
4. The mechanic is trying to fix my car's transmission, but she's making a lot of mistakes. What is the mechanic doing to my car's transmission?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the transmission after the mechanic finishes fixing it?
6. You give \$3,000 to the mayor every month so that he will give your company city business. What do you do every month?
7. In Question 6, what is the \$3,000 that you give to the mayor every month?
8. Business is bad at Nancy's company, and they told her that they don't need her anymore. What happened to Nancy?
9. The hotel clerk forgot to call me in the morning to wake me up, and I was late for a very important meeting. What did the hotel clerk do to me?
10. I was born in Hawaii, and I lived there until I was eighteen. What did I do in Hawaii?
11. Sally's parents told her she can't watch a TV show because it's for adults. What did Sally's parents tell her about the TV show?
12. New home construction will decrease if there is a recession. What will new home construction do if there is a recession?
13. In Question 12, if there is a decrease in new home construction, what would it be called?
14. Timmy was teasing Susie all day until his mother told him to stop. What did Timmy's mother tell him to do?
15. Ali is doing Omar's job while Omar is on vacation. What is Ali doing?
16. Blankets and boxes of food will be given to the people whose homes were destroyed by the tornado. What will be done with the blankets and boxes of food?
17. Sarah had to answer the phone while she was watching a movie. After she returned to the TV room, Sarah's friend Sally told Sarah everything she had missed. What did Sally do for Sarah?

EXERCISE 10e, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

breakdown, 5    breakout, 9    holdup, 7    hookup, 9    put-on, 1    setup, 5    takeoff, 1

1. The pilot said that the \_\_\_\_\_ would be on time.
2. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway, and traffic was barely moving at all.
3. A cable \_\_\_\_\_ is usually \$39.95, but this month it's free.
4. The guards suspected the prisoners were planning a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Waiter, we've been waiting for our dinner for an hour. What's the \_\_\_\_\_?
6. I told my lawyer that it was a \_\_\_\_\_ and that I was innocent.
7. When the detectives came and arrested Hank, we didn't think it was real —just a big

EXERCISE 10f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

catch up, 9      chicken out, 9      get along, 9      work up, 9  
give up, 9      hook up, 9      pick out, 8      talk down to, 3

1. Don't try to run ten miles at first; you have to \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
2. After searching for three days without any luck, the rescue team \_\_\_\_\_ on finding any survivors.
3. The police showed me some pictures to see if I could \_\_\_\_\_ the guy who mugged me.
4. You go to the bank, I'll go to the post office, and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ with each other at the corner in forty-five minutes.
5. I wasn't happy about having Nancy for a partner on the project. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ with her.
6. Just because you went to college and I didn't, doesn't make it okay for you to \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. The teacher said, "Your daughter has missed a lot of school, and she'll need to work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ to the rest of the class."
8. Maria got scared and \_\_\_\_\_ of jumping off the high diving board.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

### 11. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

As we saw in Section 10, many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. Many of these nouns formed from two-word phrasal verbs can be combined with ordinary nouns to form compound nouns:

noun: backup    compound noun: backup disk

noun: follow-up    compound noun: follow-up call

Like ordinary compound nouns, the first noun has a function similar to that of an adjective:

question: What kind of clothes?

answer: Dirty clothes.

adjective

question: What kind of clothes?

answer: Workout clothes.

noun

The adjective dirty and the noun workout serve the same function: modifying the noun clothes. Always accent the first word in a compound noun:

noun: BACKup    compound noun: BACKupdisk

noun: FOLLOW-up    compound noun: FOLLOW-up call

#### backup

1. back... up p.v. When you walk backward, you backup. When you drive a vehicle in reverse, you back up or back the vehicle up.

The fire was so hot that we had to back up.

I put the car in reverse and backed it up.

2. back up p.v. When you are explaining something, and you repeat something that you already said, you back up. You're going too fast. Can you back up a little and explain your plan again?

Sorry, I forgot part of the story. Let me back up a little.

3. back... up p.v. When you make a claim or statement and then show people evidence or give them information proving that the claim or statement is true or correct, you back it up.

No one believed Jim's accusations because he couldn't back them up with any evidence.

The IRS asked me for some receipts to back up my deductions.

4. back... up p.v. When you support people in a conflict or a confrontation, you back them up. When you support people by doing some work or a difficult assignment, you back them up.

Linda said she would back me up if I complained about our supervisor.

The general backed up his threats with 400,000 soldiers.

Jerry is the bar's main bartender, and Tanya backs him up when it gets busy.

backup n. Someone or something that supports or is ready to provide support in a conflict or a confrontation by doing some work or a difficult assignment is a backup.

When the rioters grew more violent, the police called for backup.

The firefighter entered the burning building without a backup.

5. back... up p.v. When you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, so that you will still have it if the original information is lost or damaged, you back it up.

If you're going to install that new software, be sure you back up your entire hard disk first.

I back my work up every day before I go home.

backup n. A duplicate of important information, such as a computer program or data, is a backup.

I keep a backup of my important computer files on floppy disks.

The major gave a backup copy of the battle plan to his secretary.

**backed up** part.adj. After you duplicate important information such as a computer program or data, the original is backed up.

I accidentally erased your book from your computer. I hope your work was backed up.

**6. back... up** p.v. When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery backs up the first.

The hospital bought a generator to back up the unreliable city power supply. We kept the old computer to back the new one up.

**backup** n. When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery is a backup.

The skydiver checked his main parachute and his backup before the flight. The school had to close when the main power and the backup both failed.

**7. back... up** p.v. When something backs up, it is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally. An accident backed up traffic for three miles. The assembly line is going to back up if Erik doesn't get the parts he needs soon.

**backup** n. A backup is a situation in which something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

I sat in that backup for three hours without moving an inch. The huge number of Christmas cards and packages caused a backup at the post office.

**backed up** part.adj. When something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally, it is backed up.

Let's take the train downtown. Traffic is always backed up at this time of the morning.

### **cut off**

**1. cut... off** p.v. When you completely remove part of something with a knife, saw, or pair of scissors, you cut it off.

He cut off a piece of cheese so that I could taste it. One of the kings of England had his head cut off.

**2. cut... off** p.v. When you stop the supply or flow of something, such as water, electricity, or money, you cut it off or you cut off the people receiving it.

I won't be surprised if my electricity is cut off—I haven't paid the bill in three months.

The bartender told the drunk guy that she was cutting him off.

**cutoff** n. The time when something, such as water, electricity, or money, is cut off is the cutoff, cutoff point, or cutoff date.

I got a notice saying that if I don't pay my water bill soon, the cutoff date will be March 10. Ninety is the cutoff—students with lower scores on the exam won't be accepted into the advanced program.

**3. cut... off** p.v. When you abruptly and rudely drive a vehicle in front of other people's vehicles, causing them to suddenly slow down or stop, you cut them off.

I had to slam on the brakes when some jerk cut me off on the way to work. The lady in the red car tried to cut me off, but I wouldn't let her get in front of me.

**4. cut... off** p.v. When someone is cut off while speaking on the telephone, the connection is accidentally broken. I was in the middle of an important call when I was cut off. Getting cut off happens all the time when you're on the phone to China.

**5. cut ...off** p.v. When you create a physical or psychological barrier between yourself and other people, you cut yourself off from them. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are cut off from them.

After Dan joined a cult, he completely cut himself off from his family and friends. A flash flood cut us off from the rest of the expedition.

cutoff part.adj. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are cutoff.

The bridge was destroyed by the earthquake, and now we're cut off.

### drop off

1. drop... off p.v. When you take things or people to another place and leave them there, you drop them off.

Can you drop me off at the train station on your way to work? Luis dropped off his laundry at the cleaners.

drop-off n. Something that has been dropped off is a drop-off. The place where something or someone is dropped off is a drop-off point, drop off window, and soon.

Luis left his laundry at the drop-off window. The north side of the train station parking lot is for drop-offs.

2. drop off p.v. When a business's sales, the occurrence of some event, or the interest some people have in something declines, it drops off.

Attendance at baseball games has been dropping off in the last few years. After CDs were introduced, sales of records dropped off sharply.

drop-off n. A decline in a business's sales, in the occurrence of an event, or in the interest some people have in something, is a drop-off.

There has been a drop-off in traffic deaths thanks to strict drunk driving laws. The drop-off in car sales was explained by the recession.

3. drop off p.v. When the level of the ground declines steeply, it drops off.

Be careful hiking this trail, it drops off steeply on the other side of the mountain. The island has no beach at all.

The land drops off straight into the sea.

drop-off n. A steep decline in the level of the ground is a drop-off.

The bus driver didn't see the drop-off, and the bus plunged into the gorge. It was hard to see the drop-off because of the dense jungle.

### follow up

1. follow up (on) p.v. When you follow up on something, you return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

I saw a beautiful house with a "for sale" sign and I followed up on it when I got home. The doctor told me I'd need to follow up the treatment with physical therapy.

follow-up n. A follow-up, follow-up call, follow-up visit, and so on, is a return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

The customer service manager made a follow-up call to make sure I was happy with the repair job. The doctor asked me to see him two months after the operation for a follow-up.

**take out**

1. take ... out (of) p.v. When you take something out or take it out of a container, storage place, or building, you remove it. Put in into is the opposite of take out.

I want to take some books out of the library tonight. Jake took out a gun and shouted, "This is a holdup!" Nancy took \$500 out of the bank.

takeout n. Takeout is food that is taken from a restaurant to be eaten at another location. Carryout and carry-out food are the same as takeout and take-out food.

I don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's get takeout. That take-out chicken is good, but it sure is greasy.

2. take ...out (of) p.v. When you remove something because you do not want it or because it is damaged, you take it out or take it out of something. Put in into is the opposite of take out.

The teacher said my story would be a lot better if I took this part out of the third paragraph.

The school will be closed while the asbestos insulation is being taken out and replaced.

3. take... out (of) p.v. When you take money out or take money out of a bank or a bank account, you withdraw the money. Put in is the opposite of take out.

I had to take money out of my savings account to pay for my medical bills.

Nicole's at the bank taking \$ 1,000 out.

4. take.. .out p.v. When you take people out you go with them to do something enjoyable — dinner in a restaurant, a movie, and so on — and pay for it yourself.

What do you think about taking Mom out for Mother's Day?

Jim took his girlfriend out last Friday.

5. take.. .out p.v. [informal] When you take people out, you kill them.

The snipers will try to take out the kidnapper when he opens the door.

The hit man took Vito out with a shotgun blast to the head.

**try out**

1. try... out p.v. When you try something out, you try it to see if you want to buy it or to see if you want to start using it regularly.

I'm not going to spend \$2,000 on a bicycle unless I try it out first. You can try it out for thirty days without any obligation.

tryout n. When you give something a tryout, you test it to see if you want to buy it or start using it regularly.

I gave Betty's new diet a tryout, but I actually gained weight.

The airline gave the new plane a thorough tryout before making a decision.

2. try... out p.v. When you try people out, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before hiring them or before giving them more difficult work to do.

The manager agreed to try him out for a week.

I told the supervisor that if she tried me out, she'd see that I could do the job.

tryout n. When you give people a tryout, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before giving them more difficult work to do.

Tryouts for the football team will be next Saturday and Sunday.

If you give Mike a tryout, I'm sure you won't be disappointed.

3. try out (for) p.v. When you try out or try out for something, you try to show that you can perform a job well in order to get hired.

A lot of guys will try out, but only a handful will make the team.

Daniela's mother told her, "Trying out for the cheerleading squad isn't as important as doing your homework."



**wake up**

1. wake... up p.v. When you stop sleeping, you wake up. When you cause other people to stop sleeping, you wake them up.

AH is so sleepy in class that the teacher must wake him up every five minutes.

I woke up at 2:00 AM and couldn't get back to sleep.

wake-up part.adj. When you are staying at a hotel and you ask the desk clerk to call you at a certain time to wake you up, you ask for a wake-up call.

I asked the desk clerk to give me a wake-up call at 7:30.

2. wake... up p.v. When you learn something that causes you to understand the truth about something or someone, it wakes you up or wakes you up to the truth about something or someone,

I used to smoke, but when my best friend died of lung cancer, it really woke me up. Hey, wake up! Nicole is lying to you. Can't you see that?

**work out**

1. work out p.v. When a situation works out a certain way, it happens that way. When a situation does not work out, it is not satisfactory.

The switch to the new system worked out a lot better than anyone expected.

She said that living with her in-laws wasn't working out very well.

2. work out p.v. When a situation works out, the end result is successful.

Yes, I thought your idea was terrible, but I must admit it worked out.

The marriage didn't work out, and they were divorced after six months.

3. work out p.v. When a calculation or measurement works out to be a certain amount, this amount is the result of the calculation or measurement.

The cost of the booze we need for the reception works out to more than \$ 1,500.

The monthly payment on a 6 percent loan works out to \$642.

4. work... out p.v. When you work out a calculation, measurement, or other problem, you do the work necessary to determine the result of the calculation or measurement or think about how to solve the problem.

Maria worked out how much paint we will need for the living room — twenty-five gallons.

I've forgotten how to work out math problems without a calculator.

You need to go to the airport, I need to go to work, and we have only one car. How are we going to work this out?

5. work out p.v. When you work out a solution or plan, you decide what to do after careful consideration, either alone or in discussion with other people.

The opposing lawyers worked out a compromise.

I think I've worked out a way to buy a new car without borrowing money.

6. work out p.v. When you exercise in order to improve your health or physical appearance, you work out.

Bob works out in the gym for two hours every night. I'm a fat slob.

I need to start working out again.

workout n. A series of exercises done in order to improve your health or physical appearance is a workout.

Workout clothes are clothes you wear while exercising.

I'm really sore from that workout last night. The trainer designed a workout for each player on the team.

workout n. When you say that you gave a mechanical device or system a workout, you mean that you caused it to perform some lengthy or difficult work,

Driving to Alaska sure gave this old truck a workout.

The snack bar got a real workout when three buses full of hungry tourists stopped at the same time.



EXERCISE 11 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I almost had an accident on the way to work when another driver \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
2. With so many delivery truck drivers out sick with the flu, deliveries are starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You should always \_\_\_\_\_ your important computer files.
4. The art restorers are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to clean the painting without damaging it.
5. I hit a tree while I was \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The butcher has only nine fingers. He \_\_\_\_\_ the other one \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Professor Childress has some interesting theories, but can he \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ with any evidence?
8. After every sale, a good salesperson \_\_\_\_\_ with a cat! to make sure the customer is satisfied.
9. I'm going to leave early tomorrow so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ some film \_\_\_\_\_ at the photo lab.
10. No one believed I was telling the truth until Charles \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ around 7:00, but this morning I overslept.
12. Lydia had planned to spend the summer in Italy, but it didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The sharpshooter was ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy leader.
14. The designers put in manual controls to \_\_\_\_\_ the automatic system.
15. David and Maria \_\_\_\_\_ how much their wedding is going to cost.
16. The cost of their wedding \_\_\_\_\_ to \$225 per person.
17. Be careful — the north side of the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ sharply.
18. Hello? Hello? The phone is dead; I guess we were \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Next weekend we're \_\_\_\_\_ Mom and Dad \_\_\_\_\_ for their fiftieth wedding anniversary.
20. The professor's lecture was really confusing, so I asked him to please \_\_\_\_\_ and explain it again.
21. The bank robbers tried to escape through the back door, but the police went to the back of the bank and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
22. People's fascination with the quintuplets \_\_\_\_\_ quickly after the sextuplets were born.
23. Bob bought some new skis, and this weekend he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
24. I wasn't very responsible when I was younger, but having children really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
25. Ned used to exercise every day, but he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ in months.
26. The baseball manager decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the new pitcher to see what he could do.
27. I like most of this article you wrote about me, but there's one thing I'd like you to \_\_\_\_\_.
28. Sam had a tot of big ideas when he was young, but his life sure hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ the way he expected.
29. The electricity was \_\_\_\_\_ after a tree fell during the storm and cut some power lines.
30. I \_\_\_\_\_ my ID card \_\_\_\_\_ of my pocket and showed it to the guard.
31. Lydia has never \_\_\_\_\_ a penny \_\_\_\_\_ of her savings account.

EXERCISE 11 b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Did you back up? (your work, it) \_\_\_\_\_
2. They're cutting off. (the power, it) \_\_\_\_\_
3. I dropped off at the airport. (Frank/him) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mom asked me to take out. (the garbage, it) \_\_\_\_\_
5. Alex tried out. (his new bicycle, it) \_\_\_\_\_
6. Mike has woken up. (Ali, him) \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 11 c — Write answers to the questions using nouns and compound nouns from this section. There may be more than one way to answer a question.

1. The photographer always keeps two cameras with him. One is his main camera. He'll use the second if there's a problem with the first. What is the second camera?
2. The phone company says my telephone service will stop on July 1 if I don't pay my bill before that date. What is July 1?
3. Dr. Smith is a new doctor. If he's not sure how to treat a patient, he'll call Dr. Wood for help. What is Dr. Wood to Dr. Smith?
4. You used the new exercise equipment to see if you wanted to buy it. What did you do to the exercise equipment?
5. The police arrested Mrs. Taylor's husband because he was beating her. A social worker visited Mrs. Taylor a few days later to talk to her. What did the social worker do?
6. The clothes I wore yesterday while I was exercising got very dirty. What got dirty?
7. We got food from a Chinese restaurant and ate it at home. What kind of food did we eat?
8. Because of construction, traffic on the interstate stopped and there was a long line of cars. What was on the interstate?
9. The number of arrests for burglary is a lot lower this year than last year. What has happened to the number of arrests for burglary?
10. Sally lost something very important on her computer because she didn't make another copy in case there was a problem with the original. Why did Sally have a problem?
11. At the edge of the continental shelf, the sea floor falls several thousand feet. What is at the edge of the continental shelf?
12. I made 7,000 copies on this photocopier. What did I do to the photocopier?

EXERCISE 11d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The electric company stopped my electricity because I didn't pay my bill. What did they do to the electricity?
2. I bought some fried chicken, and I took it to my house. What kind of food did I buy?
3. Exercising is good for your health. What is good for your health?
4. The long-distance company offered to let me use their service free for thirty days, and I'm going to try it. What am I going to do to the long-distance company's service?
5. In Question 4, what is the long-distance company letting me do?
6. During the flood, a lot of people couldn't leave their houses because of the water. What did the water do to them?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe these people?
8. You're making an extra copy of your work just in case. What are you doing?
9. In Question 8, what would you call the extra copy of your work that you're making?
10. The newspaper reporter is getting more information about something interesting that someone told her on the phone. What is the reporter doing?
11. My exercise routine is very difficult. What is difficult?
12. The prosecutor proved his accusation with some photos. What did the prosecutor do with the photographs?
13. Jane wants to show the basketball coach that she would be a good member of the basketball team. What does Jane want to do?
14. I have a second alarm clock in case the first doesn't wake me up. What does my second alarm clock do to my first?

## 12. FOCUS ON: past perfect phrasal verbs

The past perfect is used to say that one thing in the past happened before another thing in the past:

Mike said the wedding had fallen through.

past earlier in the past

When I got to work, Mr. Toy for had already signed in.

past earlier in the past

The past perfect is formed with had and the past participle of the verb:

present: He wakes up.

past: He woke up.

past perfect: He had woken up.

### back off

1. back off p.v. When you move away from danger or a person you are arguing or fighting with in order to avoid injury or a more serious fight or argument, you back off. When you tell people to back off, you are warning them that you are becoming angry and that a fight or argument is likely.

I'm warning you! You'd better back off.

Tom backed off when he saw that Jake had a gun.

### come across

1. come across p.v. When people cross from one side of a space or distance to where you are, they come across. As soon as Nicole saw me, she came across the room and gave me a big hug.

By 1910, millions of immigrants had come across the ocean to America.

2. come across p.v. When you come across people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. Run across is similar to come across.

I asked the antique dealer if she had ever come across a Windsor chair.

On the trail, we came across some hikers from Australia.

3. come across p.v. When something you say or do comes across a certain way, your attitude or feelings are perceived in this way by other people.

I was just joking, but I don't think it came across that way.

His American humor didn't come across well in Britain.

### come up

1. come up (to) p.v. When people move toward you to a higher level or position, or from the south to the north, they come up. Come down is the opposite of come up.

Why don't you come up and see me some time?

My cousin from San Antonio came up to Detroit last week.

2. come up p.v. When you move to a higher social or professional position, you come up.

I saw Dan driving a Mercedes. He's really coming up in the world.

The major didn't go to the military academy. He came up through the ranks.

3. come up p.v. When a new topic is introduced into a conversation, it comes up.

I don't agree with Jim about anything, so if politics comes up, I just leave the room.

We were discussing possible candidates to manage the new office, and your name came up.

4. come up p.v. When something unexpected happens that requires further attention, it comes up.

I'm sorry I can't go to your party; something important has come up.

Until this situation came up, we were having a nice, relaxing weekend.

5. come up p.v. [always continuous] When something is coming up, it will happen soon.

Mother's Day is coming up, so I need to buy my mother a gift soon.

The TV announcer told the audience what was coming up after the commercial.

### **fall through**

1. fall through p.v. When people or things drop through an opening from one side to the other side, they fall through.

The roofer had fallen through a hole in the roof.

My Uncle Fred was ice fishing when he fell through a hole in the ice and was never seen again.

2. fall through p.v. When a plan, an arrangement, or a business deal does not happen or is canceled because of a problem or because someone does not do what is expected, it falls through.

The family reunion fell through after Dad got sick.

Our house is back on the market. The deal fell through because the buyers couldn't get a loan.

### **put out**

1. put... up p.v. When you move something to a higher level, you put it up.

Put these knives up where the baby can't reach them.

He aimed the gun at me and said, "Put your hands up or I'll shoot."

2. put... up p.v. When you attach something, such as a picture or a sign, to a wall, you put it up.

The teacher had put some posters up in her new classroom.

Our real estate agent is putting up a "for sale" sign.

3. put... up p.v. When you build or install something, such as a building, shelf, fence, or wall, you put it up.

We need to put up a fence to keep the rabbits out of our garden.

I talked to a carpenter about putting up some shelves in the family room.

4. put... up p.v. When you erect or assemble something that is collapsed, folded, or in several pieces, you put it up.

The circus put up their tent outside of town.

The Native Americans stopped by the river and put up their teepees.

5. put up p.v. When you contribute money to pay for or help pay for something, you put up the money.

The mayor offered to put up half the money necessary to build a new stadium for the team.

Mr. Taylor said he would put up \$3 million toward the cost of a new cancer treatment facility.

6. put up p.v. When you fight, resist, or argue against something, you put up a fight or put up resistance.

The union put up a fight when the company tried to lay off workers.

The Japanese put up little resistance when the marines landed.

7. put... up p.v. When you put people up, you let them stay with you, usually temporarily, in your house or in a hotel.

Sam didn't have anywhere else to go after the fire, so I said I would put him up for a couple of nights.

The hotel desk clerk apologized for not being able to put us up.

### **screw on**

1. screw... on p.v. When you screw on the top of a circular container, you turn it so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside.

I hadn't screwed the top of the gas can on tight enough, and all the gas leaked out.

If you don't screw the top of the bottle on, the soda pop will go flat.

screwed on part.adj. After you turn the top of a circular container so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside, the top is screwed on.

2. screw... on p.v. When you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, you screw it on.

Make sure you screw each of the nuts on tightly.

Put the new ink cartridge in the bottom half of the pen and then screw on the top.

screwed on part.adj. After you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, the first part is screwed on.

The top of that water bottle isn't screwed on, and it might leak all over the place.

### sign in

1. sign ... in p.v. When you sign in, you write your name on a list to show that you have arrived at your workplace or at some other place, such as a hotel or a club.

I'm going to be late. Could you sign me in?

All visitors to the consulate are asked to sign in.

### sign out

1. sign ... out p.v. When you sign out, you write your name on a list to show that you have left your workplace or some other place, such as a hotel or club.

Jim isn't here. He signed out at 5:06.

Dr. Wood usually forgets to sign out when she leaves the dink.

2. sign ... out p.v. When you sign something out, such as a book or something valuable or important, you write your name on a list to show that you have borrowed the item and are responsible for returning it.

The professor signed the book out of the rare book room.

Remember to sign out your lab equipment before chemistry class.

EXERCISE 12a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The information in this file is top secret. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ before you can remove it from this room.

2. Something \_\_\_\_\_ at the last minute, and I had to cancel my trip.

3. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ the tent before it gets too dark.

4. I was in the library, and I \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting books.

5. I was sure Janice was still in the building somewhere because she hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.

6. The wedding \_\_\_\_\_ when the groom was arrested for bigamy.

7. My son always \_\_\_\_\_ a big fight when I try to get him to go to bed.

8. I wasn't in the mood for a fight, so I decided to \_\_\_\_\_.

9. The search party found that the snowmobiler had \_\_\_\_\_ a hole in the ice and drowned.

10. No one said anything about you last night. Your name didn't \_\_\_\_\_ even once.

11. The store owner \_\_\_\_\_ a "no smoking" sign.

12. To attach the filter to the camera lens, you just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

13. The manager always checked to see who didn't \_\_\_\_\_ on time.

14. The charity was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 million toward the purchase of new medical equipment.

15. Someone had \_\_\_\_\_ the lid \_\_\_\_\_ so tightly that I couldn't get it off.

16. My house was destroyed by a tornado. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days?
17. I was upstairs working when my wife \_\_\_\_\_ to ask me what I wanted for lunch.
18. The applicant's criticism of his previous employer didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with the interviewer.
19. I bought a plastic Christmas tree that's really easy to \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ the Golden Gate Bridge every morning to go to work.
21. I didn't go to a fancy Ivy League college. I \_\_\_\_\_ the hard way.
22. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the window shade \_\_\_\_\_ so that we can get more light in here, please?
23. Susie's mother told her that Christmas was \_\_\_\_\_, so she had better be a good girl.

EXERCISE 12b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs past perfect.

1. Mike told me that Jerry had been angry and was going to hit Bill, but that Jerry had then changed his mind and walked away. What had Jerry done?
2. Luis had written his name on a piece of paper to show that he had come to work. What had Luis done?
3. The carpenter had dropped suddenly from the second floor to the first floor through a hole IN the floor. What had the carpenter done?
4. Timmy had argued with his mother because he didn't want to go to bed. What had Timmy done?
5. Todd's explanation made a good impression on the jury. What had Todd's explanation done?
6. The rich lady had given the money to build an animal shelter. What had the rich lady done?
7. The host of the TV talk show had said that the dancing bear act was going to take place right after the commercial. What had the host of the TV show said about the dancing bear act?
8. The cook had turned the lid of the jar so that it was tight. What had the cook done?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lid of the jar after the cook turned it so that it was tight?
10. The homeless shelter had allowed them to sleep there overnight. What had the homeless shelter done?
11. The president canceled his vacation because a serious problem had suddenly occurred. Why did the president cancel his vacation?
12. We'd had a deal to buy a new house, but we didn't buy it because of a problem. What had happened to our deal?
13. Marsha's name had been mentioned during the meeting. What had Marsha's name done?
14. The Ortegas had built a fence around their swimming pool. What had the Ortegas done?
15. You had found some old newspapers while cleaning the attic. What had you done?
16. Miguel had traveled from Miami to New York. What had Miguel done?
17. The doctor had written her name on a piece of paper to show that she had left the hospital. What had the doctor done?

EXERCISE 12c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make some of them questions, some negative, and some present or past perfect.

1. \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_.



EXERCISE 12d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back up, 11	follow up, 11	point to, 4	try out, 11
cut off, 11	go after, 4	put to, 4	wake up, 11
drop off, 11	pay for, 4	take out, 11	work out, 11
fall off, 10	plan for, 4	throw up, 2	wrap up, 4

1. I don't care if it takes me the rest of my life, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ the terrible thing you did!
2. The salesman got a good lead from a friend, and he \_\_\_\_\_ on it immediately.
3. We need to take the baby to the doctor right now. She's \_\_\_\_\_ twice in the last hour.
4. Sales have \_\_\_\_\_ by 13 percent in the last year.
5. That was a very interesting question you \_\_\_\_\_ Mark at the meeting.
6. Relax, everything's going to \_\_\_\_\_ okay.
7. Can you follow me in your car so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_ at the mechanic?
8. Erik \_\_\_\_\_ his son \_\_\_\_\_ and told him it was time for school.
9. I drove into the mountains to \_\_\_\_\_ my truck's four-wheel drive \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You should always \_\_\_\_\_ anything important before you install a new program.
11. The police officer asked the boy where his father was, and the boy \_\_\_\_\_ the bar across the street.
12. It's getting pretty late. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ this meeting \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The guy behind the counter \_\_\_\_\_ a small piece of cheese so I could taste it.
14. It was a bit of a problem when Jane brought her children with her to my dinner party. I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ so many people.
15. The censor told the film director to \_\_\_\_\_ some of the violent scenes.
16. Jane's going to \_\_\_\_\_ that new job in the Boston office.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES



### 13. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 1

The passive voice is used when what happened (the verb) is more important than who did it (the subject):

The scene of the crime was dosed off by the police.

when the subject is obvious:

The tests were handed in. (by the students — who else?)

or when the subject is unknown:

My dog was run over. (by an unknown person)

The passive is formed with be and the past participle of the verb. Be can be in any tense and can be continuous:

The game has been called off.

My name was left off.

The tent is being set up.

The criminals will be tracked down.

As we saw in the first three examples, saying who performed the action with a by phrase is optional, but it is always possible. This is a good way to test a sentence to see if it is in the passive:

The game has been called off by the referee.

My name was left off by Charles.

The tent is being set up by the campers.

The criminals will be tracked down by the police.

#### call off

1. call... off p.v. When you call off an event, such as a party, game, or something else that had been previously planned, you cancel it.

The football game was called off because of rain.

We can't call the party off— it's going to start in half an hour.

#### dose off

1. close ...off p.v. When you close off an areayou prohibit people from entering it or passing through it by locking the door or blocking the entrance.

The police closed several streets off because of the parade.

The house was so expensive to heat that the owners closed several rooms off.

closed off part.adj. An area that you are prohibited from entering or passing through because the door has been locked or the entrance has been blocked is closed off

Three rooms in the museum are closed off.

#### hand in

1. hand ... in (to) p.v. When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work, you hand it in or hand it in to that person. Turn in is similar to hand in.

The tests must be handed in no later than 11:00.

He finished his investigation and handed his report in to the committee.

2. hand ... in p.v. When you hand in your resignation or letter of resignation, you inform your employer that you are quitting your job.

I was so furious that I handed my letter of resignation in the next day.

The President asked the cabinet members to hand in their resignations.

3. hand ... in (to) p.v. When you give something to a person of authority who has demanded it or because you no longer need or want it, you hand it in or hand it in to a person of authority. Turn in is similar to hand in.

The guard was ordered to hand his gun in after he shot the window washer.

The drivers return to the factory at 5:00 and hand their keys in to the dispatcher before they leave.

hit on   hit on & hits on

hitting on

hit on

hit on

1. hit on p.v. When you think of an interesting idea or a solution to a problem, you hit on it.

I think I've hit on a way to solve this problem.

After two years of tests, they finally hit on the solution.

2. hit on p.v. [informal] When you hit on a person of the opposite sex, you approach and aggressively try to interest that person in you romantically or sexually.

Lydia had a terrible time at the party. She was hit on by every guy there.

Let's go somewhere else — Mark keeps hitting on me, and I'm tired of it.

leave off

leave off & leaves off

leaving off

left off

left off

1. leave... off p.v. When you do not include people or things on a list, either accidentally or deliberately, you leave them off.

After what happened at the last party, Dan wasn't surprised that he was left off the guest list.

Check to make sure you don't leave anyone off the list.

2. leave off p.v. When you interrupt something that you intend to finish later, you leave off at the point where you stop.

Okay class, we left off on page 92 last week, so open your books to page 93.

Finish your story. Uncle Fred. You left off where the giant octopus was about to eat you.

### let off

1. let... off p.v. When you let someone off a bus or other form of transportation, you stop it so that person can leave it.

The driver let her off at the corner. That's my house there. Can you let me off please?

2. let... off p.v. When you are let off by a person in authority, you are not punished or you are given only a light punishment.

It was Jake's first offense, so the judge let him off with a warning.

People were shocked that he had been let off so lightly.

3. let... off p.v. When you fire a gun or explode bombs or fireworks, you let them off. (regional) When you let off steam, you express angry feelings or frustration or do something to relieve those feelings.

The high school was evacuated after someone let off a smoke bomb.

When I was a kid I used to love letting off firecrackers on the Fourth of July.

I'm sorry I was so angry this morning; I was just letting off steam.

### light up

1. light... up p.v. When you shine lights on something or attach lights to something, you light it up.

Airport runways are lit up so that pilots can see them in the dark.

The police lit the house up with their spotlights.

lit up part.adj. After a light is shined on something or you put lights inside or attach lights to the outside of something, it is lit up.

The signs aren't lit up, so it's hard to see them at night.

2. light... up p.v. When you light up a cigarette, cigar, or pipe, you use a match or lighter to start it burning.

Here are the matches — let's light up. Lighting a cigarette up next to the gasoline truck was the last thing he ever did.

**track down**

1. track... down p.v. When you find things or people after looking very hard for them, you track them down.  
The terrorists were tracked down by Interpol.  
I finally tracked down that book I've been looking for.

EXERCISE 13a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The judge \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.
2. It wasn't cold enough, so we \_\_\_\_\_ the hockey game.
3. As soon as Nancy's boyfriend went to the washroom, the guy at the next table \_\_\_\_\_ her.
4. Every Christmas my father used to \_\_\_\_\_ our house with thousands of lights.
5. The police finally \_\_\_\_\_ the killers \_\_\_\_\_ and arrested them.
6. The principal caught me as I was \_\_\_\_\_ a cigarette in the washroom.
7. The room that was damaged by the fire was \_\_\_\_\_ to the public.
8. I was really angry that I was \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
9. That's a great idea! You've really \_\_\_\_\_ something.
10. Three students got a zero because their projects weren't \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
11. Driver, can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ at the next corner?
12. Dr. Smith resumed his lecture where he had \_\_\_\_\_ before the lunch break.
13. After Wilson screwed up the finance department, he was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ his letter of resignation.
14. Even though the enemy soldiers were half a mile away, we \_\_\_\_\_ a few shots.
15. The crooked police officers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ their badges \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 13b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The bride hasn't called off. (the wedding, it) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Are they closing off? (the gallery, it) \_\_\_\_\_
3. The accountant handed in. (her report, it) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Have you left off? (Carmen, her) \_\_\_\_\_
5. The judge let off. (the pickpocket, him) \_\_\_\_\_
6. I told him not to light up. (the cigarette, it) \_\_\_\_\_
7. The EPA tracked down. (the polluters, them) \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 13c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. He discovered the source of the rumor. What happened to the source of the rumor?
2. The students finished their quizzes and gave them to the teacher. What happened to the quizzes?
3. The judge never sends first-time offenders to jail. What always happens to first-time offenders?
4. A guy started talking to Heather at the dance. What happened to Heather?
5. The list of candidates didn't include your name. What happened to your name?
6. The referee canceled the game. What happened to the game?
7. They are putting ropes around the plaza so that no one can go in. What is happening to the plaza?
8. In Question 7, after they finish putting ropes around the plaza, how would you describe it?
9. The battleship shined lights on the enemy submarine. What happened to the enemy submarine?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the submarine after the battleship shined lights on it?

EXERCISE 13d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burn down, 5	let out, 7	point out, 7	set up, 5
call in, 5	look at, 5	run into, 1	take apart, 7
give back, 1	pile up, 5	run over, 7	take off, 1
hand back, 5	plan for, 4	screw out of, 3	talk down to, 3

1. Most of the city was \_\_\_\_\_ by the invading soldiers.
2. Teacher, will points be \_\_\_\_\_ for spelling?
3. Dan is so rude — I have never been \_\_\_\_\_ like that before.
4. A conference will be \_\_\_\_\_ between the lawyers for each side.
5. The Taylors were \_\_\_\_\_ their life savings by their stockbroker.
6. The children were happy to be \_\_\_\_\_ of school early.
7. The entire staff was \_\_\_\_\_ to the office and given pink slips.
8. Several flaws in the plan were \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Raquel was almost \_\_\_\_\_ by a cement truck while she was driving to work.
10. There wasn't enough room inside the cabin, so the firewood had to be \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
11. The general said the occupied territory would never be \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The test will be \_\_\_\_\_ to the students tomorrow.
13. This engine has been \_\_\_\_\_ three times, but no one can figure out what's wrong with it.
14. This is a very important project. Every possible problem must be \_\_\_\_\_.
15. My neighbor stopped at the side of the road to change a flat tire, and he was \_\_\_\_\_ and killed by a drunk driver.
16. Each proposed design for the new flag was \_\_\_\_\_ and rejected.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

#### 14. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 1

The past participles of many English verbs can also be used as adjectives. You will see that sentences with adjectives formed from past participles are very similar to sentences with verbs in the passive voice: in both cases a form of be is used with the past participle. For this reason, it is not always easy to say whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice:

The door was closed. (Is this a passive sentence or is closed an adjective?)

Sometimes, whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice is clear from the sentence structure:

The door was closed by the secretary, (passive)

The door was closed when I came home last night, (adjective)

or the context:

question: What happens if the health inspector finds rats in a restaurant?

answer: It's closed. (passive)

question: Is the window open?

answer: It's closed. (adjective)

But in some cases it is not possible to say absolutely whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice. Fortunately, it is usually not very important because the meaning is often essentially the same. For that reason, throughout this book true adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives are both classified as participle adjectives.

Much more important than the difference between adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives is what the words mean.

Some participle adjectives are written with a hyphen (make-up), some without a hyphen (fixed up), and some as one word (rundown). Because not everyone agrees which participle adjectives should be hyphenated which should not, and which should be written as one word, you will occasionally see the same participle adjective written with or without a hyphen or written as one word. Also, British English hyphenates many participle adjectives that are not normally hyphenated in American English; many of the participle adjectives shown unhyphenated in this book are hyphenated in British English.

##### butt in

1. butt in p.v. When you enter a conversation, situation, or place (especially a line) aggressively, rudely, and without invitation you butt in.

I was trying to talk to Mm at the party, but Bob kept butting in.

My father taught me that it's not polite to butt in line; you have to go to the back and wait your turn.

##### dress up

1. dress... up p.v. When you dress up, you wear very nice clothes, often for a special occasion. When you dress people up, you put very nice clothes on them often for a special occasion.

You should always dress up for a job interview.

The Taylors dressed their children up so they could take some pictures.

dressed up part.adj. When you are dressed up, you are wearing very nice clothes, often for a special occasion.

Where are Tom and Nancy going? They're all dressed up.

I felt like an idiot at the party — everyone was really dressed up except me.

2. dress up (likelas) p.v. When people wear old-fashioned clothes or costumes, they dress up, dress up like someone, or dress up as someone.

Did you see Charles at the Halloween party? He dressed up like a cowboy.

At Jane's costume party, everyone has to dress up as a clown.

**dry up**

1. dry... up p.v. When something dries up or something dries it up, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.  
The sun came out and dried up all the rain. The Great Salt Lake is slowly drying up.  
dried up part.adj. After all water or other liquid in something goes away, it is dried up.  
The cowboys reached the river only to find that it was dried up.  
These leaves will burn okay now that they're dried up.
2. dry up p.v. When the amount or supply of something gets smaller and then disappears completely, it dries up.  
The factory switched to synthetic rubber after the supply of natural rubber dried up.  
The small grocery store's business dried up after a huge supermarket opened across the street.

**fill out**

1. fill... out p.v. When you fill out a form, you put information in the correct spaces. Fill in is the same as fill out.  
The personnel director asked Sofia to fill out an application.  
Fill the withdrawal slip out and give it to the teller.  
filled out part.adj. After all the information is in the correct spaces of a form, the form is filled out.  
Here's my application; it's all filled out. Are these forms blank or filled out?
2. fill... out p.v. When slender people gain weight, they fill out.  
Jake was really thin when he got out of prison, but he has really filled out since then.  
Nicole started to fill out after she started working at the candy shop.

**put away**

1. put... away p.v. When you return something to the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, you put it away.  
I told you to put away your toys before you go outside.  
Todd always dries the dishes, and I put them away.  
put away part.adj. If something is in the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, it is put away.  
Where is my tool kit? I looked in the closet, and it's not put away. The dishes are put away. Now let's watch TV.
2. put... away p.v. When people are put away, they are sent to prison or a mental institution.  
I hope they put that maniac away and throw away the key.  
Jake was put away for ten years after he was convicted of murder.
3. put... away p.v. [informal] When you consume large quantities of food or drink (especially alcoholic drink), you put it away.  
Be sure to buy plenty of beer if David is coming to the party. He can really put it away.  
I don't feel well. I put away four hot dogs and a bag of cookies.

**stick up**

1. stick... up p.v. When you use a gun or other weapon to rob people, banks, or stores, you stick them up. Hold up is the same as stick up.  
Call the police! They're sticking up the bank.  
If we need some money, we can always stick up a liquor store.  
stickup n. When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, there is a stickup. A holdup is the same as a stickup.  
A man wearing a ski mask yelled, "This is a stickup!"  
The detective was asking questions about the stickup last night.



2. stick... up p.v. When you put something, such as a picture, sign, or notice, in a place where people can see it, you stick it up.

Sam stuck a notice up about his lost dog.

I'm going to stick these "no smoking" signs up all over the school.

3. stick... up p.v. When you push something inside a container or space that is long and narrow, you stick it up.

We had to take Susie to the emergency room after she stuck a paper clip up her nose.

Mark stuck his hand up the chimney to try to find the hidden key.

4. stick up p.v. When something long and narrow is raised above the surface, it sticks up.

Be careful walking around a construction site — there might be a nail sticking up.

My hair was sticking up in the back after I woke up from my nap.

stuck-up part.adj. [informal — although the participle adjective stuck-up derives from stick up, the verb form is never used in this sense] When you think you are better than other people because you are more beautiful or more intelligent or because you come from a higher level of society, you are stuck-up.

Heather is the most popular girl in the school, but she isn't stuck-up.

They're so stuck-up — they'll never sit at our table.

### use up

1. use... up p.v. When you use up something, you use all of it.

After you use something up, be sure to write it on the grocery list.

I used up all the glue; we need to buy more.

used up part.adj. After all of something has been used, it is used up.

Do we have another tube of toothpaste in the house? This one's used up.

### wind up

1. wind ...up p.v. When you turn the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock to make it operate, you wind it up.

I overslept because I forgot to wind up my alarm clock. This toy doesn't use batteries; you have to wind it up.

wound up part.adj. After someone turns the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock, it is wound up.

The toy soldier is wound up. Just push the button to make it walk.

What is wrong with this watch? It's wound up, but it still doesn't work.

wound up part.adj. When you are nervous or tense, you are wound up.

Don't even talk to Joe today. He's really wound up.

I'm feeling really wound up — I need a drink.

2. wind up p.v. When you say that someone or something winds up a certain way or winds up doing something, you mean that this situation was the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. End up is similar to wind up.

We got totally lost and wound up 100 miles from the campground.

If you don't start driving more carefully, you're going to wind up dead.

3. wind ... up p.v. When you wind up an activity or event, you finish it or get ready to finish it. Wrap up is similar to wind up.

The detective wound up her investigation and made several arrests.

We'd better wind things up here; it's getting late.

4. wind ... up p.v. When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, string, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, you wind it up.

That's enough fishing for today. Let's wind up our lines and go home.



The firefighters wound up their fire hoses and went back to the station.

wound up part.adj. When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, it is wound up.

This rope is a mess. You should keep it wound up.

This electrical cord is really wound up tight.

EXERCISE 14a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We couldn't decide where to go, so we \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.
2. Be sure you \_\_\_\_\_ this form \_\_\_\_\_ carefully.
3. My son loves to eat. He can \_\_\_\_\_ an extra large pizza in less than fifteen minutes.
4. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ this notice \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall.
5. We're going out to a nice restaurant tonight, so be sure to \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Business at the ski shop always \_\_\_\_\_ in summer.
7. When you're finished with your Monopoly game, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Congress is \_\_\_\_\_ some unfinished business before the summer recess.
9. The firefighter \_\_\_\_\_ her hand \_\_\_\_\_ the drain pipe to try to reach the kitten.
10. The meeting's almost over \_\_\_\_\_ they're \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ now.
11. Janice went to the costume party \_\_\_\_\_ like Marie Antoinette.
12. The desert is so hot that rainwater \_\_\_\_\_ almost immediately.
13. I don't know what time it is. I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ my clock \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Be careful when you sail your boat in this shallow water. Sometimes logs \_\_\_\_\_ from the bottom.
15. Lydia has \_\_\_\_\_ a little since she had the baby.
16. Aunt Kathy finished knitting the sweater and \_\_\_\_\_ her knitting needles.
17. Frank and Jesse James \_\_\_\_\_ a bank in Northfield, Minnesota, in 1876.
18. I hope they catch those crooks and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
19. I \_\_\_\_\_ all my time \_\_\_\_\_ on the first half of the test and didn't have any time left for the second half.
20. My brother is so rude! Whenever I try to talk to my friend Karen, he \_\_\_\_\_ and won't let me talk.

EXERCISE 14b — Complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this section.

1. I hope it rains soon. Our lawn is really \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Why are you \_\_\_\_\_? Are you going to a party?
3. Some of these forms are blank and others are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. All the people who live in that neighborhood think they're better than everyone else in town. There're so \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I can't use my printer. The toner cartridge is \_\_\_\_\_, and I need to buy a new one.
6. The clock isn't working because it isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Tirnrny, are your toys all over the floor where they were last night, or are they \_\_\_\_\_?

EXERCISE 14c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Janice dressed up. (her son, him)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

The sun quickly dries up. (the water, it)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Filling out isn't necessary, (the entire form, it)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Ed put away in an hour. (six beers, them)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

They stuck up. (notices, them)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

6. I'm winding up. (my clock, it)

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 14d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jake was riding his motorcycle too fast and not being careful. Now he is in the hospital with a broken leg. What happened to Jake?
2. It was hard talking to my mother because my sister kept rudely interrupting our conversation. What did my sister keep doing?
3. A lot of rain fell and made a small lake in the field. Now, after a week, the water is not there anymore. What happened to the water?
4. Alex was playing with his toy trains. Now they are in the box where he keeps them when he is not playing with them. What did Alex do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe Alex's toys?
6. It rained three hours ago, but now there is no more water in the streets. How would you describe the streets?
7. I turned the key in this grandfather clock, and now it is working. What did I do to the clock?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the clock?
9. Daniela put on her best clothes for the dance. What did Daniela do?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe Daniela?
11. Luis wrote all the necessary information on the form. What did Luis do?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe the form?

EXERCISE 14e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

backed up, 11    cut off, 11    hooked up, 9    screwed up, 10  
 broken-down, 5    cut up, 7    hung up, 9    set up, 5  
 burned-out, 8    filled in, 10    paid for, 4    wake-up, 11  
 caught up, 9    grown-up, 10    piled up, 5    worked up, 9

1. The clothes are \_\_\_\_\_ in the closet.
2. I don't owe any money to the bank for my house. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My VCR is connected to my TV. My VCR is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We live far out in the country away from town, our friends, and our families. I don't like being so \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My car's \_\_\_\_\_, so I have to take the bus to work.
6. All the plans and arrangements for our vacation are ready; everything is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. All the spaces in this form have the necessary information in them. The form is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Nancy's four-year-old son was playing with her computer, and now it's all \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I was sick and missed several homework assignments in school. But I worked hard and finished all the homework I missed, and now I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I'm very nervous and upset about something. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
11. These videotapes aren't for children — they're \_\_\_\_\_ videotapes.
12. Timmy's mother used a knife to cut his meat into many small pieces. Timmy's meat is \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I'm tired all the time, I hate my job, and I need a vacation. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
14. My computer crashed last night, but fortunately all my important files are \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The hotel forgot my \_\_\_\_\_ call, and I missed my plane.
16. The magazines are \_\_\_\_\_ in a big stack.

English  
 AULAS PARTICULARES

### 15. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and will or be going to

Both will and be going to are used to talk about the future in English, but they are not the same.

Predictions: will or be going to

Use will or be going to for predictions. When you predict the future, you say what you think will happen:

The wind will blow away these paper plates.

The wind is going to blow away these paper plates.

Willingness: will

Use only will for willingness. When you offer to do something that you do not have to do, you are willing to do it:

I will put up the shelves for you.

Plans: be going to

Use only be going to for plans. When you decide to do something in the future, whether it is long and complicated or short and simple, you plan to do it:

He is going to head for Mexico next week.

The future with will is formed by using will plus the form of the verb:

statements: He will come through San Francisco.

question: Will he come through San Francisco?

negative: He will not come through San Francisco.

These contractions are used with will:

I will	=	I'll
you will	=	you'll
he will	=	he'll
she will	=	she'll
it will	=	it'll
they will	=	they'll
will not	=	won't

When two contractions are possible, it is more common to contract will with not rather than with a pronoun:

common: He won't come through San Francisco.

uncommon: He'll not come through San Francisco.

The future with be going to is formed with a form of be plus going to plus the form of the verb:

statement: He is going to head for Mexico next week.

question: Is he going to head for Mexico next week?

negative: He is not going to head for Mexico next week.

These contractions are used with be going to:

I am	=	I'm
you are	=	you're
he is	=	he's
she is	=	she's
it is	=	it's
they are	=	they're
are not	=	aren't
is not	=	isn't

When two contractions are possible, both are equally common:

common: He's not going to head for Mexico next week.

common: He isn't going to head for Mexico next week.

In informal spoken English, going to is often pronounced gonna. It is not necessary to pronounce going to in this way, but it is necessary to understand it.

### **blow away**

1. blow... away p.v. When the wind moves something away from where it was, it blows it away.

Don't leave the newspaper outside. The wind will blow it away. The picnic wasn't much fun. It was really windy, and everything kept blowing away.

2. blow... away p.v. [informal] When a person or company has an ability, product, or service that is much better than that of a competing person or company, it blows away the competing person or company.

Apple's new computer is so fast it's going to blow away the competition. I thought I had a chance to win the race, but Erik just blew me away.

3. blow... away p.v. [informal] When something you have seen or heard makes you very shocked, amazed, or emotional, it blows you away.

The first time I saw the Pyramids, they just blew me away.

I was blown away when my mother told me that I was adopted.

### **come through**

1. come through p.v. When you are in a place and people or things come through it, they pass from one side to the other side where you are.

Betty came through the door and sat down at our table.

The soldiers were coming through the hole in the wall.

2. come through p.v. When people travel to your town, stay for a while, and then leave, they come through or come through town.

Aunt Sally promised she'd come through Milwaukee on her way to Indianapolis.

3. come through p.v. When important information, authorization, or permission that you have been waiting for is received, it comes through.

We can buy the house — the loan finally came through.

The execution was stopped when the call from the governor came through.

4. come through (with) p.v. When you promise to do something or produce something and keep your promise, you come through or come through with what you promised to do or promised to produce.

We were all surprised when Bob came through with front row tickets just like he said he would. The state legislature promised to provide the financing for a new stadium, but they didn't come through.

5. come through p.v. When you come through a difficult or dangerous experience, you survive it.

My Uncle Fred saw lots of action during the war, but he came through without a scratch.

Coming through the earthquake alive was a miracle.

6. come through p.v. When someone's feelings, attitudes, or opinions can be perceived by someone else, they come through.

The author's hatred of the dictatorship came through in the novel.

The professor's enthusiasm for the subject really comes through in his lectures.

**dry out**

1. dry ...out p.v. When something dries out or something dries it out, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.  
Before you put this tent away, be sure you dry it out. After the flood, it took weeks for our house to dry out.  
dried out part.adj. After all the water or other liquid in something goes away, it is dried out.  
My skin always gets dried out in the winter.  
We shampooed our carpet a week ago, and it's still not dried out.

**fix up**

1. fix... up p.v. When you fix up a place, such as a building, street, or park, you repair and decorate it.  
I am going to fix this place up and try to sell it.  
The city decided to fix up the park.  
fixed up part.adj. After you repair and decorate a place, such as a building, street, or park, it is fixed up.  
Now that his house is fixed up, it looks pretty nice.  
When you see how fixed up Jim's apartment is now, you'll be surprised.  
fixer-upper n. [informal] A fixer-upper is a building in poor condition that can be repaired, renovated, or redecorated in order to increase its value.  
The way to make money in real estate is to buy a fixer-upper and do as much of the work yourself as you can.
2. fix... up p.v. When you fix yourself up, you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes.  
If you're going to that fancy restaurant, you'd better fix yourself up. Heather is upstairs fixing herself up for the prom.  
fixed up part.adj. After you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes, you are fixed up.  
Where's Lydia going? She's all fixed up.  
I got all fixed up, and my boyfriend took me to a demolition derby.
3. fix... up (with) p.v. When you fix people up with something, you arrange for them to have or to use something that they need or want.  
We told the hotel desk clerk that we wanted their best room, and she fixed us up with the honeymoon suite.  
The travel agent fixed me up with a limo to take me to the resort.
4. fix... up (with) p.v. [informal] When you fix people up or fix them up with someone, you arrange a date for them with a member of the opposite sex.  
Linda and Tom are perfect for each other. I'm going to fix them up.  
I asked Jerry if he'd fix me up with his sister.

**go with**

1. go with p.v. When one thing is usually or always found with another, they go with each other.  
A lot of responsibility goes with being a doctor.  
I never wanted to own an old house because of all the maintenance that goes with it.
2. go with p.v. When two things are part of one unit or set or are meant to be with each other, they go with each other.  
One of the fringe benefits of that job was the car that went with it. You can't buy the cup without the saucer that goes with it.
3. go with p.v. When one item of clothing looks nice with another, they go with each other.  
She needs to find a blouse that goes with her new skirt.  
I like white shirts because they go with everything.
4. go with p.v. When you go with people, you agree with and support their idea or plan.

Senator Dolittle has no opinions. He just goes with the majority. We've decided to go with the committee's recommendation.

5. go with p.v. When you choose someone or something from a group, you go with your choice.

That gray suit was nice, but I think I'm going to go with the black one.

Everyone who applied for the job is highly qualified. I don't know who I'm going to go with.

### head back

1. head back (to) p.v. When you head back or head back to a certain location, you return to a place where you were before. When you are headed back or are heading back to a certain location, you are returning to a place where you were before.

We'll spend a month in California and then head back to Des Moines. We got to the beach around 10:00, and we headed back when it started to get dark.

### head for

1. head for p.v. When you head for a certain location, you move toward it. When you are headed for or are heading for a certain location, you are planning to go there or you have stopped and will resume going there. Head toward is the same as head for.

Tomorrow we're going to leave Des Moines and head for California.

I told the guy at the gas station I was headed for Santa Fe.

2. head for p.v. When you are headed for or are heading for a certain situation, condition, or consequence, it is becoming more likely.

If you don't shut your mouth you're headed for trouble.

This is going to be a great vacation — we're heading for a good time!

### tell on

1. tell on p.v. [informal—used primarily by children] When you tell on people, you inform someone in authority, such as a parent or teacher, that they have made a mistake or broken a rule.

I broke a glass. You're not going to tell on me, are you? Timmy didn't do his homework, and his sister told on him.

EXERCISE 15a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The first time I held my newborn son in my arms it just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I asked Linda if she would \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ with her friend Nancy.
3. Bob said he could get us backstage after the concert, and he \_\_\_\_\_ just like he promised.
4. This house is dump now, but after I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, it'll look nice.
5. I saw you eating cookies before dinner when Mommy told you not to. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ you.
6. The composer's love for his native land really \_\_\_\_\_ through in his music.
7. Can you help me? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Toronto, but I'm lost.
8. I've never been to the opera before. I think I'd better \_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The train \_\_\_\_\_ town three times a week.
10. If you keep charging stuff like crazy on your credit cards, you're \_\_\_\_\_ bankruptcy.
11. Do you think these brown pants \_\_\_\_\_ this blue shirt?
12. All the books damaged in the flood have to be \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Coke's new sales promotion is going to \_\_\_\_\_ Pepsi \_\_\_\_\_.
14. We sat by the phone nervously waiting for the judge's decision to \_\_\_\_\_.



15. My brother works in a car rental place, and he said he can \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ with a Mercedes at no extra cost.
16. After looking at pictures of several models, the photographer decided to \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ Nicole.
17. Dr. Wood \_\_\_\_\_ the door and said hello.
18. All the clothes I left outside to dry were \_\_\_\_\_ by the storm.
19. My father hated being a salesman because of all the travel that \_\_\_\_\_ the job.
20. Two of my brothers went to Vietnam, but only one \_\_\_\_\_ it alive.
21. I asked the clerk in the computer store if the monitor \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.
22. It's getting late and I'm tired. I think I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ to my house.
23. His proposal made a lot of sense, so we decided to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

EXERCISE 15b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Use will or be going to with all phrasal verbs.

1. I asked the restaurant manager for the best table in the house, and he is going to give us a table next to the fireplace. What is the restaurant manager going to do?
2. Linda's father promised to pay for her wedding, and she is sure that he will. What is Linda sure about?
3. Raquel's husband is going to be very surprised when she tells him she won \$10 million in the lottery. What is the news going to do to her husband?
4. He'll repair some things in his house and paint it before he puts it on the market. What will he do?
5. In Question 4, how will the house be after he makes some repairs and paints it?
6. Timmy won't tell the teacher that Susie didn't do her homework if she gives him a candy bar. What won't Timmy do?
7. Those mobile homes aren't going to be there after the tornado. What is the tornado going to do?
8. If there's an earthquake, no one in this old building will survive. What won't the people do if there's an earthquake?
9. She'll put on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry and get a perm. What will she do?
10. In Question 9, how will she look after she puts on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry and gets a perm?
11. Tomorrow, you're going to leave San Diego and go to Tucson. What are you going to do tomorrow?
12. A month from now, you're going to leave Tucson and return to San Diego. What are you going to do a month from now?
13. Erik said he won't ask his sister if she will go on a date with Mike. What won't Erik do?
14. Lydia is at the paint store to choose a paint color for her house. She hates the color blue. What isn't Lydia going to do?
15. IBM has a new chip that's twice as fast as the competition's fastest chip. What is IBM going to do to the competition?
16. Uncle Fred is going to visit our town, stay for a short time, and then continue on his trip to Florida. What is Uncle Fred going to do?
17. This pond is going to slowly evaporate and disappear. What is the pond going to do?
18. In Question 17, after the pond evaporates, how will it be?

EXERCISE 15c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use will and be going to.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 15d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back off, 12    call off, 13    close off, 13    come across, 12    come up, 12  
fall through, 12    hand in, 13    hit on, 13    leave off, 13    let off, 13  
light up, 13    put up, 12    screw on, 12    sign in, 12    sign out, 12    track down, 13

1. Did my ex-husband talk about me at the party? Yes, your name \_\_\_\_\_ several times.
2. Our vacation plans \_\_\_\_\_ after Tom broke his leg.
3. I told you not to \_\_\_\_\_ that cigarette \_\_\_\_\_ in here.
4. Flying Mom here for the holidays is going to cost \$1,000. My brother is going to pay \$300, and I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the money.
5. So far, the police have been unable to \_\_\_\_\_ the stolen paintings.
6. The searchlights \_\_\_\_\_ the night sky, looking for enemy bombers.
7. You can't go in that part of the museum; it's been \_\_\_\_\_.
8. When you travel, always \_\_\_\_\_ the tops of your toiletries \_\_\_\_\_ tightly.
9. We decided to \_\_\_\_\_ our ski trip \_\_\_\_\_ because there wasn't enough snow.
10. I was getting really angry, and I told him that I was going to punch him in the nose if he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The teacher told the students to \_\_\_\_\_ their homework.
12. I didn't agree with that list of the 100 best movies. They \_\_\_\_\_ some of my favorites.
13. The manager reminded Maria not to forget to \_\_\_\_\_ when she comes to work in the morning.
14. Mrs. Nash isn't in the office anymore. She \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour ago.
15. The Judge told Jake that the next time he got in trouble he wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.
16. I was going through some stuff in the attic, and I \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting old pictures.

## 16. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with gerund objects, 1

Gerunds — verbs in the -ing form that function as nouns — can serve as objects of many phrasal verbs.

It is more common to use gerund objects with nonseparable two- and three-word phrasal verbs:

She's counting on getting that job.

gerund

I don't feel up to playing hockey.

gerund

but gerund objects are sometimes used with separable phrasal verbs:

I wouldn't put robbing a bank past him.

gerund

Mr. Taylor wants to give smoking up.

gerund

### believe in

1. believe in p.v. When you believe in something or believe in doing something, you have a strong opinion about something that is important to you.

I believe in working hard and saving money.

Maria doesn't believe in sex before marriage.

2. believe in p.v. When you believe in something, you think it exists.

Do you believe in ghosts?

Ned is an atheist; he doesn't believe in God.

3. believe in p.v. When you believe in people, you have confidence in them and believe what they say because you think they are honest, correct, or competent.

I don't care what anyone else says, I still believe in you.

We want to believe in you, but we need some proof that your invention really works.

### carry on

1. carry on p.v. When you carry on, you continue as before, despite a difficult experience in your life.

You'll have to carry on for the sake of the children.

It was difficult for Mrs. Nelson to carry on after her husband died.

2. carry on (with) p.v. When you carry on, carry on with an activity, or carry on doing an activity, you continue it or continue doing it.

The men stopped working when General Chambers entered the room, and he told them to carry on.

She plans to carry on with her career after the baby is born.

They knew I was trying to sleep, but they carried on talking and singing anyway.

3. carry ... on p.v. When you carry something on an airplane, you keep it with you in the passenger compartment instead of giving it to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment.

This suitcase is pretty big. I hope they'll let me carry it on.

You should carry your laptop computer on. You don't want to take any chances.

carry-on n. Carry-on, carry-on luggage, carry-on baggage, carry-on bags, and so on, are not given to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment but are kept in the passenger compartment of an airplane.

I'm staying only one night in New York, so all I'll need is a carry-on bag.

4. carry on (about) p.v. [informal] When you carry on or carry on about something, you are very persistent and vocal about something that upsets you.

I forgot our anniversary, and she carried on all day.

I said I was sorry; now will you please stop carrying on about it?

### count on

1. count on p.v. When you need something important to happen or a certain condition to exist, you are counting on it. When you need someone to do something important, you are counting on that person.

I'm counting on getting a ride to the airport with Betty.

Farmers count on a lot of rain in the spring.

2. count on p.v. When you rely on someone or something for help or support if you need it, you are counting on that thing or that person.

I'm going to sell this car and buy one that always starts. I need a car I can count on.

The governor said that she's counting on our support in the next election.

3. count on p.v. When you are certain that something will happen or that a certain condition will exist, you are counting on it.

Manlin makes a fool of himself at every party. You can count on it.

You can count on crowds and long lines at Disney World if you go in August.

### get through

1. get through (with) p.v. When you get through, get through with an activity, or get through doing an activity, you finish it or finish doing it.

I have so much homework that I might not get through with it until midnight.

After you get through washing the dishes, you can start ironing.

2. get through (to) p.v. When you get through or get through to someone, usually on a telephone or radio, you are able to speak to that person.

Nancy tried calling Jim last night, but she couldn't get through.

It wasn't easy, but I finally got through to my brother in Borneo.

3. get through (to) p.v. When you get through or get through to someone, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view.

Mr. Taylor has tried to make his daughter understand why it's important to work hard in school and get good grades, but he just can't get through. I've explained it a hundred times!

What do I have to do to get through to you?

4. get ...through p.v. [informal] When you get something through someone's head, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view. When you get something through your own head, you understand it.

I finally got it through my son's head that I was serious about sending him to military school.

When are you going to get it through your head that our marriage is over?

5. get... through p.v. When something gets you through a difficult experience, it comforts and supports you.

Julia's faith in God was what got her through the loss of her husband.

He was very nervous about giving the speech, so he had a drink to help get him through the ordeal.

### go for

1. go for p.v. [informal] When you go for something, you like it a lot.

Erik really goes for scuba diving.

Let's go to a different nightclub. I don't go for jazz.

2. go for p.v. When you go for something, you try to achieve it.

The gymnast said she was going to go for the gold at the next Olympics.

After she finished her master's, she went for a Ph.D.

3. go for p.v. [always continuous] When you have something going for you, you have an advantage that makes it easier for you to do something or get something that you want.

Sam's not especially good at basketball, but he has one thing going for him — he's seven feet tall. I have ten years of experience going for me, so I think I have a good chance of getting the job.

4. go for p.v. When you say that a statement about one person or thing goes for another person or thing, you mean that it is also true about the other person or thing. When you say "That goes for me," you are agreeing with someone else's opinion.

Heather said that Tom was a jerk, and I said that that goes for Tom's brother Bill, too.

Betty's really angry about it, and that goes for me, too.

### **hold off**

1. hold off p.v. When you hold off or hold off doing something, you delay doing it.

I held off setting our house until our youngest child moved out.

You'd better hold off accusing Mike until you're 100 percent sure.

1. hold ... off p.v. When you hold off an attack, you prevent the attacker from getting close to you or from winning the fight. If you hold off a competitor, you prevent the competitor from winning.

The enemy was so strong that there was no way to hold them off.

The champion held off the challenger and won the game.

put past

1. put... past p.v. [used only in the form and only in negative sentences] When you want to say that you think someone is capable of doing something wrong, you say that you wouldn't put it past that person. When you want to warn someone that you think another person is capable of doing something wrong, you say "Don't put it past (that person)."

Is he capable of murder? Well, I wouldn't put killing someone past him. Marvin is evil. There isn't any crime I wouldn't put past him. You don't think Hank would steal money from his grandmother? I know him better than you do — don't put it past him.

### **think about**

1. think about p.v. When you think about something or think about doing something, you consider it before making a decision.

The salesman tried to get me to sign the contract, but I said I'd think about it.

I'm thinking about quitting my job.

EXERCISE 16a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. This house is too small for our family. We're \_\_\_\_\_ moving to a bigger one.
2. These skis are pretty big. Do you think they'll let me \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
3. This work is very important, and I know you can do it. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ you.
4. At the next Olympics, Raul's going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new record in the pole vault.
5. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ talking about people behind their backs.
6. I tried several times to call Tim in Timbuktu, but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The roller coaster is very popular. If you go on the weekend, you can \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in line for three hours.
8. As soon as you \_\_\_\_\_ washing the car, come inside and eat lunch.
9. I wanted to buy a digital camera, but I \_\_\_\_\_ buying one until the prices fell.
10. Marvin seems like a nice guy, but he isn't. I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything \_\_\_\_\_ him.
11. David asked me to buy beer when I went to the store, but I forgot, and he \_\_\_\_\_ about it for an hour.
12. The defenders \_\_\_\_\_ the attackers as long as they could.
13. Mike really \_\_\_\_\_ auto racing when he was young.
14. Sally has a good education and a pleasant personality. She has a lot \_\_\_\_\_ her.
15. How can I \_\_\_\_\_ after this terrible tragedy?
16. I've explained the rules a thousand times. Why can't you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ your head that I'm the boss around here, not you?
17. Everyone else thinks Dr. Hatcher's ideas are crazy, but I \_\_\_\_\_ him.
18. Uncle John was the only one who knew how to run this business. Now that he's dead, we won't be able to \_\_\_\_\_.
19. I didn't used to \_\_\_\_\_ ghosts, but what I saw last night changed my mind.
20. I've tried to get her to understand my point of view, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
21. The Republicans are idiots, and that \_\_\_\_\_ the Democrats, too.
22. Letters from his family helped Jake \_\_\_\_\_ his prison sentence.
23. I always knew that my brother was the one person I could \_\_\_\_\_ if I had a problem.

EXERCISE 16b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Judy likes taking pictures a lot. How does she feel about taking pictures?
2. Maria didn't finish studying until 11:00 P.M. What didn't Maria do until 11:00 P.M.?
3. The Ortegas took two bags with them to keep in the passenger compartment when they flew to New York. What did they do to the two bags?
4. In Question 3, what kind of bags did the Ortegas keep with them?
5. Jane is considering spending the summer in Bolivia. What is Jane doing?
6. Bill feels strongly that hunting is wrong. How does Bill feel about hunting?
7. Paul couldn't continue his career as a dancer after his accident. What couldn't he do after his accident?
8. We delayed having children until after we had done some traveling. What did we do?
9. You think stealing is something Hank would do. What do you think about Hank?
10. Nancy is going to try to call her sister in Nepal tonight. What is Nancy going to try to do tonight?
11. Hank isn't reliable. You can't be certain he will do what he says he will do. What can't you do to Hank?
12. Dan was very angry, and he yelled and complained for three hours. What did Dan do for three hours?
13. You can't be 100 percent certain that the weather will be nice in Florida in the winter. What can't you do to the winter weather in Florida?



14. Many children are sure that monsters are real. What do many children think about monsters?

EXERCISE 16c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerund objects.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 16d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

closed off, 13    dressed up, 14    dried up, 14    filled out, 14  
 fixed up, 15    lit up, 13    put away, 14    screwed on, 12  
 stuck-up, 14    used up, 14    wound up, 14    wrapped up, 4

1. Charles is so \_\_\_\_\_. He thinks he's better than everyone else because he comes from a rich family.
2. Now that your house is \_\_\_\_\_, it's worth a lot more.
3. There isn't any more paper for the copier — it's \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I washed and dried the dishes, and now they're \_\_\_\_\_ in the cabinet.
5. Frank's really \_\_\_\_\_ about his wedding tomorrow.
6. The presents have wrapping paper on them. They're \_\_\_\_\_.
7. This form has all the information in the correct spaces. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The floor of the bathroom isn't wet anymore; it's \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Why is Sarah all \_\_\_\_\_? Is she going out dancing?
10. Be sure the top of the Coke bottle is \_\_\_\_\_. If it isn't, the Coke will go flat.
11. You can't go in the east wing of the palace because it's \_\_\_\_\_.
12. I can see the road easily at night when I'm driving because it's \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 16e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break down, 5    get over with, 3    put up with, 3  
 break out, 9    give up, 9    see about, 7  
 butt in, 14    go in for, 3    take in, 7  
 feel up to, 3    leave off, 13    wind up, 14  
 get around to, 6    look forward to, 3    work out, 11  
 get out of, 6    put up, 12

1. We couldn't decide where to go for dinner last night, so we \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.
2. Sally loves all outdoor sports, and she especially \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.
3. I hate cigarettes, and I will not \_\_\_\_\_ smoking in my house!
4. It's been seven years since Tom saw his sister. He's really \_\_\_\_\_ seeing her again.
5. My eyesight got so bad that I had to \_\_\_\_\_ driving.
6. I'm exhausted. I really don't \_\_\_\_\_ doing any more sightseeing.



7. The heat in my apartment doesn't work. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ the manager \_\_\_\_\_ getting it fixed.
8. It's been three hours since I asked you. When are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ taking out the garbage?
9. I promised Sally I would lend her \$1,000, but now I don't want to give it to her. How can I \_\_\_\_\_ lending her the money?
10. Raking the leaves is a big job, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ before it snows.
11. The teacher continued her lecture where she \_\_\_\_\_ the previous week.
12. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ all the details, but I've decided to quit my job and start my own business.
13. I was late to work because my car \_\_\_\_\_ on the expressway.
14. My TV was broken, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and had it fixed.
15. When you're camping, you should always \_\_\_\_\_ your tent \_\_\_\_\_ before it gets dark.
16. Fighting between protesters and government troops \_\_\_\_\_ after the general canceled the election.
17. The line to buy tickets for the football game was really long, so a lot of people tried to \_\_\_\_\_.

### 17. FOCUS ON: adverbs and phrasal verbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs. Many adverbs end with -ly, for example, quickly, slowly, suddenly, foolishly; but other adverbs, such as always, sometimes, and never, do not. The placement of adverbs in sentences with phrasal verbs depends on whether the verb is intransitive or transitive, and if transitive, whether it is separable or nonseparable. In general, adverbs are placed like ordinary one-word verbs with the exception of nonseparable phrasal verbs, which also allow for the placement of adverbs between the verb and the particle. All possible placements of adverbs in sentences containing the various types of phrasal verbs are shown with Xs:

#### Intransitive phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle X.

Immediately he came over.

He immediately came over.

He came over immediately.

#### Separable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle object X.

X subject X verb object particle X.

Angrily she ripped up the paper.

Angrily she ripped the paper up.

She angrily ripped up the paper.

She angrily ripped the paper up.

She ripped up the paper angrily.

She ripped the paper up angrily.

#### Nonseparable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb X particle object X.

Slowly we headed into town. We slowly headed into town. We headed slowly into town. We headed into town slowly.

#### Three-word phrasal verbs

X subject X verb? particle? object X.

Eventually I grew out of the sweater.

I eventually grew out of the sweater.

I grew out of the sweater eventually.

Placing adverbs within three-word phrasal verbs is sometimes possible, but it can be problematic. Sometimes an adverb between the verb and first particle sounds acceptable and other times it does not. Sometimes, an adverb placed between the two particles sounds acceptable, and other times it will not. This is more a matter of style than of what is correct or incorrect, so unless you are sure it sounds okay, it is better not to place adverbs within three-word verbs.

**come over**

1. come over (to) p.v. When people move from one side of a place to the other, where you are, they come over or come over to where you are.

Come over here and say that again.

When he saw me, he immediately came over to my table and said hello.

2. come over (to) p.v. When people come to your house for a visit, they come over or come over to your house.

Would you like to come over tonight?

Jim comes over to my house every night.

3. come over p.v. When people cross a river or cross the ocean from east to west or west to east, they come over.

My grandparents came over from Sweden in 1904.

The ferry comes over to this side of the lake every day at 5:30 P.M.

**fall apart**

1. fall apart p.v. When the parts of something become completely separated because it is old or in bad condition, it falls apart.

These old shoes are starting to fall apart.

There's no way to fix this thing. It has completely fallen apart.

2. fall apart p.v. When a plan, arrangement, system, or agreement fails, it falls apart.

After five difficult years, their marriage totally fell apart.

The peace agreement is slowly falling apart.

3. fall apart p.v. When people suddenly lose control and start laughing or become very upset or emotional, they fall apart.

Sally fell apart when she heard the tragic news.

Tom was so funny at the party last night that I just fell apart laughing.

**get back at**

1. get back at p.v. When you get back at people, you do something bad to them because they have done something bad to you.

John won't forget what you did to him. He'll definitely get back at you someday.

She wants to get back at her ex-husband for the way he treated her.

**go about**

1. go about p.v. When you go about something or go about doing something, you begin or continue to follow all the steps necessary to do it.

I have no idea how to go about opening a restaurant. Everyday he quietly went about his business and never caused any problems.

**grow out of**

1. grow out of p.v. When people become too tall or too big to wear an item of clothing, they grow out of the item of clothing.

I bought Susie's shoes one size too big, but she's quickly growing out of them.

Do you want these clothes for your daughter? Mine has grown out of them.

2. grow out of p.v. When people become too mature for a toy, for an interest, or for a form of behavior, they have grown out of it.

Judy had a big crush on a rock star when she was in high school, but after a while she grew out of it.

Jim's son is going through a difficult stage, but he'll grow out of it in a couple of years.

head into head into & heads into heading into headed into headed into

1. head into p.v. When you head into or are headed into a place or area, you begin to enter it.

I almost had an accident as I was heading into town.

We scared away the bear, and it headed slowly into the woods.

Jim was headed into Ashland when his car broke down.

**rip up**

1. rip ...up p.v. When you tear paper or cloth into many pieces, you rip it up.

Nancy was furious when she read Tom's letter, and she angrily ripped it up. Always rip up a check before you put it in the wastebasket.

ripped up part.adj. After a piece of paper or cloth has been torn into many small piece, it is ripped up.

After the kids opened their Christmas presents, the floor was covered with ripped up paper.

**wear down**

1. wear... down p.v. When something wears down or when someone wears something down, the top or surface gradually disappears because of friction.

The feet of thousands of visitors a year have worn down the marble steps.

The mechanic told me that my car's brake pads have worn down badly and need to be replaced.

worn down part.adj. After the top or surface of something has gradually disappeared because of friction, it is worn down.

The marble steps are very old and worn down.

The tread on these tires is dangerously worn down.

2. wear ... down p.v. When people wear you down, they gradually persuade you, through persistent pressure, to change your mind about a decision.

He wouldn't tell me the answer, but little by little, I wore him down.

She still will not give us permission, but I think we're wearing her down.

EXERCISE 17a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section.

1. I waved to Jim when I saw him across the street, and he \_\_\_\_\_ and talked to me.

2. This company has been \_\_\_\_\_ since that idiot was made the manager.

3. Don't leave the newspaper where the dog can get it. He'll totally \_\_\_\_\_ it

4. We need a lot of things from the supermarket. When are you \_\_\_\_\_ town?

5. Jake told the boss I was drinking on the job, and I got fired, but I \_\_\_\_\_ Jake — I told his wife about his girlfriend.

6. During the American Revolution, the French fleet \_\_\_\_\_ and helped the Americans fight the British.

7. The heels on my boots have \_\_\_\_\_ badly, and I need to get them replaced.
8. Can you help me get hooked up to the Internet? I have no idea how to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. Don't spend a lot of money on baby clothes — she'll \_\_\_\_\_ them in a few weeks.
10. I need a new car. This piece of junk is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Sally asks her parents for a pony about a hundred times a day. She's trying to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
12. When his wife said she wanted a divorce, he just \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If you're not busy tonight, would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ and watch TV?
14. My four-year-old son thinks it's really funny to say bad words. I hope he \_\_\_\_\_ it.

EXERCISE 17b — Rewrite these sentences and place the adverb in parentheses in two possible positions.

1. (frequently) Ms. Taylor comes over.

---

---

2. (sometimes) These cheap toys fall apart.

---

---

3. (nervously) He went about making the bomb.

---

---

4. (eventually) Sally will grow out of her childish behavior

---

---

5. (reluctantly) Jim headed into the swamp.

---

---

6. (suddenly) Pat upped up Mike's letter.

---

---

7. (soon) Frank will getback at Todd.

---

---

8. (gradually) He wore down my resistance.

---

---

EXERCISE 17c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The contract was torn into many small pieces. What was done to the contract?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the contract?
3. Her plan is not working properly, and there's a lot of confusion. What is happening to her plan?
4. My friends visited me last night. What did my friends do last night?
5. Mike doesn't know anything about applying for a mortgage. What doesn't he know?
6. Tomorrow we're going to drive from the country to the city. What are we going to do tomorrow?
7. When Judy was a teenager, she was very shy, but she's not shy anymore. What did she do to her shyness?
8. The old lion's teeth are not as sharp or as long as they used to be. What has happened to them?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lion's teeth?
10. I did something bad to my brother, and now he has done something bad to me. What has my brother done to me?
11. The Vikings crossed the ocean before Columbus. What did the Vikings do before Columbus?
12. The teacher walked across the room and looked at your paper. What did the teacher do?
13. Jim became very sad and lost control when he heard that his brother had died. What did Jim do?
14. This sweater will be too small for my daughter soon. What will my daughter do to the sweater soon?
15. The pages are coming out of this old book. What is the book doing?
16. The police are pressuring the suspect to tell the truth. What are the police trying to do to the suspect?

EXERCISE 17d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                   |                    |                       |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| boil down to, 6   | fight back, 8      | hear of, 8            |
| chicken out of, 9 | find out, 5        | kick back, 10         |
| come down with, 6 | get along, 9       | monkey around with, 6 |
| come up, 12       | go ahead, 10       | set up, 5             |
| fall over, 8      | go through with, 6 | work in, 8            |

1. I don't know when the train to Boston leaves. I'll ask the ticket agent and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I don't like our neighbors, and they don't like me. We don't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Julia was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she decided not to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. Sarah was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. The ambassador will try to \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting between the president and the rebel leader.
6. We have a really busy day planned, but I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ a visit to the museum.
7. If someone hits you, you have to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I missed a week of work when I \_\_\_\_\_ German measles.
9. Having a mechanic fix my car will cost a lot of money, so I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it to see if I can fix it myself.
10. The owner of the construction company was \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of dollars to the mayor.
11. Are you kidding? That's the most ridiculous thing I've ever \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The country's economic problems are very complicated. Can you tell me what it \_\_\_\_\_?
13. I'm sorry I have to cancel our lunch date, but something very important has \_\_\_\_\_, and I have to return to my office immediately.
14. After the car hit the telephone pole, the pole \_\_\_\_\_ and crushed the car.
15. I was so angry at my boss that I told him I was going to quit, and he said, "\_\_\_\_\_, I don't care!"

### 18. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and can, could, will, and would

Can, could, will, and would are modal auxiliary verbs, often called modals. Modals are very important in English, but they can be confusing because they are used to say many different things. Here is a basic review of can, could, will, and would and their most common uses.

Could is used as the past tense of can:

I can't come over tonight.

I couldn't come over last night.

Would is used as the past tense of will (the future use of will has already been discussed in Section 15) to talk about something that was future in the past:

I didn't buy that nice coat for my son because I knew he would quickly grow out of it.

Would is used in place of will when repeating someone else's words:

She said she would get next Friday off.

Would is used as the past tense of will to talk about a repeated past action:

When I worked as a bank guard, I would stand around all day doing nothing.

Normally, can, could, will, and would have different uses, and it is important to use the correct one; however, in one special case — making requests — they can be used with very little difference in meaning:

Can you get off the couch?

Could you get off the couch ?

Will you get off the couch?

Would you get off the couch?

Can and could are used, with little difference in meaning, to ask for permission:

Can I think about it before I make a decision?

Could I think about it before I make a decision?

Can, could, will, and would are used in conditional sentences. Conditional means that a condition, usually stated in an if clause, must be satisfied for the main clause to be true. When the condition is something that is actually possible, the verb in the if clause is normally in the present tense. If the condition in the if clause is something that could not actually be true, the past tense form of the verb is used.

When the condition in the if clause is something that is actually possible, can is used in the main clause to discuss a real ability:

If I have a car, I can come over.

When the condition in the if clause is something that is actually possible, will is used in the main clause to discuss a real willingness or intention:

If I have a car, I will come over.

When the condition in the if clause is not something that is actually possible, could is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary ability:

If I had a car, I could come over.

When the condition in the if clause is not something that is actually possible, would is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary willingness or intention:

If I had a car, I would come over.

Either the if clause or main clause can occur first in a sentence, with a slight change in punctuation:

If I had a car, I would come over. I would come over if I had a car.



**breakthrough**

1. breakthrough p.v. When you use force to go through a wall or other barrier, you break through it.

The thieves broke through the wall of the jewelry store.

The attackers couldn't break through the thick walls of the fort.

2. breakthrough p.v. When you cannot do something because of a problem and you find a way to solve or eliminate the problem, you breakthrough.

After the problem of tissue rejection is broken through, organ transplants will become more common.

It took three days of negotiation, but we finally broke through the deadlock.

breakthrough n. An important discovery or development that solves or eliminates a problem that is preventing you from doing something is a breakthrough.

Dr. Wood announced an important breakthrough in the search for a cure for AIDS.

**figure on**

1. figure on p.v. When you figure on something, you expect it or plan for it.

I didn't figure on such cold weather. I wish I'd brought a coat.

You can figure on spending a least hundred bucks if you're going to that restaurant.

**get off**

1. get off p.v. When you get off a bus, airplane, or train, you leave it.

The bus stopped and I got off.

You can't get off the train while it's moving.

2. get off p.v. When you are standing, lying, or sitting on something, such as a horse, bicycle, motorcycle, stage, platform, or piece of furniture, and you step down from it onto the ground, you get off it.

You're so lazy. Why don't you get off the couch and help me? Get off your bicycle and come inside.

3. get off p.v. When you are standing within an area of ground, or on something that covers an area of ground, and you move to the side of it and step off of it, you get off it.

The referee told the player to get off the field. You're standing on our beach blanket — get off it!

4. get... off p.v. When you get something off, you remove it even though it may be difficult.

I can't get this paint off my hands. The top of this bottle is on so tight I cannot get it off.

5. get... off p.v. When you get a certain period of time off, you are allowed by your employer to miss work during this period.

Pregnant women usually get three months off with pay. Could I get tomorrow morning off to go to the doctor?

6. get off p.v. When you get off, or get off work, you finish that day's work and leave your place of employment.

Sally said she wouldn't get off work until 6:00. I haven't gotten off early all week.

7. get... off p.v. When you do something wrong but are not punished, or you are punished only lightly for it, you get off. Someone who helps you to avoid punishment gets you off.

He killed four people, but he got off with only three years in jail. If his lawyer hadn't been so incompetent, he would have gotten him off with a lighter sentence.

8. get off p.v. When you stop talking on the telephone, you get off the telephone.

Get off the phone — I need to use it! It's late, we'd better get off the phone.

**go beyond**

1. go beyond p.v. When people or things are better or worse, or do something in a better or worse way than is normal or expected, they go beyond what is normal or expected.



Did you say Jackson's new book is good? I think it goes beyond good — it's fantastic! Sam's wife discovered that he wasn't just friends with his secretary; their relationship went way beyond friendship.

**lift up**

1. lift... up p.v. When you lift up something, you use your hands to raise it above the surface that it was on.

That rock is too heavy — I can't lift it up. Lift up the cover and look in the box.

line up

line up & lines up          lining up          lined up          lined up

1. line... up p.v. When people or things form a row, they line up. When you arrange people or things so that they form a row, you line them up.

People lined up to buy Superbowl tickets. Timmy is lining his toy cars up.

lined up part.adj. People or things that form a row are lined up.

People have been lined up outside the box office for three days. The children are lined up for attendance.

2. line... up p.v. When something lines up with something else, or when you line up something with something else, it is positioned correctly in relation to something else.

If this bolt doesn't line up with that hole, the lock won't work. The holes in part A have to line up with the holes in part B before you screw them together.

3. line... up p.v. When you arrange for someone or something to be available at a future activity or event, you line that thing or person up.

I couldn't line a clown up for Susie's birthday party. Who have they lined up for the show?

lined up part.adj. Someone or something that you have arranged to be available for a future activity or event is lined up.

Don't worry about the show; everything is lined up.

The singer is lined up, but the band isn't.

lineup n. The people or things planned for an event are the lineup.

The network has planned quite a lineup of entertainers for the half-time special. There's always a trapeze act in the circus lineup.

**stand around**

1. stand around p.v. When you stand around, you stand in a place wasting time and not doing anything useful.

I have all this work to do, and you guys just stand around watching me. The manager told them to stop standing around and get to work.

**tell apart**

1. tell... apart p.v. When it is possible to see how two similar things are different, you can tell them apart.

The twins are identical; no one can tell them apart. All the puppies look the same, and I have a hard time telling them apart.

EXERCISE 18a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the phone? I want to make an important call.
2. Neither side would give an inch. There was no way to \_\_\_\_\_ the stalemate.
3. If you put this fake Rolex watch next to a real one, you can \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ easily.
4. Jim wanted to go to a movie tonight, but I told him I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ work until late.
5. If the holes don't \_\_\_\_\_, the screws won't go in.
6. There weren't any chairs at the party, so we just \_\_\_\_\_ talking.
7. I told Frank that his drinking problem isn't just hurting him; it \_\_\_\_\_ that — it's hurting his family, too.
8. The lawyer was sure he could \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ with only two years in prison.
9. When I took this job after I finished high school, I never \_\_\_\_\_ spend-ing thirty-five years here.
10. Mother was the last one to \_\_\_\_\_ the airplane.
11. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ everything in his cabinet so that it's easy to find what he's looking for.
12. Lydia told me she would try to \_\_\_\_\_ three weeks \_\_\_\_\_ so we can go on vacation.
13. There were police barricades around the palace, but some of the protesters \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Children, stop jumping on the bed with your dirty shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
15. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the TV while I put the VCR under it?
16. Some CDs come wrapped in plastic that's almost impossible to \_\_\_\_\_.
17. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ a magician for the birthday party.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet. I just shampooed it.

EXERCISE 18b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Paul said he would remove his cat from the table. What did Paul say?
2. I can't see any difference between the original and the copy. What can't I do?
3. Erik can't raise the box of books because it's too heavy. What can't Erik do?
4. Bill said he hadn't expected snow in May. What did Bill say?
5. Nancy arranged for a great band to play at the prom next week. What did Nancy do?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the band?
7. Jerry thought the problem with his car is that it needs a tune-up, but the mechanic said it's worse than that. What did the mechanic say?
8. The soldiers smashed a hole in the wall and entered the city. What did the soldiers do to the wall?
9. Carlos stops working at 5:00 everyday. What does Carlos do at 5:00 everyday?
10. You were arrested for drunken driving, but the judge gave you only a warning. What did you do?
11. The teacher moved all the desks in his classroom so that they were in straight rows. What did the teacher do?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe the desks?
13. She asked me if I would stop talking on the telephone. What did she say?
14. I stood at the bus stop for an hour waiting for the bus. What did I do for an hour?
15. The personnel manager at my new job said I wouldn't have to work on Sundays. What did the personnel manager say?
16. When you put a doorknob on a door, the two sides have to be directly across from each other. How do the two sides have to be?
17. Sam stepped from the train. What did Sam do?
18. Mark's father told him to move from the grass to the sidewalk. What did Mark's father tell Mark?

EXERCISE 18c — Complete these sentences, using your own words, with phrasal verbs from this section or previous sections.

1. Last week, he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. When I was younger, I could \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He'll \_\_\_\_\_.
4. When I \_\_\_\_\_, I would \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Could you \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Would you \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Can I \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Could I \_\_\_\_\_?

139

EXERCISE 18d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                  |                  |                 |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| believe in, 16   | go along with, 3 | hold off, 16    |
| carry on, 16     | go for, 16       | put past, 16    |
| come over, 17    | go with, 15      | tell on, 15     |
| come through, 15 | grow out of, 17  | think about, 16 |
| count on, 16     | head back, 15    |                 |
| get through, 16  | head for, 15     |                 |

1. I suggested that we go to Paris, and she really \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.
2. After I \_\_\_\_\_ it, I decided not to take the job.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ buying a new computer because I thought they would be on sale in January.
4. Do you think this yellow tie \_\_\_\_\_ this blue shirt?
5. Her uncle promised to pay for her wedding, and he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. It's very important that you do this work correctly. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ you.
7. Timmy broke a window, and his sister \_\_\_\_\_ him.
8. The detective asked me if Jake had robbed the liquor store, and I said I didn't know but that I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
9. Todd said he would \_\_\_\_\_ to my house after dinner and help me with my homework.
10. The reason Charles is vice-president of the company is that he \_\_\_\_\_ the boss on every decision.
11. Tomorrow I'm going to leave Winnipeg and \_\_\_\_\_ Toronto.
12. I probably won't \_\_\_\_\_ to Winnipeg for a month or more.
13. I didn't get Sally what she wanted for her birthday, and she \_\_\_\_\_ about it all day.
14. You have so much work to do. When do you think you'll \_\_\_\_\_?
15. I bought these pants for my son a month ago, and he's \_\_\_\_\_ them already.
16. Ned didn't \_\_\_\_\_ UFOs until he saw one.

### 19. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and the adverb right

The adverb right is often used to intensify the meaning of a phrasal verb. Placed before the particle, right means directly, immediately, or quickly. It is not important whether the phrasal verb is intransitive, separable, or nonseparable. What does matter is whether the action of the verb is something that can logically be done directly, immediately, or quickly. For example, it would be illogical to use right with stand around, or wear down:

She aimed right at me. (She aimed directly at me.)

I'll bring it right over. (I'll bring it over immediately.)

The room warmed right up. (The room warmed up quickly.)

Right can be used when a separable phrasal verb is separated by its object; however, right cannot be used when the object follows the particle:

He brought my radio right back. Ho brought right back my radio.

#### aim at

1. aim ... at p.v. When you point a weapon at people or things, you aim it at them.

The robber aimed the gun right at my head.

He was aiming the arrow at the apple, but he missed.

2. aim at p.v. When you aim at something you want, you do what is necessary to get it.

The manager said she was aiming at a 14 percent increase in sales next year.

The new law is aimed at reducing crime in the streets.

3. aim ... at p.v. When you do something designed to affect one class or type of people, you aim it at those people.

Cigarette manufacturers were accused of aiming their advertising at young people.

The candidate's speech was aimed at female voters.

#### bring back

1. bring... back p.v. When you take something to another place and then bring it from that place to the place where you were before, you bring it back.

I told Tom to bring my pen right back.

Sally borrowed my blue sweater and brought it back yesterday.

2. bring... back p.v. When something that was popular or current in the past is introduced again, it is brought back.

Many schools are bringing back uniforms for children.

Every few years designers try to bring miniskirts back.

3. bring... back p.v. When something causes you to recall memories and emotions from the past, it brings the memories and emotions back.

Looking at these old pictures brought back wonderful memories.

I had tried to forget that awful incident, but this magazine article has brought it all back.

#### bring over

1. bring... over p.v. When people take something from one place to the place where you are, they bring it over.

I called Frank to ask if I could use his electric drill, and he brought it right over.

Linda is going to bring her wedding pictures over tonight.

**cool off**

1. cool off p.v. When the temperature of a thing or place becomes lower, it cools off.

It was really hot yesterday, but it cooled off in the evening.

This is too hot — I'll eat it after it cools off.

2. cool... off p.v. When people or things cause a thing or place to become cooler, they cool it off.

The coffee was really hot, but he put an ice cube in it and it cooled right off.

This bath is too hot. Put more cold water in it to cool it off.

3. cool off p.v. When you become less angry or less excited, you cool off.

He's furious now, but he'll cool off by morning.

Their passion for each other has cooled off.

**go back**

1. go back (to) p.v. When you return to a place where you were before, you go back or go back to that place.

That restaurant was terrible. We'll never go back.

Dorothy left the Emerald City and went back to Kansas.

2. go back (to) p.v. When a condition, problem, practice, or custom goes back to a certain time, it began at that time.

The tradition of saluting in the military goes back to the Middle Ages.

His drug problem goes back to his college years.

3. go back (to) p.v. When you are discussing the age of something, you go back or go back to when it was created or started.

This table is very valuable. It goes back to the 1760s.

The archeologist found ruins that go back 5,000 years.

**hand over**

1. hand ...over (to) p.v. When you give something to people because they demand it, because they require it, or because you are not its rightful owner, you hand it over or hand it over to them. Turn over is similar to hand over. I found some money in the street, and I handed it over to the police.

That's my calculator — hand it right over!

handover n. When you transfer ownership or control of something to someone because that person has demanded it or because you are not its rightful owner, a handover takes place.

The Chinese celebrated Britain's handover of Hong Kong. The President demanded the immediate handover of the occupied territory.

2. hand ...over p.v. When you give someone responsibility for an important project, duty, or problem, you hand that project, duty, or problem over or hand it over to someone.

Mr. Wilson retired and handed control of the company over to his son.

The TV news anchor handed the show over to the reporter at the White House.

**pull over**

1. pull... over p.v. When you are driving and then move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and then stop, you pull over or pull your vehicle over.

I pulled over to fix a flat tire. We're lost.

Let's pull the car over and ask someone for directions.

2. pull... over p.v. When you are driving and a police officer signals you to move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and stop, the police officer pulls you over or pulls the vehicle over.

Jim was driving on the wrong side of the road, and he got pulled over by the state police.  
When the police officer saw the driver go through a red light, he pulled the car right over.

### warm up

1. warm up p.v. When the temperature of a thing or place becomes higher, it warms up.

It's cold outside. I hope it warms up before the picnic.

I set the thermostat at eighty degrees, and the house warmed right up.

2. warm... up p.v. When people or things cause a thing or place to become warmer, they warm it up.

The fireplace doesn't really warm the house up much.

That soup is cold. You can warm it up in the microwave.

warmed up part.adj. After a thing or place has become warmer, it is warmed up.

Give the baby the bottle with the flowers on it; it's warmed up.

3. warm... up p.v. When you allow a mechanical device to run for a short time before being used, you warm it up.

When a mechanical device runs for a short time before being used, it warms up.

You should always warm your car up for a few minutes before you go anywhere.

In the winter I always let my car warm up while I eat breakfast.

warmed up part.adj. After a mechanical device has been allowed to warm up and is ready to be used, it is warmed up.

We have to go — is the car warmed up yet?

4. warm up p.v. When you do light exercises before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort, you warm up.

When performers play musical instruments or sing just before a performance in order to be ready, they warm up.

Before a race most runners warm up with stretching exercises.

The singer warmed up in her dressing room before the concert.

warm-up n. Light exercises done before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort are called a warm-up.

When a performer plays an instrument or sings just before a performance in order to be ready, this is a warm-up.

The runners got to the stadium early so they would have time for a warm-up.

warm-up n. Warm-up clothes are worn during a warm-up. Warm-up exercises are done before playing a sport or exercising. A warm-up game, round, and so on, is played in order to warm up for the actual game.

The baseball players wore their warm-up jackets when they weren't on the field.

EXERCISE 19a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The pizza was cold, so I put it in the microwave to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

2. My car was making a strange noise, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to look at the engine.

3. Can I use your lawn mower? I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

4. Jim always puts milk in his coffee to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The roots of the trouble in the Middle East \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of years.

6. The new police chief said that he thinks that abolishing capital punishment was a mistake and that it should be \_\_\_\_\_.

7. The judge ordered the thieves to \_\_\_\_\_ the stolen merchandise immediately.

8. Hearing Uncle John's stories about the old country \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of memories.

9. With this new antipollution law we're \_\_\_\_\_ reducing the amount of pollution by 50 percent in ten years.

10. I asked Judy if I could use her video camera, and she said she would \_\_\_\_\_ it right \_\_\_\_\_.

11. The mechanic recommended letting the car \_\_\_\_\_ before driving it.

12. The robber changed his mind when he saw the guard \_\_\_\_\_ his shotgun right \_\_\_\_\_ him.
13. The local police chief \_\_\_\_\_ the investigation \_\_\_\_\_ to the FBI agents.
14. Your father's angry right now. Talk to him about your miserable report card after he's \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The changes at the factory are \_\_\_\_\_ reducing costs and increasing profits.
16. The mystery of the Pyramids \_\_\_\_\_ nearly 5,000 years.
17. The coach always makes the players \_\_\_\_\_ before the game.
18. After lunch Jerry \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ to work.
19. This coffee is too hot. I can't drink it until it \_\_\_\_\_.
20. I was \_\_\_\_\_ by the sheriff for going eighty miles per hour in a school zone.
21. It's cold now, but it'll \_\_\_\_\_ by noon.

EXERCISE 19b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Could you bring back. (my tool kit, it)

---

---

---

2. I'll bring over. (your tool kit, it)

---

---

---

3. The air conditioner quickly cooled off. (my apartment, it)

---

---

---

4. Todd handed over. (his wallet, it)

---

---

---

5. The sheriff pulled over. (the suspects, them)

---

---

---

6. The drivers are warming up. (their trucks, them)

---

---

---



EXERCISE 19c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. Replace the underlined adverbs with right. Remember that right can be used only when the verb and the particle are separated.

1. They lit a fire, and the cabin became warm quickly. What did the cabin do?
2. You will return to work immediately. What will you do?
3. After the sun set, the backyard became cooler quickly. What did the backyard do?
4. If I saw the flashing lights of the police car, I would slow my car and stop at the side of the road immediately. What would I do?
5. Sergeant Jones pointed his rifle directly at the enemy soldier. What did Sergeant Jones do?
6. She told me to return her dictionary immediately. What did she say?
7. Linda's father told her to give him his credit card immediately. What did Linda's father tell her to do?
8. I called Lydia and told her I needed medicine for my son, and she took the medicine from her house to my house immediately. What did Lydia do to the medicine?

EXERCISE 19d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                   |               |                  |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| back off, 12      | go beyond, 18 | stand around, 18 |
| break through, 18 | head into, 17 | tell apart, 18   |
| come across, 12   | hit on, 13    | track down, 13   |
| come up with, 6   | let off, 13   | wind up, 14      |
| fall through, 12  | lift up, 18   |                  |
| figure on, 18     | put up, 12    |                  |

1. The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_ the wall of the prison and escaped.
2. It was easy for them to escape because the guards had been \_\_\_\_\_ smoking cigarettes.
3. The warden wasn't just upset with the guards — the problem \_\_\_\_\_ that.
4. The guards used dogs to \_\_\_\_\_ one of the escaped prisoners the next day.
5. The other prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ some dense forest.
6. The prisoner tried to steal a man's car, but when he saw the man's large dog, he \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The police had a meeting to try to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to capture the prisoner.
8. They finally \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of using a helicopter.
9. The helicopter plan \_\_\_\_\_ because the weather was so bad.
10. The police thought the prisoner would probably \_\_\_\_\_ at his family's house.
11. The prisoner has a twin brother, and the police couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
12. That was one problem the police didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
13. One police officer walked behind the house and \_\_\_\_\_ some garbage cans.
14. He heard a noise from the garbage can, so he \_\_\_\_\_ the top and saw the prisoner.
15. The prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ a fight, but the police were able to capture him.
16. Both prisoners were charged with escaping from prison, but the judge \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.

## 20. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

Some phrasal verbs can be followed by the -ing form of verbs:

He ended up staying home.

She lies around doing, nothing.

The -ing form can be negative:

He ended up not going anywhere.

She lies around not doing anything.

Nouns and pronouns can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

The doctor went around the hospital visiting his patients.

Jim hangs around Janice hoping she'll fall in love with him.

Prepositional phrases can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

My luggage ended up on the wrong flight going to the wrong city.

I started out at the bottom working in the mailroom.

Other adverbs and adverbial expressions can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

Bill goes around constantly looking for bargains.

She stayed up late watching TV.

I went around all day not knowing I had spinach in my teeth.

He ended up here asking for money.

### end up

1. end up p.v. When people end up doing something or end up a certain way, it is the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. End up is similar to wind up.

A hurricane was approaching Florida, so we ended up coming home from our vacation early.

Judy has never gone skydiving before, so she'll probably end up in the hospital with two broken legs.

2. end up p.v. When people or things end up in a place, this place is where their journey ends even though the outcome may have been unplanned or unexpected.

How did London Bridge end up in Arizona?

The taxi driver didn't understand me, and we ended up in Newark instead of New York.

### go around

1. go around p.v. When people or things follow a circular path and return to the same place, they go around. The horse has gone around the track three times.

It took seven days to go around the island.

2. go around p.v. When people or things follow an indirect or curved path in order to avoid an obstacle or to change direction, they go around or go around the obstacle.

Heather went around the curve too fast, and she ended up in the ditch.

There was some broken glass in the street, but I went around it.

3. go around p.v. When an object spins or turns, it goes around.

The disk drives in computers go around very fast.

The children have to stay on the merry-go-round until it stops going around.

4. go around p.v. When you go around a place, you visit various parts of it.

The president went around the state giving the same speech at every stop.

The exterminator is going around the house looking for rats.

5. go around p.v. When you go around in a certain condition or go around doing something, you go to various places and allow other people see you.

I was so embarrassed — I went around all day with my zipper open.

Are you going to go around all day wearing that stupid hat?

6. go around p.v. When you go around doing something, you go to various places and deliberately do something that may bother or upset other people.

The new manager goes around telling everyone how to do their jobs.

Don't go around sticking your nose in other people's business.

7. go around p.v. When something goes around, it spreads to various parts of a larger place.

A rumor went around that the plant was going to close.

He probably has the flu; it's been going around.

8. go around p.v. When something is being distributed to a group of people and there is enough for everyone, there is enough to go around.

There wasn't enough food to go around, and some of the famine victims got nothing.

Don't make the pieces of wedding cake too big, otherwise there won't be enough to go around.

### Go off

1. go off p.v. When a gun goes off, it fires. When a bomb goes off, it explodes. When an alarm or alarm clock goes off, it makes a loud noise.

The terrorists were killed when the bomb went off accidentally.

I was late for work because my alarm clock didn't go off.

2. go off p.v. When an electrical device or system goes off, it stops operating. Come on is the opposite of go off.

The electricity went off at 8:30 last night.

A thermostat makes the air conditioner go off if it gets below a certain temperature.

3. go off (with) p.v. When you go off, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place.

When you go off with someone, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place with them.

Mark went off not realizing he had left his wallet at home.

At the museum Sally went off with her friends to see some things we weren't interested in.

4. go off p.v. When an event or plan goes off well, smoothly, without a problem, or without a hitch (a hitch is a problem), it happens as planned.

The drug bust went off without a hitch.

The invasion didn't go off the way the general planned it.

5. go off p.v. When a road, trail, path, and so on, goes off, it leaves the main road, trail, or path, and goes in a different direction.

This trail that goes off to the left will take you to the campground.

We didn't know which way to go — one path went off to the left, the other to the right.

### go on

1. go on p.v. When an electrical device or system goes on, it begins to operate.

A thermostat makes the air conditioner go on if it gets above a certain temperature. The lights goes on automatically if someone walks near the door.

2. go on p.v. When something goes on, it happens. "What's going on?" is a common informal greeting.

Tell me what went on at the party last night. If you see anything illegal going on, call the police immediately.

3. go on p.v. When people go on, they continue doing something. Sometimes, on is repeated for emphasis.

I asked her to be quiet, but she went right on singing.

Just go on with what you're doing. I'll wait until you're finished.

I told him to stop talking, but he went on and on and on and on.

4. go on p.v. When an event or activity goes on, it continues.

The party went on until dawn. I hate long meetings that go on for hours.

5. go on p.v. When you go on information, you are able to continue an investigation or other project because you have this information.

The detective said he needs more to go on and asked the public for information.

The auto company won't recall 75,000 cars because of one accident. That's just not enough to go on.

6. go on p.v. When you go on a diet, you start a plan to lose weight.

I go on a diet every January.

I have to go on a diet; my high school reunion is in two months.

7. go on p.v. When you say "Go on" to people, you are encouraging them to do something.

Yes, caviar is fish eggs, but it's good — go on, try it. Oh, go on — don't be afraid.

### **hang around**

1. hang around p.v. [informal] When you hang around or hang around doing something, you stay in a place without a purpose for being there or because you are waiting for someone or something.

I had to hang around for three hours waiting for the bus.

Bob's been hanging around the house all day. Doesn't he have anything to do?

2. hang around p.v. [informal] When people stay in a place instead of leaving, they hang around.

What's the hurry? Hang around for a while, and when I finish my homework we can watch TV.

Do you have to go or can you hang around for a while?

3. hang around p.v. [informal] When you hang around people, you spend a lot of time with them. When you hang around a place, you spend a lot of time there.

Erik's mother is worried. She doesn't like the guys he's hanging around with.

Jim and Bill were good friends. They always hung around when they were kids.

### **lie around**

1. lie around p.v. When you lie around or lie around doing something, you recline and relax and do not do anything important.

Today is my day off, so don't ask me to do any work. I'm just going to lie around.

All my sister ever does is lie around watching soap operas.

2. lie around p.v. [always continuous] When something is lying around, it is disorganized and no one is using it or paying attention to it.

Jake is a slob. There are empty beer cans and old newspapers lying around all over his house.

We need to do something about all that junk lying around in the backyard.

### **start out**

1. start out p.v. When you begin something, you start out. Start out is used to discuss how the end of something was different from its beginning.

The stock market started out in positive territory but closed 200 points lower.

Nancy started out as a secretary, thinking she might have a future with this company, but she doesn't feel that way anymore.

**stay up**

stay up & stays up      staying up      stayed up      stayed up

1. stay up p.v. When something stays up, it remains in a place that is higher than ground level.

That shelf won't stay up if you put all those books on it.

The astronauts stayed up for 241 days.

2. stay up p.v. When you stay up, you go to bed later than you normally do.

Judy's tired because she stayed up until dawn studying for a chemistry test.

Don't stay up late — tomorrow's a school day.

EXERCISE 20a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. This is a dangerous neighborhood — so stay with me and don't \_\_\_\_\_ by yourself.
2. Yesterday at work Leticia \_\_\_\_\_ showing everyone her engagement ring.
3. Wedding ceremonies in some countries can \_\_\_\_\_ for days.
4. The bomb will \_\_\_\_\_ at exactly 6:00.
5. Where are you going? Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ until Jim comes home and then we can order a pizza.
6. The driver took a wrong turn, and we \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of nowhere.
7. On Sundays my husband usually \_\_\_\_\_ on the couch watching football games.
8. My lazy son \_\_\_\_\_ the house all day not lifting a finger to help with anything.
9. She's going to \_\_\_\_\_ at her new job working only part-time, but later she'll switch to full-time.
10. Buy lots of champagne for the party; you want to be sure there's enough to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Bill likes to go to bed early — he can't \_\_\_\_\_ past 8:00 P.M.
12. Rosa wanted to study medicine in college, but she \_\_\_\_\_ studying law instead.
13. The paleontologist was amazed to find dinosaur eggs just \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.
14. I can't believe you \_\_\_\_\_ town wearing those dirty clothes all day.
15. I'm sorry I missed the party. Did anything exciting \_\_\_\_\_?
16. I'm nervous about the wedding. I hope it \_\_\_\_\_ the way we planned it.
17. A rumor is \_\_\_\_\_ the school about two of the teachers.
18. It's normal for the power to \_\_\_\_\_ during a thunderstorm.
19. If that poster doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ with tape, we'll have to use thumb tacks instead.
20. In the morning Dr. Smith usually \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital visiting his patients.
21. Jim is usually a good boy, but when he \_\_\_\_\_ with Jake he gets in trouble.
22. He was trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a slow truck when he had the accident.
23. I \_\_\_\_\_ a diet two weeks ago, and so far I haven't lost an ounce.
24. In the past no one believed that the earth \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.
25. If you're leaving, what are you waiting for? \_\_\_\_\_, leave!
26. How can I make such an important decision with so little information? I need more to \_\_\_\_\_.
27. I'm surprised that the heat \_\_\_\_\_ last night — it's only September.
28. Miguel's new race car is really fast. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ the track in record time.
29. After you cross the bridge, you'll see a gravel road that \_\_\_\_\_ a lake and heads toward the mountains.
30. I don't want to retire. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ working as long as I can.

EXERCISE 20b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You're going to spend the day on the sofa watching TV. What are you going to do all day?
2. Lydia walked to various places in her new house making decorating plans. What did Lydia do in her new house?
3. The letter was supposed to go to Austria, but it finally arrived in Australia. What happened to the letter?
4. The electricity stops working everyday at 2:00. What does the electricity do?
5. Joe called and asked what was happening. What did Joe ask?
6. Bob goes to every office at work telling awful jokes. What does Bob do at work?
7. Janice didn't go to bed all night. What did Janice do?
8. Dan stays in his house all day. He doesn't go anywhere or do anything. What does Dan do all day?
9. You were late to work because your alarm clock didn't ring this morning. What didn't your alarm clock do this morning?
10. Jerry went to many places wearing a Hawaiian shirt. What did Jerry do?
11. When it gets dark the street lights begin to operate automatically. What do the lights do?
12. I bought only twenty-five hot dogs for the party, but thirty people showed up, so some people didn't get a hot dog. Why didn't some people get a hot dog?
13. There are a lot of potholes in the street, and I have to avoid them while I'm driving. What do I have to do while I'm driving?
14. I couldn't decide between the red car and the blue car, but I finally decided on the red car. What did I finally do?
15. Mr. Watson is the brains of this company. If he left we couldn't continue. What couldn't we do without Mr. Watson?
16. Jane began the project thinking it would take only a few weeks. What did Jane do?

EXERCISE 20c — Write original sentences using these phrasal verbs from this section and previous sections followed by the -ing form. The first number after the verb is the section; the second number is the meaning. It is only that mean-ing that can be followed by the -ing form. Try to make some of the sentences similar to those in the FOCUS section.

break down,	go on,	start out,
come over,	hang around,	stay up,
end up,	lie around,	take off,
go around,	show up,	wind up,
go off,	stand around,	

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_



12. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. \_\_\_\_\_  
14. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 20d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

aim at, 19      call off, 13      go about, 17      rip up, 17  
blow away, 15      cool off, 19      go back, 19      screw out of, 3  
break out, 9      dry out, 15      hear of, 8      see a bout, 7  
bring over, 19      give up, 9      pay for, 4      work up, 9

1. My teacher made a mistake when he corrected my test and \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ ten points.
2. You'd better wear a jacket — it has \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
3. Her letter made me so mad that I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. You don't need to rake the leaves; the wind will \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We knew we didn't have any hope of winning the battle, so we \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You can't run ten miles on the first day of your exercise program. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
7. Michael didn't see the red light and hit a gasoline truck. He \_\_\_\_\_ his mistake with his life.
8. Sam asked me if I knew someone named Francisco, and I said I had never \_\_\_\_\_ him.
9. My family has been in Massachusetts since the seventeenth century. They \_\_\_\_\_ on the Mayflower.
10. Our trip to Miami was \_\_\_\_\_ because of the hurricane.
11. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ getting my teeth whitened.
12. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ getting a passport?
13. This rug is wet; let's take it outside to \_\_\_\_\_ in the sun.
14. The new restrictions on cigarette advertising are \_\_\_\_\_ reducing the level of teenage smoking.
15. They \_\_\_\_\_ of prison by tunneling under the prison wall.
16. We don't have enough plates for the party, so I called Maria and asked her to \_\_\_\_\_ some \_\_\_\_\_.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES



## 21. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and should and ought to

Should and ought to have two important meanings in English. One is familiar to most students, but the other is not.

A good idea: should and ought to

Should and ought to can be used to say that doing something is a good idea because it will benefit the person you are speaking about:

You should zip up your coat.

You ought to zip up your coat.

or because the person you are speaking about is expected, though not required, to do something:

You should bring in the groceries for your mother.

You ought to bring in the groceries for your mother.

Although should and ought are modal auxiliary verbs, ought must be used with to. In other words, ought does not equal should, ought to equals should. Never say should to.

Very probable: should and ought to

Both should and ought to are used to say that something is very probable, very likely, or 90 percent sure to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably exist or something will very probably happen:

The rebel territory should settle down once winter comes.

The rebel territory ought to settle down once winter comes.

In the examples above, either should or ought to can be used — they have the same meaning — however, only should is used in questions:

Should Tom zip up his jacket?

Ought Tom to zip up his jacket?

and only should not or shouldn't is used in negative sentences:

Tom should not zip up his jacket.

Tom ought not to zip up his jacket.

Should not (or shouldn't) is used to say that something is not probable. It means that something is very improbable, very unlikely, or 90 percent sure not to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably not exist or something will very probably not happen:

I set the thermostat at sixty-five degrees, and I'm sure it won't get below seventy tonight, so the heat shouldn't go on.

### look around

1. look around p.v. When you turn your head to see what is behind you or around you, you look around.

I heard a sound, and I looked around to see who it was. Sally looked around the room and didn't recognize anyone.

2. look around p.v. When you look around or look around a place, you go to various parts of the place in order to see what it is like or what is there.

You should look around before you decide whether you want to buy the house.

Linda looked around the bookstore but didn't find anything interesting.

### look over

1. look... over p.v. [usually separated] When you look something over, you look at it or read it carefully and thoroughly.

He ought to look the car over before he buys it.

Here's the first chapter of my new book; look it over and tell me what you think.

**pick on**

1. pick on p.v. When you pick on people, you continually tease and criticize them.  
Susie, you shouldn't pick on your little brother.  
The teacher never criticizes anyone else — she picks only on me.

**settle down**

1. settle ... down p.v. When you settle down, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you settle other people down, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. Calm down is similar to settle down.  
Why are you so nervous about the test? Just settle down; you'll do just fine.  
Can't you settle the children down? All that noise is driving me crazy.
2. settle... down p.v. When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it settles down.  
When you settle a confused or violent situation down, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. Calm down is similar to settle down.  
Rioting and arson continued for three days before the area settled down.  
The head of the union spoke to the angry strikers to try to settle them down.
3. settle down p.v. When people settle down, they start to live a less active life and perhaps get married, buy a house, and start a family.  
Mike led a pretty wild life when he was in his early twenties, but he got married when he was 29 and settled down.  
My son is forty-one. I wish he'd settle down and raise a family.

**step on**

1. step on p.v. When you step on something, you place your foot on it.  
If the carpenter steps on a nail, she'll have to go to the hospital for a tetanus shot.  
Sam stepped on a cockroach.
2. step on p.v. [informal] When you say "Step on it" to someone who is driving a car, you are telling the driver to drive faster.  
Hank needed to get to the airport in fifteen minutes, so he told the taxi driver to step on it.  
Step on it! We have to be at work in ten minutes.

**take out on**

1. take... out on p.v. When you take something out on people, you unfairly criticize or punish them because you are angry about something that has occurred or about something that someone else has done.  
If you're mad at your boss, you shouldn't take it out on your wife.  
Hey! It's not my fault you got a speeding ticket. Why are you taking it out on me?

**think ahead**

1. think ahead p.v. When you think ahead, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem.  
When we're out camping, there won't be any stores around if you forget something, so think ahead.  
We thought ahead before we drove through the desert; we took forty liters of water.

**zip up**

1. zip... up p.v. When you zip up a coat or other item of clothing, you close it with a zipper.

It's freezing outside — zip your coat up.

I can't zip my dress up. Can you?

zipped up part.adj. After you zip up a coat or other item of clothing, it is zipped up.

Look at Timmy out there in the snow without his coat zipped up.

Before you go to the airport, make sure your suitcases are zipped up.

EXERCISE 21 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. It's not your brother's fault you failed the math test. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
2. Timmy left some of his toys on the floor. Be careful not to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
3. There's a guy in my class who's really mean and makes jokes about me. I told the teacher that he's always \_\_\_\_\_ me.
4. Someone called my name, and I \_\_\_\_\_ to see who it was.
5. Jane is already thirty-four, but she's not interested in \_\_\_\_\_ and having children.
6. I've \_\_\_\_\_ your resume, and I think you're the right person for this job.
7. Timmy and Susie were running around the house like crazy, so I played their favorite videotape to try to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You should \_\_\_\_\_ your backpack \_\_\_\_\_; otherwise all your books are going to fall out.
9. The two countries have a history of border clashes, but things have \_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years.
10. I've never been in your house before; I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ and see how you've decorated it.
11. You don't want to arrive in Tokyo and realize you forgot something important back in Vancouver, so \_\_\_\_\_.
12. We're late — \_\_\_\_\_ it!

EXERCISE 21 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Dan ought to look at the car very carefully before he decides whether to buy it. What should Dan do?
2. You went to a big bookstore and walked around so that you could see what books they have. What did you do in the bookstore?
3. Our neighbors were arguing all evening, but they stopped arguing and got quieter at around 1:00 A.M. What did our neighbors do around 1:00 A.M.?
4. It's freezing outside, so you ought to close the zipper on your jacket. What should you do to your jacket?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the jacket after it is closed?
6. At the meeting, the boss asked Betty some difficult questions, and Betty wasn't ready with the answers. What didn't Betty do?
7. Frank unfairly criticizes his son. What does Frank do to his son?
8. Mark had a bad day at work, and when he came home he yelled at his wife. What did Mark do to his wife?
9. When Mike was dancing with Heather, he put his foot on her foot. What did Mike do to Heather's foot?

EXERCISE 21 c, Review — Rewrite the underlined words in the sentences using these phrasal verbs from previous sections and should or ought to. Remember that ought to is not usually used in negative sentences.

break through, 18	cool off, 19	hold up, 7
burn out, 8	fall off, 10	pull through, 2
come over, 17	get off, 18	warm up, 19
come through, 15	get through, 16	wind up, 14
come up, 12	go for, 16	

Example: If they go to that restaurant, they will very probably expect to pay \$200.

If they go to that restaurant, they should figure on paying \$200.

or

If they go to that restaurant, they ought to figure on paying \$200.

- Business in this restaurant will very probably decrease in January.
- They are very probably finishing the investigation.
- These cheap shoes will very probably not stay in good condition more than three months.
- Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim will very probably travel to Boston soon.
- It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it will very probably get cooler soon.
- Paul's disease is not serious, so he will very probably be well again.
- Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He will very probably stop working in a few minutes.
- Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she will very probably like the idea.
- The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they will very probably smash a hole in the wall soon.
- Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She will very probably come to my house soon.
- This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you will very probably finish around 1:00.
- The train almost always passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train will very probably pass through town in five minutes.
- I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it very probably will not stop burning before morning.
- The car heater is on maximum, so it will very probably get warm soon.

EXERCISE 21 d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bring back, 19	go around, 20	hand over, 19	pull over, 19
end up, 20	go back, 19	hang around, 20	ring up, 8
fall apart, 17	go off, 20	lie around, 20	start out, 20
get back at, 17	go on, 20	line up, 18	stay up, 20

- After Mark's father died, Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the office collecting money to buy some flowers for the funeral.
- Who said you could use my camera? \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
- The smoke alarm in our kitchen \_\_\_\_\_ every time I fry chicken.
- We've been driving for five hours straight. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and rest for a few minutes.
- Our travel agent is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a hot air balloon to take us to the top of Mt. Everest.
- Last night I \_\_\_\_\_ late watching Casablanca on TV.

7. My old bicycle is in very bad condition. I ought to buy a new one before it completely
8. I'm mad at Sarah for telling my husband what happened at the office party. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ her someday.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ thinking it wouldn't cost more than \$300 to fix my car, but I've already spent more than \$700.
10. Jimmy didn't used to get in trouble until he started to \_\_\_\_\_ with Jake.
11. If you don't quit smoking and lose some weight, you're going to \_\_\_\_\_ dying before you're fifty.
12. Visiting my old high school last week \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of great memories.
13. Are you going to do anything today or just \_\_\_\_\_ watching TV?
14. I'm sorry I interrupted your story. Please \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The cashier \_\_\_\_\_ my stuff and said, "That comes to \$47.21."
16. Alfonso left his credit card at the restaurant, so he had to \_\_\_\_\_ to get it.



## 22. FOCUS ON: the particle up and the adverbs right and all

The particle up is used in many phrasal verbs, and one of its uses is to say that something has been done thoroughly or completely:

The building burned. (The building was damaged but not destroyed.)

The building burned UP. (The building was completely destroyed.)

Right, discussed in Section 19, is often used in phrasal verbs with up to indicate that the action of the verb not only happened thoroughly and completely but also quickly:

They ate it up. (They ate all the food.)

They ate it right up. (They ate all the food, and they ate it quickly.)

Remember that right can be used in this way only after an object that is separat-ing the verb and particle:

They ate the pizza right up.

They ate right up the pizza.

Even though up indicates that the action of the verb is thorough and complete, all is sometimes used for further emphasis with participle adjectives derived from phrasal verbs with up:

My taxes are all paid up.

The drain is all plugged up.

### burn up

1. burn up p.v. When something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it burns up.

The meteor burned up in the atmosphere.

The rocket's fuel will burn up after only forty seconds.

2. burn... up p.v. When people or things destroy something with heat or fire, they burn it up.

There's no more coal. We burned it all up.

Jet engines burn up fuel at a tremendous rate.

burned up part.adj. After something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it is burned up.

There isn't anymore firewood; it's all burned up.

The house is all burned up. There's no way it can be saved.

3. burned ... up p.v. [informal] When something makes you very angry, it burns you up.

It really burns me up when other people take credit for my work.

I have to say something to Sally about what she did. It's burning me up.

burned up part.adj. [informal] When you are very angry, you are burned up.

Jim was burned up when his boss criticized him during the meeting.

Relax — it's nothing to get all burned up about.

### clear up

1. clear up p.v. When a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it clears up.

The misunderstanding cleared up right away after we talked about it.

My rash is clearing up by itself. I don't need to go to the doctor.

cleared up part.adj. After a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it is cleared up.

I feel great. My sinus infection is all cleared up.

Everything's okay. It was a big misunderstanding, but it's cleared up now.

2. clear... up p.v. When you do something to solve a problem or misunderstanding or do something to cure a disease, you clear it up.

Everyone was confused about the new policy, so a memo was issued that cleared everything up.

The medicine Dr. Smith gave me cleared the infection up.

3. clear up p.v. When clouds in the sky go away, the weather clears up.  
Unless it clears up, we'll have to cancel the picnic.  
It was a beautiful day after the sky cleared up.

### count up

1. count... up p.v. When you count all of something to see how many of them there are, you count them up.  
Count the money up and tell me what the total is.  
Counting up the yes and no votes is going to take a long time.

### eat up

1. eat... up p.v. When you eat food up, you eat all of it.  
There's no more pizza; David ate it all up. Don't eat up the cake before your father gets a piece.  
2. eat... up p.v. When something eats up something else, such as money or time, it uses all of it.  
I'm broke. Fixing my car last week ate up my entire paycheck.  
I don't want to go shopping with you. It'll eat up the whole day.

### heat up

1. heat ...up p.v. When something or someone makes something hotter, they heat it up.  
Waiter, this soup is cold. Would you heat it up for me?  
Sometimes the sun heats up the desert to 120 degrees.  
heated up part.adj. After something or someone makes something hotter, it is heat-ed up.  
Don't give the baby that cold bottle; give her this heated up one.  
The spaghetti has been in the microwave for five minutes, so I'm sure it's heated up by now.

### pay up

1. pay up p.v. When you pay up, you pay all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on, usually as a result of pressure to pay the money.  
A guy from the collection agency called and told me I'd better pay up.  
I wasn't surprised when the insurance company refused to pay up.  
paid up part.adj. After you are paid up, you have paid all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on.  
I told the bill collector that he had made a mistake. I'm alt paid up.  
Betty's VISA card is paid up, so there won't be any finance charge next month.

### plug up

1. plug... up p.v. When people or things block a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, so that nothing can flow through it, they plug it up.  
Don't pour bacon grease in the sink; it'll plug up the drain.  
I need to plug up the hole in the roof where the rain is leaking in.  
plugged up part.adj. When a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, is completely blocked so that nothing can flow through it, it is plugged up.  
Call the plumber; the sink's plugged up.  
My nose is all plugged up, and I can't smell anything.



**wipe up**

1. wipe ... up p.v. When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you wipe the liquid up. (Wipe up is similar to wipe off; however, you wipe up a liquid, but you wipe off the surface the liquid is on.)

Susie spilled her milk, and her mother told her to wipe it all up.

You'd better wipe up the water on the bathroom floor before someone falls.

EXERCISE 22a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the potato chips. Leave some for me.
2. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ the hole in this boat \_\_\_\_\_ fast before it sinks.
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ when people smoke in a nonsmoking section.
4. There was a lot of confusion about the new plan, so we asked Tom to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for us.
5. The bill collector threatened to repossess my car if I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The pain I had in my shoulder \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ after I tried the new therapy.
7. Okay, let's \_\_\_\_\_ the points to see who won the game.
8. It was cloudy in the morning, but around 11:00 it \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It hasn't rained in months, so this dry forest will really \_\_\_\_\_ if there's a fire.
10. Would you get a towel and \_\_\_\_\_ the coffee you spilled?
11. I'll put your dinner in the refrigerator, and you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ when you come home.
12. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ all these old papers in the fireplace.
13. I didn't have any insurance, so paying for those hospital bills really \_\_\_\_\_ all my savings.

EXERCISE 22b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. They burned up. (the wood, it)
2. He ought to clear up. (the misunderstanding, it)
3. Would you count up? (the votes, them)
4. Have they eaten up? (all the candy, it)
5. I can't plug up. (the hole, it)
6. Wipe up right now! (that water, it)

EXERCISE 22c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You completely blocked the drain so that water couldn't go through it. What did you do to the drain?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the drain?
3. I'm putting my coffee in the microwave to make it hotter. What am I doing to my coffee?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe my coffee after I take it out of the microwave?
5. Erik hasn't counted all the money. What hasn't Erik done?
6. You'll pay all your late mortgage payments. What will you do to your mortgage?
7. In Question 6, how will you be regarding your mortgage?
8. The police used fire to destroy all the drugs. What did the police do?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the drugs now?
10. My disease went away immediately. What did my disease do?
11. Sarah is cleaning up all the orange juice that she spilled on the floor. What is Sarah doing?

12. Carlos always eats all his baby food, and he eats it quickly. What does Carlos do?

EXERCISE 22d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

carry on, 16    go with, 15    look around, 21    step on, 21  
count on, 16    hand in, 13    put away, 14    take out on, 21  
dress up, 14    head back, 15    sign in, 12    think ahead, 21  
dry up, 14    head for, 15    sign out, 12    zip up, 21

1. I'll be there when you need me. You can \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. Do you think these shoes \_\_\_\_\_ my dress?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ so that you have everything you need when you get there.
4. Linda is here in the office somewhere — she \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:52.
5. Linda always leaves at 5:00, and it's almost 6:00 now, so I'm sure she has already \_\_\_\_\_.
6. That guy is crazy. He ought to be \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When you finish with the job application, you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to the secretary.
8. I don't think we should make any changes now. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ our original plan.
9. The party will be casual, so you don't have to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Maria told me she would be in the library between 7:00 and 8:00, but I \_\_\_\_\_ and couldn't find her.
11. There's some broken glass there — don't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. I hope it rains soon. The lake is starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ your coat — it's fifteen degrees below zero outside.
14. Janice hates her job, and she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.
15. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ San Diego, and I should get there by late afternoon.
16. I'll stay in San Diego for a week and then \_\_\_\_\_ to Los Angeles.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

### 23. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, 2

As we saw in Section 9, many phrasal verbs that can be used both intransitively and transitively require a second particle when they are used transitively, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs.

Although these phrasal verbs have a three-word version, they remain classified as two-word verbs because the two-word and three-word phrasal verbs have the same meaning — they are variations of the same verb:

He filled in. He filled in for Mike.

There are, however, three-word phrasal verbs that share the same verb and first particle as another two-word phrasal verb but have an entirely different meaning. These are two different phrasal verbs and are classified separately:

He put up a poster.

He put up with her rudeness.

#### **crack down**

1. crack down (on) p.v. When you crack down or crack down on someone or something, you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before or you make new, stronger rules and laws.

The chief of police said he was going to crack down on car theft.

The students have been coming to class later and later everyday. It's time to start cracking down.

crackdown n. When you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before, this is a crackdown.

The FBI is planning a major crackdown on organized crime.

After the crackdown, the crime rate plunged.

#### **cut down**

1. cut... down p.v. When you cut down a tree, you use a saw or an axe to cut it and make it fall to the ground.

You should cut that dead tree down before it falls on your house.

The builder was criticized for cutting down so many trees when he built the house.

2. cut... down p.v. [informal — always separated] When you cut people down to size, you do or say something to make them feel less important or less powerful.

I'm tired of that jerk. I'm going to cut him down to size.

Hank thinks he's such a tough guy. Someone ought to cut him down to size.

3. cut down (on) p.v. When you cut down or cut down on something that you consume, you use it less. When you cut down or cut down on something you do, you do it less. Cut back is similar to cut down.

If you can't quit smoking, you should at least cut down.

My doctor said cutting down on fat in my diet would lower my cholesterol.

#### **drop out**

1. drop out (of) p.v. When you drop out or drop out of a school, a training course, or other program, you leave before completing it.

The program is very difficult, and about 70 percent of the students drop out.

Linda's father was very disappointed when she dropped out of college.

dropout n. A dropout is someone who has left school, usually high school or college, before graduating.

Many successful people are college dropouts.

**get away**

1. get away (from) p.v. When you escape from people who are chasing you because they want to hurt you or because you have committed a crime, you get away or get away from them.

When he took the knife out of his pocket, I got away from him fast.

By the time the police arrived, the robbers had already gotten away.

getaway n. When you escape from people who want to capture or hurt you, you make a getaway.

The robbers made their getaway in a blue Ford.

The car used for the getaway was found abandoned in the next town.

2. get away (with) p.v. When you do something that is sneaky or wrong and you are not punished or criticized for it because no one knows or cares about it, you get away with it.

Jake has been cheating on his taxes for years, and he always gets away with it.

He got away with killing his ex-wife even though everyone knew he was guilty.

3. get away (from) p.v. When you get away from people or places, you leave them even though it may be difficult.

I'm tired of this town. I need to get away.

Frank was talking and talking, and I couldn't get away from him.

4. get away p.v. When you get away, you go on vacation.

I have a lot of work to do, but I'll try to get away for a week or two.

We always try to get away in January and go skiing.

**hold out**

1. hold ... out p.v. When you hold out your hand, you extend it in front of your body so that someone can shake hands with you or put something in your hand. Hold out is similar to put out.

Maybe Mr. Young is mad at me. I held out my hand, but he didn't shake it.

The street was filled with beggars holding their hands out.

2. hold out p.v. When a supply of something is enough for your needs, the supply holds out.

The beer held out until the end of the party, but we didn't have enough wine.

This is all the money I have, so it has to hold out until I get paid again.

3. hold out p.v. When you hold out, you resist an attack, pressure, or temptation or you continue to survive in a dangerous situation.

More than 1,000 enemy soldiers attacked the fort. There were only 98 of us inside, but we held out for two weeks.

I haven't had a cigarette in three days, and I don't know how much longer I can hold out.

holdout n. Someone who resists an attack, pressure, or temptation is a holdout.

The enemy soldiers are in control of the country, but there are some holdouts hiding in the mountains.

There are still a few holdouts who don't have credit cards.

4. hold out (for) p.v. When you hold out or hold out for something, you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands.

The basketball player is holding out for a million dollars a game.

The union spokesman said the union members would hold out until their demands were met.

holdout n. When you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands, you are a holdout.

All the players have signed contracts except for two holdouts.

**make up**

make up & makes up      making up      made up      made up

1. make... up p.v. When you invent a story to entertain or fool people, you make the story up. When you invent a lie to deceive people, you make the lie up.

My son asked me to make up a story about monsters.

Hank told his boss he was late for work because he had to go to the doctor, but he just made that excuse up.

made-up part.adj. When a story is invented or fictional, it is made-up. There's no truth to any of this — it's just a made-up story.

2. make up (of) p.v. [often passive] When people or things make up a larger thing, they together form that larger thing. When a larger thing is made up of people or things, they together form that larger thing.

Children under fifteen make up 50 percent of the population.

An airplane is made up of thousands of parts.

3. make... up p.v. When you make up your mind, make up your mind about something, or make up your mind about doing something, you decide which choice to make or which action to take.

I like both the blue dress and the red dress. I can't make up my mind.

My daughter still hasn't made up her mind about which college to attend.

Marsha made her mind up about quitting her job and joining the Navy.

made up part.adj. After you make up your mind or make up your mind to do something, your mind is made up.

Don't waste your time talking to Tom about it — his mind is made up.

4. make... up p.v. When you have an amount of money that is not enough for a certain requirement and you add more money so that it will be enough, you make up the difference between the amount you have and the amount you need.

The cashier was supposed to have \$755 at the end of her shift, but she had only \$735, so she had to make the shortage up with her own money.

I didn't have enough saved to pay for college, but my Uncle Fred made up the difference.

5. make... up p.v. When you do something that you were required to do earlier but did not, such as attend a class, take a test, or complete a homework assignment, you make it up.

Karen asked the teacher about making up the test that she missed.

The teacher told her she could make it up tomorrow after school.

6. make... up p.v. [the noun and adjectives derived from this verb are much more commonly used than the verb itself] When you make yourself up, you put lipstick, eye shadow, and so on, on your face.

She made herself up and went to the party.

make-up n. Make-up is cosmetics: lipstick, mascara, and soon. Heather's father thinks she wears too much make-up.

made-up part.adj. After people have put on make-up, they are made-up.

Did you see Lydia? She's really beautiful when she's all made-up.

7. make up (with) p.v. When two people make up or make up with each other, they end an argument and resume friendly relations.

Sally and Jim had a big fight, but they made up the next day. Mr. Baker said he won't make up with his wife until she apologizes.

**stay out**

1. stay out p.v. When you stay out, you do not return to your house.

Do you let your kids stay out past 7:00?

I stayed out late last night, and I'm really exhausted.

2. stay out (of) p.v. When you stay out of a place, you do not go inside it.

Your father's busy cooking dinner, so stay out of the kitchen.

You can't come in here. Stay out!

3. stay out (of) p.v. When you stay out of a situation, such as an argument, fight, battle, or war, you do not get involved in it.

This fight doesn't involve you, so stay out.

Jake has stayed out of trouble since he left prison.

**watch out**

1. watch out (for) p.v. When you watch out or watch out for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to watch out or watch out for something, you are warning them of possible danger. Watch out is the same as look out.

Watch out when you're crossing a busy street.

Karen said she would meet us here at 12:00, so watch out for her.

Watch out! There's a snake in the grass.

I dropped a glass in the kitchen, so watch out for broken glass.

EXERCISE 23a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Are you telling me the truth, or did you \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_?
2. You're going to a dangerous area. \_\_\_\_\_ for muggers.
3. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ on salt in my diet because of my high blood pressure.
4. We had to \_\_\_\_\_ two trees to make room for the new swimming pool.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ of the water — someone saw a shark.
6. The soldiers in the fort couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ against such a huge and powerful army.
7. The United States is \_\_\_\_\_ of people from many different races and cultures.
8. It was too hard to work and go to school at the same time, so Todd had to \_\_\_\_\_ of college.
9. Carmen can pay only half of the money she owes me, but Luis promised to \_\_\_\_\_ the difference.
10. A group of concerned citizens is demanding that the police \_\_\_\_\_ on prostitution in their neighborhood.
11. The bank robbers \_\_\_\_\_ in a white sedan with Florida license plates.
12. When the President walks past you, \_\_\_\_\_ your hand \_\_\_\_\_ and maybe he'll shake it.
13. I really need a vacation. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ in three years.
14. I told my son that if he can't \_\_\_\_\_ of trouble, I'm going to send him to military school.
15. The airline pilots are \_\_\_\_\_ for a 15 percent raise, and they will not accept anything less.
16. The store's closing in five minutes, so you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your mind about which pair of shoes you want.
17. After fourteen years he thought he had \_\_\_\_\_ with the murder, but he was wrong.
18. All Joe does is complain and criticize. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ from him.
19. Mike didn't come home until 4:30 in the morning, and his father was furious that he \_\_\_\_\_ so late.



20. He thinks he's so smart. I hope someone \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ to size someday.
21. Be careful about how much you spend — this money has to \_\_\_\_\_ | \_\_\_\_\_ until payday.
22. Bob and Marsha had a big argument, but they \_\_\_\_\_ with each other and now everything is okay.
23. The professor warned the students that if they missed the final examination, they could not \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 23b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. The principal is going to crack down \_\_\_\_\_ smoking in the bathroom.
2. If you want to lose weight, cut down \_\_\_\_\_ cake and cookies.
3. He dropped out \_\_\_\_\_ college before graduation.
4. After Jake robbed the liquor store, he was arrested and sent to jail. He didn't get away \_\_\_\_\_ robbing the liquor store.
5. The French workers are holding out \_\_\_\_\_ a 100 percent raise and a two-day workweek.
6. There are a lot of rattlesnakes around here, so watch out \_\_\_\_\_ them.
7. Timmy's mother told him to stay out \_\_\_\_\_ the cookie jar.

EXERCISE 23c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The union members are on strike, and some will not go back to work unless they get the 10 percent raise they demanded in the beginning. What are the union members doing?
2. Some union members accepted a 7 percent raise and went back to work, but not the union members in Question 1. What would you call the union members in Question 1?
3. Jim and his sister had a big fight, but they apologized to each other, and now everything is okay. What did Jim and his sister do?
4. Jake stopped going to high school before he graduated. What did Jake do?
5. In Question 4, what is Jake?
6. You considered buying either a Toyota or a Nissan, and then you made your decision. What did you do?
7. My elbow is very sore, so my doctor told me to play less tennis. What did my doctor tell me?
8. Most of the Democrats will vote in favor of the new law, but a few are resisting pressure to vote yes. What are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes doing?
9. In Question 8, what are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes?
10. Mr. and Mrs. Ortega went to a party and didn't come home until 3:00 A.M. What did they do?
11. The explorer's supply of food and water has to last for three months. What does the explorer's supply of food and water have to do for three months?
12. Erik invented a funny story for his daughter. What did Erik do?
13. In Question 12, Erik's funny story wasn't true. How would you describe it?
14. Mr. Flores cheats on his taxes, but so far he hasn't been caught. What has Mr. Flores done so far?
15. There are a log of big trucks on the road, so when you drive, you have to be careful. What do you have to do when you drive?
16. The police are going to start working harder to prevent crime. What are the police going to do?
17. In Question 16, what can you call the plan to work harder to prevent crime?



EXERCISE 23d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

aim at, 19	fall apart, 17	stand around, 18
believe in, 16	get through, 16	tell apart, 18
break through, 18	go for, 16	think about, 16
burn up, 22	grow out of, 17	wipe up, 22
come over, 17	hold off, 16	
count up, 22	put past, 16	

1. Do you want these baby clothes? My daughter has \_\_\_\_\_ them.
2. It's always a good idea to \_\_\_\_\_ installing a new software version until they get all the bugs out.
3. Get a paper towel and \_\_\_\_\_ the grape juice you spilled.
4. I'm not sure what I will do. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. I have a lot of work to do, so I probably won't \_\_\_\_\_ until 4:00.
6. The twins look exactly like each other. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
7. The walls of this fort are ten feet thick. No one could \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We finished our card game, and Sean \_\_\_\_\_ the points.
9. The new law is \_\_\_\_\_ reducing air pollution.
10. I need to fix this table. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Rac|tiel suggested moving to the suburbs, and her husband \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.
12. That guy's a lunatic. There's nothing I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ the old wood in the fireplace.
14. My niece is thirteen years old, but she still \_\_\_\_\_ Santa Claus.
15. The sign in the store window said they open at 10:00, but we had to \_\_\_\_\_ until 10:20 before they opened the doors.
16. Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ to my house tonight and have dinner?

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 24. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 2

As we saw in Section 5, two-word phrasal verbs are sometimes accented on the verb and sometimes on the particle. Two-word nouns, however, are always accent-ed on the verb even if it is the particle of the two-word verb that is accented:

verb: SHOW off noun: SHOW-off verb: slow DOWN noun: SLOWdown

### come down

1. come down (to) p.v. When someone moves toward you to a lower level position, or from north to south, that person comes down or comes down to where you are. Come up is the opposite of come down.

It's been raining for an hour! It's really coming down.

My friend from Canada comes down to visit us in New Mexico once in a while.

2. come down p.v. When you move to a lower level socially or financially and receive less respect from other people because of this change, you come down in life.

Hank certainly has come down in life — he lost his job, house, and family because of his gambling problem.

Mark used to be so successful, but now he has so many problems. He has really come down in life.

comedown n. A comedown is a move to a lower level socially or financially that causes you to receive less respect from other people.

A few years ago he was the manager of this restaurant, but now he's only a waiter — what a comedown.

3. come down (to) p.v. When you lower the price you are asking for something, you come down or come down to a lower price.

I won't buy her car unless she comes down to \$ 12,000.

The union won't come down a nickel in its salary demands.

### Let up

1. let up (on) p.v. When something becomes less strong, less intense, or less severe, it lets up.

The rain finally let up yesterday.

Mike's parents are very strict with him. He's only a boy. They should let up on him.

letup n. A letup is a reduction in how strong, severe, or intense something is.

There was no letup in terrorist bombings after the peace treaty was signed.

### print out

1. print ...out p.v. When you make a computer write something on paper, you print it out.

After I finished writing my letter, I printed it out and signed it.

I can't print this out — my printer is broken.

printout n. When you make a computer write something on paper, the paper is a printout.

I put the printout of the October sales report on the sales manager's desk.

shake up

shake up & shakes up

shaking up

shook up

shaken up

1. shake... up p.v. When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, it shakes you up.

Seeing all those dead bodies sure shook me up.

I was really shaken up when I learned that my uncle had been killed.

shaken up part.adj. When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, you are shaken up.

Leave Frank atone. He just got some bad news, and he's a bit shaken up about it.

2. shake ...up p.v. When you mix something by shaking it, you shake it up.

You have to shake up Italian dressing before you open the bottle.

Did you shake this can of paint up?

3. shake... up p.v. When you make major changes in an organization or business, you shake it up.

The new CEO shook up management at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.

People are getting a little lazy around here. It's time to shake things up.

shake-up n. A major change in an organization or business is a shake-up.

There was a big shake-up at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.

### **show off**

1. show... off p.v. When you show off, you let people see something you have or something you can do in a very obvious and excessive way.

Sally's boyfriend gave her a huge diamond engagement ring, and she showed it off to all her friends. The boy was showing off by riding his bicycle with no hands when he fell and hurt himself.

show-off n. Someone who shows off is a show-off.

Did you hear Alfonso speaking French at the party so everyone could hear?

What a show-off!

### **slow down**

1. slow... down p.v. When something causes people or things to do something more slowly, it slows them down.

I was driving pretty fast, but I slowed down after I saw the police car. Production at the factory slowed down when half the workers got sick.

slowdown n. When people or things do something more slowly, a slowdown occurs.

The snow caused a big slowdown on the highway this morning.

### **stop over**

1. stop over p.v. When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you stop over.

David stopped over in London on his flight from New York to Moscow.

Stopping over in Dubai on the way to Bangkok wasn't any fun — we couldn't even leave the airport.

stopover n. When you interrupt a journey for a short stay somewhere, usually an airplane journey, you make a stopover.

I flew from Istanbul to Philadelphia with a four-day stopover in Amsterdam.

2. stop over p.v. When you visit someone for a short time, you stop over.

Would you like to stop over after dinner and see our vacation pictures?

Can you vacuum the living room, please? The Youngs are stopping over tonight, and I want the place to look nice.

### **trade in**

1. trade ... in p.v. When you give an old car or other piece of expensive equipment to someone you are buying a new car or piece of equipment from in order to get a lower price, you trade the old car or piece of equipment in.

After the twins were born, Raul traded his pickup truck in for a station wagon.

We'll get a good price on our new photocopier if we trade in our old one.

trade-in n. An old car or piece of equipment that you trade in for a newer one is a trade-in.

Most of the used cars sold by dealers are trade-ins.

EXERCISE 24a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You're driving too fast. Please \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ that bottle of salad dressing before you open it.
3. The real estate agent says he thinks the sellers will \_\_\_\_\_ a little in their asking price.
4. My new car cost \$24,000, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my old car \_\_\_\_\_ for \$15,000.
5. Jim is upstairs. Ask him to \_\_\_\_\_ here for a minute, okay?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ in London for a few days on your way to India is a good way to get over jet lag.
7. I was pretty \_\_\_\_\_ by the news, but now I'm okay.
8. Luis \_\_\_\_\_ his new car \_\_\_\_\_ to his friends yesterday.
9. The bombing continued for four days before it finally \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Leticia used to be rich, but she lost all her money gambling, and now she can't even pay her bills. She's really \_\_\_\_\_ in life.
11. When you finish writing that story, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give it to me. I want to read it.
12. This company was losing money until the new owners came in and \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I have to clean the house because Pat and Mike might \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

EXERCISE 24b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. I worked for my company for thirty-one years before I got fired in the big \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I had a four-hour \_\_\_\_\_ in Los Angeles on my way to Hawaii.
3. Nicole used to have her own company, and now she's driving a taxi. That's quite a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The wind blew all night without any \_\_\_\_\_.
5. New car dealers usually have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ for sale at low prices.
6. The snow caused a big \_\_\_\_\_ on the interstate this morning.
7. After the computer finished with the data, I took the \_\_\_\_\_ upstairs to the sales department.
8. He's lost a lot of weight, and now he wears really tight pants everyday. What a \_\_\_\_\_ he is.

EXERCISE 24c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The rain slowed down. (traffic/light)

---



---

2. He printed out. (his letter, it)

---



---



---

3. The bad news has shaken up. (Jim and Nancy, them)

---



---



---

4. I got \$5,000 for trading in. (my old car, it)

---



---



---

5. Chelsea's parents showed off. (her perfect report card, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 24d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. After the computer finished the calculations, I printed the answers on a piece of paper. What did I do?
2. In Question 1, what would you call the paper with the answers?
3. Todd's friend in Minnesota is going to visit Todd in New Orleans. What is Todd's friend going to do?
4. Ned walks around without a shirt so the girls can see his muscles. What does Ned do?
5. In Question 4, what is Ned?
6. When I buy my new car, I'll give the dealer my old car so that I can get a lower price on the new car. What will I do with my old car?
7. In Question 6, what would you call my old car?
8. The new boss fired a lot of employees, hired new employees, and made a lot of changes. What did the new boss do?
9. In Question 8, what would you call what the new boss did?
10. Sandra used to be married to a prince, but now she's divorced and broke. What has Sandra done?
11. In Question 10, what would you call what happened to Sandra?
12. It rained for two weeks straight before it stopped. What did the rain do?
13. In Question 12, what would you call what the rain did?
14. There was a big accident on the highway yesterday morning, and traffic was awful. What did the accident do to the traffic?
15. In Question 14, what would you call the traffic situation?
16. You flew from Denver to Miami, but you had to spend a few hours in Atlanta on the way. What did you do in Atlanta?
17. In Question 16, what would you call my visit to Atlanta?
18. Mike saw a terrible accident this morning while he was driving, and it upset him a lot. What did the accident do to Mike?
19. In Question 18, how would you describe Mike after he saw the accident?

EXERCISE 24e, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

backup, 11      drop-off, 11      follow-up, 11      tryout, 11      crackdown, 23      dropout, 23      lineup, 18  
workout, 11

1. The doctor said I was cured, but he wants me to see him in a year for a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Drugs are getting to be a big problem in my son's school. I think it's time for a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When I was nineteen, I was a \_\_\_\_\_ with no future, but then I got smart and finished school.
4. After the accident, the human cannonball was dropped from the circus \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the basketball team will be next Saturday at 10:00 A.M.
6. Janice just got back from the gym, and she's really exhausted from her \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I use the program on the hard disk, but I have a \_\_\_\_\_ on a floppy.
8. Business at the restaurant used to be good, but there was a big \_\_\_\_\_ after that case of food poisoning.

EXERCISE 24f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bring over, 19   go beyond, 18   look around, 21   tell on, 15  
cool off, 19   hang up, 9   settle down, 21   watch out, 23  
count up, 22   hold out, 23   stay out, 23   wipe up, 22  
figure on, 18   lift up, 19   step on, 21

1. Young man, if you don't \_\_\_\_\_ of trouble at school, I'm going to send you to military school!
2. These suitcases are so heavy I can barely \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A good history book doesn't simply tell you what happened, it \_\_\_\_\_ that and tells you why.
4. Todd got in trouble with his mother after he broke a window and his sister \_\_\_\_\_ him.
5. If you're going to that bad neighborhood late at night, please be careful and \_\_\_\_\_ for muggers.
6. That museum is huge. If you want to see everything, you should \_\_\_\_\_ spending the entire day there.
7. This coffee's way too hot. Can you get me an ice cube so I can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
8. That company wants to hire me, but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for more money.
9. My brother is going to visit tonight, and he's \_\_\_\_\_ his fiancée \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I've never been to this store before; I want to \_\_\_\_\_ and see what they have.
11. My husband was very angry when our thirteen-year-old daughter came home at 4:00 in the morning, so I told him to \_\_\_\_\_ and let me talk to her.
12. We had only twenty minutes to get to the airport, so we told the taxi driver to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
13. After the votes were \_\_\_\_\_, Senator Dolittle was declared the winner.
14. Timmy, get a paper towel and \_\_\_\_\_ this juice you spilled on the floor.
15. Leticia said good-bye and \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 25. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and have to, have got to, and must

Have to, have got to, and must have two important uses in English. One is familiar to most students, the other is not.

But before discussing that, let's pay special attention to have got to. Have to and have got to mean exactly the same thing. Both are commonly used, and both are acceptable standard English. Have to derives from have, and have got to derives from have got. So why the got in have got to? A good question. Got in have got to means nothing and serves no purpose whatever. Have got to is a unique, idiomat–ic variation of have to. There is no point in trying to understand the grammar of have got to because there isn't any. Like other idioms, it must simply be memo–rized. Though have to and have got to mean the same thing, their forms are differ–ent, especially in questions and negative sentences. In the examples below, the contracted forms are the most common in everyday spoken English:

statement:      You have to come down.      You have got to come down.

                    You have to come down.      You've got to come down.

question:      Do you have to come down?      Have you got to come down?

negative:      You do not have to come down. You have not got to come down.

                    You don't have to come down. You haven't got to come down.

### Requirement

Have to, have got to, and must are both used to say that something is required, necessary, mandatory — there is no choice in the matter:

You have to make up the test.

You've got to make up the test.

You must make up the test.

Although most students learn this use of must early in their studies, it is actually the least common way to use must. Both have to and have got to are much more commonly used for this purpose.

### Near certainty

The other important use of have to, have got to, and must is to say that something is 99 percent certain — that based on the facts and based on what we see and know, no other conclusion is possible about something. We are 99 percent certain, and all we need is confirmation to be 100 percent certain:

Janice, you have been working for 12 hours without a break. You have to be tired. (A logical assumption, but until Janice confirms that she is tired, the speaker cannot be 100 percent certain.)

I would never take that book out of this room. It's got to be here somewhere. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker finds the book, he cannot be 100 percent certain that it is in the room.) That man is from Japan. I've never spoken with him, but he must speak Japanese. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker hears the man speaking Japanese, he cannot be 100 percent certain.)

When have to, have got to, and must are used in this way, it is must that is more common than the others. Have to and have got to, when used for this purpose, have greater emphasis and are used for dramatic effect:

Mark has to be the biggest idiot in the entire world.

Where is Lydia? She's got to be here somewhere.



**do with**

1. do with p.v. [used only in the form] When you say that one thing has something to do with another, you mean there is a connection between the two.

Don't blame me for what happened; I had nothing to do with it.

I'm not sure what this part does, but I think it must have something to do with the transmission.

**have on**

1. have... on p.v. When you wear something, such as an item of clothing, perfume, or cosmetics, you have it on. Sally had red pants and a blue shirt on.

I didn't have a raincoat on, and I got all wet.

2. have... on p.v. When you have an electrical device on, you are using it.

Last summer was so cool that we had the air conditioner on only two or three times.

What's that sound? Dan must have the radio on.

**hurry up**

1. hurry up p.v. When you hurry up, you do something quickly.

Nicole has to hurry up if she's going to finish her work before 5:00.

If we don't hurry up, we're going to miss the beginning of the movie.

2. hurry... up p.v. When you hurry something up, you do it more quickly. When you hurry people up, you urge them to do something more quickly. When you say "Hurry up," to people, you are telling them to do something more quickly.

Everyone was really hungry, so I asked our cook to hurry dinner up.

There were only five minutes left to finish the test, so the teacher hurried the students up. Hurry up! I'm not going to wait for you all day.

**knock over**

1. knock... over p.v. When you knock people or things over, you use force to make them fall to a horizontal position.

The force of the explosion knocked me over.

The children were playing, and they knocked the lamp over.

**lighten up**

1. lighten up (on) p.v. [informal] When you lighten up or lighten up on people, you become less harsh or less strict in your treatment of them.

You're awfully hard on your daughter. Maybe you ought to lighten up on her.

You've been criticizing me all day. Will you please lighten up?

2. lighten ...up p.v. When you lighten up, you change the subject of conversation from something serious to something more cheerful and pleasant.

Enough talk about business. Let's lighten things up around here. Lighten it up — you've been talking about death and taxes all night.

**plan ahead**

1. plan ahead p.v. When you plan ahead, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem then. Plan ahead is similar to think ahead.

Janice is a good manager. She always plans ahead in case there's a problem.

Plan ahead — you don't want any problems when you're 200 miles from the nearest town.

### settle for

1. settle for p.v. When you settle for something, you accept it even though it may not be exactly what you want or need.

The strikers wanted an 8 percent pay increase, but they settled for 5 percent.

Dr. Smith has very high standards. He won't settle for second best.

### think up

1. think... up p.v. When you think up something, such as an idea, solution, or plan, you use your imagination to create it.

I have to think up a way to solve this problem.

Maria thought up a great way to make some extra money.

Stop worrying — I'll think something up.

EXERCISE 25a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We're going to be late if you don't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I told the store manager that I wanted a full refund and that I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_; \_\_\_\_\_ anything else.
3. Mr. Wolfe \_\_\_\_\_ a white suit \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
4. Joe's been angry all day. I wish he'd \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The truck hit the light pole and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You have to talk to someone in the shipping department about your missing order. I have nothing to \_\_\_\_\_ shipping.
7. If you're going on an important business trip, you should \_\_\_\_\_ so I that you don't forget something you'll need later.
8. Jake is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to make money without working.
9. Go upstairs and \_\_\_\_\_ your sister \_\_\_\_\_. I'm afraid she's going to be late for school.
10. We've been talking politics all night. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_, okay?
11. I like to \_\_\_\_\_ the radio \_\_\_\_\_ when I go to bed.

EXERCISE 25b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Charles wore a red shirt yesterday. What did Charles do?
2. Sean wants a 15 percent raise, and he won't accept less. What won't Sean do?
3. Dr. Wood is thinking about the important meeting she will go to next week so that she will be ready. What is Dr. Wood doing?
4. Jake hit Jerry so hard that Jerry fell to the floor. What did Jake do to Jerry?
5. Ned told Todd to work more quickly. What did Ned tell Todd to do?
6. I got a letter about my income taxes. What was the letter about?
7. Sergeant Jones has been yelling at the soldiers all day. What should Sergeant Jones do?
8. Betty needs a Halloween costume, and she's using her imagination to create one. What is Betty doing?

EXERCISE 25c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 25d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burned up, 22   lined up, 18   ripped up, 17   zipped up, 21  
cleared up, 22   made-up, 23   shaken up, 24  
dried out, 15   paid up, 22   warmed up, 19  
heated up, 22   plugged up, 22   worn down, 17

1. It's freezing outside — make sure your coat is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Don't start driving yet; the car's not \_\_\_\_\_.
3. We talked about the problem, and now everything is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I need lotion; my skin is really \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Hank is such a liar. Don't believe any of his \_\_\_\_\_ excuses.
6. After I give Bill ten bucks, I won't owe him another penny. I'll be totally \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Pat was pretty \_\_\_\_\_ after the accident.
8. Bill was furious at his ex-wife, and now all his photos of her are \_\_\_\_\_ and in the garbage.
9. People are \_\_\_\_\_ for three blocks to buy World Series tickets.
10. Don't drink that coffee — it's not \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I can't smell or taste anything; my nose is all \_\_\_\_\_.
12. I was really \_\_\_\_\_ after he took my calculator without asking me and then lost it.
13. The heels of my old cowboy boots are \_\_\_\_\_. I need to get them fixed.

EXERCISE 25e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure to use the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the lesson number given after each one.

call in, 5   hand out, 10   screw on, 12   stop over, 24  
clear up, 22   hook up, 9   show off, 24   trade in, 24  
come down, 24   let up, 24   slow down, 24   warm up, 19  
go back, 19   print out, 24   stick up, 14

1. The car dealer is asking \$27,000 for the car I want, but I think he might \_\_\_\_\_ to \$24,000.
2. While you go to the library, I'll go to the grocery store, and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ at the corner in one hour.
3. Be sure you \_\_\_\_\_ the top of that mustard jar \_\_\_\_\_ tightly.
4. Erik checks the time every five minutes so that he can \_\_\_\_\_ his new Rolex watch.
5. Mike wasn't at work today. He \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
6. When Bill flies to Los Angeles, he always \_\_\_\_\_ in Bangkok.
7. The car dealer said he'll give me a good deal if I \_\_\_\_\_ my old car.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ the notices \_\_\_\_\_ all over town.

9. The memo from the personnel office \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of confusion about the new vacation policy.
10. This weather is terrible. I wonder if this storm is ever going to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Turn the heater on, and the room will \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_.
12. ^Nancy was driving too fast, so I told her to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The teacher won't \_\_\_\_\_ the tests until the students are quiet.
14. After you finish writing your report, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give it to me.
15. Paul's from Colombia, but he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ there for seven years.



## 26. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and the adverb back

The adverb back is sometimes used with phrasal verbs to mean again. The following sentences have the same meaning:

We got together again. We got back together.

Back is always placed directly before the particle. When back is used with separable phrasal verbs, the object must separate the verb and particle, and back must be placed between the object and the particle:

I put the engine back together. I put back together the engine.

Do not confuse the adverb back, which modifies phrasal verbs, with the particle back that is part of some phrasal verbs (and has the same meaning of again).

### get together

**get together (with) p.v.** When two people get together, they meet and spend time together. When you get together with someone, you meet and spend time with that person. When a man and woman resume a relationship after separating, they get back together.

If you're not busy tomorrow night, would you like to get together?

We're going to get together with Bill and Nancy tomorrow.

Judy and Sam had separated, but now they've gotten back together.

**get-together n.** An informal gathering is a get-together.

I'm having a little get-together tonight. Would you like to come?

**2. get... together p.v.** When you get things together, you collect them so they are in the same place.

You should get all your tools together so you will have them when you need them.

Linda got all her tax records together to show to her accountant.

**3. get... together p.v. [informal]** When you get yourself together, or get it together, you gain control of your emotions after you have become upset or emotional.

Bob was very upset before the party, but he got it together before the guests came.

Hey, get yourself together! Everyone is watching you.

### go over

**1. go over (to) p.v.** When people move from where you are to a place, thing, or person that is farther away from you, they go over or go over to that place, thing, or person.

I'm busy. Go over there and stop bothering me.

I was hot, so Maria went over to the window and opened it.

**2. go over (to) p.v.** When you go to someone's house for a visit, you go over or go over to that person's house.

Have you gone over to Nicole's house to see her new baby yet?

I went over to Erik's for dinner last night.

**3. go over p.v.** When you carefully read or review important written material, you go over it.

Here's a magazine article I just finished writing. Go over it and tell me what you think.

The actor went over his lines before the audition.

**going-over n.** When you examine or inspect something carefully, you give it a going-over.

I gave his report a good going-over and found a lot of mistakes.

**4. go over p.v.** When you carefully explain something, usually something that is complicated but important, you go over it.

Before the trial Hank and his lawyer went over what Hank was going to say.

No one understood the manager's plan after he explained it, so he went back over it.

**5. go over p.v.** When an idea, suggestion, or performance is accepted and liked by other people, it goes over.

Senator Dolittle's plan to raise taxes didn't go over with the voters.

The sinaer's performance went over well with the critics.

### go up

1. go up (to) p.v. When you move to a higher level or position, or from south to north, you go up or go up to that place. Go down is the opposite of go up.

Suzie came down from her tree house to eat lunch, but she went back up after she finished.

I spend the winters in Mexico, and go up to my home in Ohio in the summer.

2. go up (to) p.v. When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something increases, it goes up. Go down is the opposite of go up.

The price of gas hasn't gone up in two years.

In the summer the temperature in Saudi Arabia can go up to 125 degrees.

3. go up (to) p.v. When a schedule or plan ends at a certain time or date, the schedule or plan goes up to that time or date.

Do you have the new schedule? This one goes up only to the end of April.

The teacher gave the students a syllabus that went up to the midterm.

4. go up (to) p.v. When something extends to a certain point that is farther north or at a higher elevation, it goes up to that point. Go down is the opposite of go up.

This trail went up to the base camp at the foot of the mountain.

Interstate 5 goes up to Seattle.

5. go up (to) p.v. When you approach a person, you go up to that person.

There's Sarah, Go up and introduce yourself.

Janice isn't shy — she went right up to the president of the company and asked for a raise.

let in on

let in on & lets in on

letting in on

let in on

let in on

1. let... in on p.v. When you tell people information that is secret or not widely known, you let that person in on the information.

General Chambers let me in on the top secret information.

I'm going to let you in on something not many people know about me.

196

### open up

open up & opens up

opening up

opened up

opened up

1. open ...up p.v. When you open something up, you reveal what is inside so that people can see it.

Sofia opened the box up and looked inside.

Mike's going to open up his computer to try to find the problem.

2. open ... up p.v. When you open a room or building up, you unlock or open the doors so that people can enter.

The office closes at 12:00 for lunch and opens back up at 1:00.

The manager was late and didn't open up the store until 10:30.

3. open ... up p.v. When a new business starts, it opens up or is opened up by someone.

I was driving through town, and I noticed that a new book store has opened up on Maple Street.

Jimmy wants to open up a restaurant near the new office building.

### put together

1. put... together p.v. When you assemble the parts of something, you put it together. Put together is the opposite of take apart.

Sally got a bicycle for her birthday, and her father put it together after dinner.

It was easy taking my car's engine apart, but putting it back together was a lot harder.

2. put... together p.v. When you organize some ideas, plans, or suggestions in order to show them to someone or discuss them with someone, you put them together.

Mr. and Mrs. Flores want to redecorate their house, so they asked an interior designer to put some ideas together.

I have an interesting idea for a new business, and I'm putting together a proposal.

3. put... together p.v. When you position people or things so that they are close to each other or touching, you put them together.

The teacher told Timmy and Mike to put their desks together so they could work on their project.

When you plan your dinner party seating arrangement, put Heather and Jimmy together.

### **shut off**

1. shut... off p.v. When you shut off an electrical or mechanical device, you cut the power going to it so that it stops operating. Turn off and switch off are similar to shut off.

Timmy's mother told him to shut off the TV and go to bed.

I'm freezing. Would you mind shutting the air conditioner off?

shut off part.adj. After you shut off an electrical or mechanical device, it is shut off. Turned off and switched off are similar to shut off.

Well, no wonder it's so cold in here — the heat's shut off.

shutoff n. When you shut off something, or when something shuts off, this action is a shutoff. When you shut off something, you use the shutoff switch, button, valve, and so on.

The electricity shutoff lasted twenty minutes.

In case of emergency, turn this shutoff valve here.

### **start up**

1. start ...up p.v. When an electrical or mechanical device starts up or someone starts it up, it begins to operate.

My car's engine died at a red light, and it wouldn't start up again.

You push this button here to start the computer up.

start-up n. When you start up something, or something starts up, this action is a start-up. When you start up something, you use the start-up switch, button, and soon.

To start the computer up, push this start-up button.

If your computer's hard disk crashes, you can use a floppy as the start-up disk.

2. start... up p.v. When you start up a new business or company, you take the steps necessary to begin a new business or company.

You should have a detailed business plan before starting a business up.

Jane borrowed the money she needed to start up her business from her uncle.

start-up n. A start-up or start-up business or company is a new business or company.

Most start-up businesses aren't successful.



EXERCISE 26a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Your important papers are all over the house. You should \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ and keep them in a safe place.
2. It was so cold this morning that it took half an hour to \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
3. This is awfully complicated. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ it one more time?
4. The police ordered the people in the house to \_\_\_\_\_ the door \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The sergeant \_\_\_\_\_ the hill to look for the enemy soldiers.
6. The account executive was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ some ideas \_\_\_\_\_ for a new advertising campaign.
7. I'm trying to sleep. Would you please \_\_\_\_\_ the lights?
8. Linda saw her favorite movie star, but she was too shy to \_\_\_\_\_ to him and ask for his autograph.
9. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a little secret.
10. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ to Todd's house to help him with his math homework.
11. This calendar is useless—it \_\_\_\_\_ only to August.
12. Thank you for your application. I will \_\_\_\_\_ it carefully and call you in a few days.
13. This jigsaw puzzle has 1,000 pieces. It'll take forever to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
14. If that big discount store \_\_\_\_\_ outside of town, all these little shops will go out of business.
15. The level of water in the river always falls during the summer but \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ the next spring.
16. Sam's idea of giving all the workers a 10 percent pay raise didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with management.
17. I know you're upset, but you have to \_\_\_\_\_ yourself \_\_\_\_\_.
18. On Saturday nights Mike usually \_\_\_\_\_ with some friends and plays poker.
19. As soon as we arrived at the party, David \_\_\_\_\_ to the buffet table and grabbed a plate.
20. Without the combination, there's no way to \_\_\_\_\_ this safe \_\_\_\_\_.
21. \_\_\_\_\_ all your Spanish books \_\_\_\_\_ on the same shelf.
22. This road \_\_\_\_\_ to the next town, but that's where it ends.
23. I'll need around \$25,000 to \_\_\_\_\_ my new business.

EXERCISE 26b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I wish they would open up near me. (a branch office, one)

---

---

---

2. Lydia put together, (the food processor, it)

---

---

---

3. Do you know how to shut off? (the photocopier, it)

---

---

---

4. Push this button to start up. (the generator, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 26c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Frank read my report carefully. What did Frank do to my report?
2. In Question 1, what did Frank give my report?
3. Judy walked toward the king, stopped next to him, and gave him the petition. What did Judy do to the king?
4. Mike told me a secret. What did Mike do?
5. Bill and some friends are going to meet and spend some time together. What are Bill and his friends going to do?
6. In Question 5, what is this activity called?
7. My computer begins to operate from the hard disk. What does my computer do from the hard disk?
8. In Question 7, what would you call the hard disk?
9. The mayor's plan to fight crime in the streets was very successful with the voters. What impression did the mayor's plan have on the voters?
10. The heater stops operating automatically when the temperature reaches a certain point. What does the heater do automatically?
11. In Question 10, what is the temperature that makes the heater stop operating called?
12. You quit your job so that you could begin your own company. Why did you quit your job?
13. In Question 12, what would you call your new company?
14. You assembled all the parts of your model airplane. What did you do to your model airplane?
15. This airplane schedule gives flight times until December 31. What does the airplane schedule do?
16. The supermarket unlocks its doors and lets people in at 7:00 A.M. every day. What does the supermarket do at 7:00 A.M. every day?

EXERCISE 26d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from-\* previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |             |                |                |                 |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| do with, 25 | have on, 25    | look over, 21  | settle for, 25  |
| end up, 20  | hurry up, 25   | pick on, 21    | show off, 24    |
| go off, 20  | knock over, 25 | plan ahead, 25 | take out on, 21 |
| go on, 20   | lighten up, 25 | put on, 1      | think up, 25    |

1. I'm asking \$10,000 for my car, but I'll \_\_\_\_\_ \$8,500.
2. That new manager is really hard on the employees. He ought to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. At the supermarket, Tom hit the stack of boxes with his shopping cart and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We had planned to go to France on our vacation, but we \_\_\_\_\_ going to Spain instead.
5. Will you \_\_\_\_\_! If we don't leave soon we're going to be late.
6. Mark hates his job, and he comes home every night and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ his family.
7. My doctor got the test results from the lab, and she \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ very carefully.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ your coat \_\_\_\_\_. It's cold outside.
9. Don't wait until the last minute to make your vacation airline reservations. You have to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The detective didn't believe that the gun had \_\_\_\_\_ accidentally.
11. I hated my older brother when I was a kid. He always \_\_\_\_\_ me.
12. How are we going to get \$500 in two days? We need to \_\_\_\_\_ a good plan.
13. I didn't understand everything the computer shop guy said, but it had something to \_\_\_\_\_ memory.
14. Jim tries to answer every question the teacher asks. He's always \_\_\_\_\_.

15. That meeting was so boring. It seemed like it was going to \_\_\_\_\_ forever.
16. The police officer must be off duty; he doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ his uniform \_\_\_\_\_.



## 27. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle off and the adverb right

The particle off is used in many phrasal verbs to say that something is separated or removed:

The cup handle broke. (The handle is broken, but it is still attached to the cup.) The cup handle broke off. (The handle is no longer attached to the cup.)

Right, discussed in Section 19, is often used with these phrasal verbs to indicate that the action of the verb happened quickly:

He washed the dirt off. (The dirt was removed.) He washed the dirt right off. (The dirt was removed quickly.)

Remember that right can be used in this way only after an object that separates the verb and the particle:

He washed the dirt right off. He washed right off the dirt.

### bite off

1. bite... off p.v. When you bite off something, you use your teeth to remove a piece. When you bite off more than you can chew, you agree to do something that you do not have the time or the ability to do.

The lion bit off a huge piece of the zebra's flesh.

You can't finish that huge project by tomorrow. I think you've bitten off more than you can chew.

### break off

1. break... off p.v. When something breaks off or someone breaks something off, a part or smaller piece is separated from something larger by force.

Jim broke off a piece of chocolate and gave it to his girlfriend.

One of the arms broke off the statue when it fell off the pedestal.

broken off part.adj. After something breaks off, it is broken off.

The handle of the coffee cup is broken off.

1. break... off p.v. When you break off relations or contact with someone, you decide to end relations or contact with that person.

The two countries broke off relations with each other.

I was so angry at my in-laws that I broke off all contact with them.

### dry off

1. dry... off p.v. When something dries off or you dry something off, water or other liquids that are on it evaporate.

It rained for only a few minutes, so the streets dried off quickly.

Leave your wet clothes outside and let the sun dry them off.

dried off part.adj. After something has dried off, it is dried off.

They can't play baseball because the field isn't dried off.

### knock off

1. knock... off p.v. When you knock something off, you either accidentally or deliberately use force to make it fall from a place above the ground to the ground below.

Susie knocked a glass off the table and broke it.

The cat knocked the clock off the shelf.

2. knock off p.v. [informal] When you knock off, you finish working.

I quit working at 5:00 last night, but Sean didn't knock off until 8:30.

You've been working all day. Why don't you knock off?

3. knock... off p.v. [informal] When you say "Knock it off" to people, you want them to stop doing something that is bothering you.

If you don't knock it off, you'll be sorry.

I'm tired of listening to you criticize me. Knock it off!

4. knock... off p.v. When you knock something off, you make something quickly and not very carefully.

The artist knocked off a quick sketch and gave it to the waiter.

Dan prefers writing novels, but he sometimes knocks off a magazine article to make a few bucks.

5. knock... off p.v. [informal] When you knock people off, you kill them.

Jake was sent to prison for knocking off his brother-in-law.

Mario was the head of a gang of criminals until he was knocked off by a rival.

### **tear off**

1. tear... off p.v. When you use force to remove a piece of something that is flexible — paper, cloth, and so on — you tear it off.

I tore off a coupon for frozen pizza at the supermarket.

Alex always tears the tags off his shirt collars.

torn off part.adj. After something has been torn off, it is torn off.

There aren't any more coupons. They're all torn off.

### **wash off**

1. wash ... off p.v. When you wash something off or wash the dirt off something, you use water and soap to remove dirt or unwanted items from a surface.

Mike washed off his car.

Mike washed the dirt off his car.

washed off part.adj. After you wash something off or wash the dirt off something, it is washed off.

The maid said she had washed the grease off the wall, but the wall didn't look washed off to me.

### **wear off**

1. wear off p.v. When the surface of something is gradually removed by friction or exposure to the elements so that what is beneath the surface is exposed, the surface wears off.

You could see the wood where the paint had worn off.

The gold wears off this cheap jewelry right away.

worn off part.adj. After something has worn off, it is worn off.

These ancient temples used to be very colorful, but now all the paint is worn off.

2. wear off p.v. When the effects of drugs or alcohol gradually go away, they wear off.

The wounded soldier was in great pain after the morphine wore off.

He's going to have a big headache after the vodka wears off.

3. wear off p.v. When an emotional feeling gradually goes away, it wears off.

After the shock of getting fired wore off, I started to get angry.

When I met Jim I fell in love immediately, but that wore off quickly as I got to know him better.

**wipe off**

1. wipe ...off p.v. When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you wipe the surface off. You can either wipe off something that is wet or wipe off the liquid. Wipe up is similar to wipe off; however, you wipe up a liquid, but you wipe off the surface the liquid is on.

Wipe off your face.

Wipe the food off your face.

wiped off part.adj. After something has been wiped off, it is wiped off. That table doesn't look wiped off to me.

Wipe it off again.

EXERCISE 27a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Raquel \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of paper \_\_\_\_\_ and wrote her phone number on it.
2. After I washed the windows, I \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ with some old newspapers.
3. Jerry has to finish a lot of work before he goes home, so he probably won't \_\_\_\_\_ until late.
4. It rained last night, so don't play outside until the grass \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Be careful when you feed horses. They can \_\_\_\_\_ your finger right \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The doctor said the sedative would \_\_\_\_\_ after four or five hours.
7. The shop owner was afraid to \_\_\_\_\_ the gang graffiti \_\_\_\_\_ his wall.
8. After Jake \_\_\_\_\_ Hank, he was charged with murder.
9. During the storm, a tree branch \_\_\_\_\_ and fell on the roof.
10. You two kids have been arguing all day. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
11. I can't use this old typewriter anymore. The painted letters have \_\_\_\_\_ the keys.
12. The two sides couldn't agree on a solution, and the negotiations \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_ a few more pages of my book before I go to bed.
14. It was a long time before the shock of his brother's death \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Don't put your glass of wine so close to the edge of the table. Someone might \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 27b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place. Use right with questions 2 and 6.

1. Alex has bitten off. (the head of the gingerbread man, it)

---

---

---

2. The movers broke off. (the cup handle, it)

---

---

---

3. Please dry off. (the dishes, them)

---

---

---

4. Don't knock off. (the ash tray, it)

---

---

---

5. Can I tear off? (these mattress tags, them)

---

---

---

6. The janitor washed off. (the blood, it)

---

---

---

7. She didn't wipe off. (the milk, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 27c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Try to use right with some of the answers. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I used water to remove the mud from my car. What did I do to my car?
2. Timmy forcibly removed the propellers of my model airplane. What did Timmy do to my model airplane's propellers?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the model airplane's propellers?
4. You put your arm in the water, and the shark removed it with its teeth immediately. What did the shark do to your arm?
5. You could see that the ring wasn't solid gold because the brass under the gold was visible. What happened to the gold?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the gold?
7. I accidentally hit the lamp with my arm, and it fell to the floor. What did I do to the lamp?
8. You used a paper towel to remove the glass cleaner from the mirror. What did you do to the mirror?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the mirror after you removed the glass cleaner?
10. You have to remove the water from the table before you paint it. What do you have to do to the table before you paint it?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe the table after the water is removed?
12. You removed the gift wrapping paper from the gift. What did you do to the gift wrapping paper?
13. In Question 12, after using force to remove the gift wrapping paper, how would you describe the wrapping paper?

EXERCISE 27d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

clear up, 22	go up, 26	open up, 26	shut off, 26
come down, 24	heat up, 22	pay up, 22	start up, 26
eat up, 22	let in on, 26	plug up, 22	think ahead, 21
go over, 26	let up, 24	put together, 26	trade in, 24

1. If I don't come up with \$230 by Friday, they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ my electricity.
2. The guy from the collection agency demanded that Miguel \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
3. It rained for forty days and forty nights before it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you had \_\_\_\_\_, you would have everything you need now.



5. We had a lot of questions about our school project, but the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mark said his audition didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well, and he doesn't think he'll get the part.
7. Soldiers are trained to take their rifles apart and \_\_\_\_\_ them back \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I think \$15,000 is a little high for that car. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a little, I might be interested.
9. The police closed the illegal casino, but it \_\_\_\_\_ right back \_\_\_\_\_ a few days later.
10. No one at the party ate the carrot sticks, but they \_\_\_\_\_ the shrimp right \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I hate using the stove on really hot summer days; it \_\_\_\_\_ the whole house \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The minimum wage hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ in more than three years.
13. The senator \_\_\_\_\_ her aides \_\_\_\_\_ her plan to run for the presidency.
14. I doubt if I'll get much if I \_\_\_\_\_ this old car \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The engine \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ when I turned the key.
16. My daughter put one of her stuffed animals in the toilet and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.



English

AULAS PARTICULARES

**28. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 2**

When separable phrasal verbs are in the passive, they cannot be separated by the object of the verb because the object of the active verb is the subject of the passive sentence — there is no object:

active : Jim called back Mike. passive: Mike was called back.

subject

object

subject

active : Jim called Mike back.

subject object

**beef up**

1. beef... up p.v. When you beef up security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem, you make this arrangement stronger.

After the terrorist attack, security was beefed up at the embassy.

The hospital decided to beef up its emergency facilities.

The coach is planning to beef the defense up.

beefed-up part.adj. After security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem has been made stronger, it is beefed-up.

The ambassador is confident that the beefed-up security will prevent any further terrorist attacks.

**break up**

1. break... up p.v. When you break up a fight, you stop the fight.

Two students were fighting, and the teacher broke them up.

There was no way I could break up the fight between the two dogs.

2. break... up p.v. When a gathering of people separates, it breaks up. When the police tell people who are gathered together in a crowd to separate and leave the area, the police break the gathering up.

The meeting should break up around 3:00.

The police ordered the gang members to break it up.

The demonstration was broken up by riot police.

3. break ...up (with) p.v. When two people end a romantic relationship, they break up. When you end a romantic relationship with another person, you break up with that person. When other people cause a couple to break up, they break the couple up.

I was sad to hear that Jim and Nancy had broken up.

It was Jim's secretary who broke them up.

breakup n. When two people end a romantic relationship, a breakup occurs. Nancy is very upset about the breakup.

4. break... up p.v. When something breaks into smaller pieces, it breaks up. When you break something into smaller pieces, you break it up.

The meteor broke up when it entered Earth's atmosphere.

Sally broke the cookie up before giving it to her baby.

breakup n. When something breaks into smaller pieces, a breakup takes place. The breakup of AT&T created several smaller telephone companies.

5. break... up p.v. When something breaks up the day or some other period of time, it interrupts that time and makes it less boring.

The bank guard likes to chat with the tellers once in a while to break up the day.

My day was broken up by a going-away party for one of my coworkers.

**call back**

1. call ...back p.v. When you call someone back, you call a person on the telephone who has called you earlier.

Janice left a message asking me to call her back.

Bob was called back by the salesman.

2. call... back p.v. When you leave a place or walk away from a person and are then asked to return, you are called back.

I remembered something after she walked away, and I called her back.

Mike handed his letter of resignation to his boss, but he was called back after he left the office.

**call up**

1. call ...up p.v. When you call people up, you call them on the telephone.

Nicole called me up and asked me to come to her party. Every evening I'm called up by charities asking for money.

**carry out**

1. carry... out p.v. When you carry out a duty, task, assignment, or order, you do it.

Sean will carry out your duties while you're on vacation.

The boss was furious because his orders hadn't been carried out.

2. carry... out (of) p.v. When you carry something out of a place, you hold it in your hands and take it from that place.

It took four guys to carry the pool table out.

David was so drunk that we had to carry him out of the bar.

carryout n. Food that you take from a restaurant and eat in another place is carryout or carryout food. Takeout and takeout food are the same as carryout and carryout food.

We usually take carryout food when we go to visit Aunt Kathy.

**give away**

1. give... away p.v. When you give something away, you give it to someone without asking for anything in return because you do not want it or because you want to help the person you are giving it to.

This old furniture isn't worth very much, so I think I'll just give it away.

He made nearly a billion dollars, but after he retired he gave most of his money away.

2. give... away p.v. When you give a secret away, you accidentally reveal that secret.

I haven't seen that movie yet, so don't give away the ending.

You can trust me with the secret. I haven't given it away,

3. give... away p.v. When you give yourself away, you accidentally reveal something secret about yourself. When something gives you away, it accidentally reveals something secret about you.

Mark tried to keep his affair a secret, but he was given away by his credit card bills.

Toad claimed he didn't care about Sally anymore, but he gave himself away when he asked who she had gone to the party with.

giveaway n. A giveaway is a statement or action that reveals secret information.

I knew I was going to be fired from my job when everyone stopped talking to me — that was the giveaway.

**mess up**

1. mess... up p.v. [informal] When you mess up a place, you make it dirty or disorganized.

Jim made spaghetti sauce, and he really messed up the kitchen.

You kids can play in the living room, but don't mess it up.

messed up part.adj. After you mess up a place, it is messed up.

It looks like Timmy was the last one in the bathroom — it's really messed up.

2. mess... up p.v. [informal] When you mess up a situation, you create problems. When you mess up a plan or arrangement, you interfere with it and prevent it from happening as planned. Mess up is similar to screw up.

Everything was perfect until you messed it up.

Our honeymoon was messed up by the airline strike.

messed up part.adj. When you interfere with a plan or arrangement and prevent it from happening as planned, it is messed up. Messed up is similar to screwed up.

Bob changed my plan, and now it's totally messed up.

**stand up**

1. stand up p.v. When you stand up, you change from a sitting position to a standing position. Get up is similar to stand up.

Everyone stands up when the judge enters the courtroom.

When the students are sleepy, the teacher makes them stand up.

2. stand... up p.v. [informal] When you stand people up, you do not arrive at their house as you have promised or at a social event or meeting where you are expected.

Heather had a date with Jim last Saturday night, but she was stood up.

The senator was scheduled to speak at our meeting, but he stood us up.

EXERCISE 28a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a long airplane flight into two or three shorter flights, it isn't as boring.
2. My workroom was clean and neat, but my brother did some work and he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It's going to be a surprise party, so don't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The neighborhood council asked the police to \_\_\_\_\_ their patrols in high crime neighborhoods.
5. I haven't talked to Sam in a long time. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
6. The general expects his orders to be \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
7. In some countries, students always \_\_\_\_\_ when they speak in class.
8. The huge iceberg \_\_\_\_\_ when it drifted into warmer water.
9. Breaking my leg sure \_\_\_\_\_ my ski trip \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Janice didn't come to my house last night as she promised. She \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Timmy and his friend were fighting, and Timmy's mother \_\_\_\_\_ the fight \_\_\_\_\_.
12. These boxes are really heavy. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ of the house?
13. After the rally ended, the crowd quickly \_\_\_\_\_ and went home.
14. I'm too busy to talk on the phone now. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ later?
15. Bob claimed to have an excellent education, but he was \_\_\_\_\_ by his poor grammar.
16. Mark is very upset. His girlfriend just \_\_\_\_\_ with him.
17. Jim told the Girl Scouts that he didn't want to buy any cookies, but as they walked away he changed his mind and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Instead of charging for the software program, the company decided to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ free.

EXERCISE 28b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The White House beefed up. (security, it)

---

---

---

2. The police are breaking up. (the protest, it)

---

---

---

3. A trained technician ought to carry out. (the experiment, it)

---

---

---

4. The foundation gave away. (the money, it)

---

---

---

5. Susie always messes up. (the bathroom, it)

---

---

---

6. Todd stood up. (Heather, her)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 28c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. Dr. Wood will do the test of the new drug. What will happen to the test?
2. The statue was smashed by thieves. What happened to the gold statue?
3. The children made the house dirty and disorganized. What happened to the house?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe the house?
5. Mike's friend promised to come to his house, but he didn't. What happened to Mike?
6. Karen called Sarah, but Sarah was at school. Sarah didn't call Karen later. What didn't happen to Karen?
7. A supermarket chain gave the food to charity and didn't receive any money for it. What happened to the food?
8. The palace is making security stronger. What is happening to security at the palace?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the security now?
10. The personnel manager will call all the candidates for the job. What will happen to all the candidates for the job?

EXERCISE 28d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back up, 11	fix up, 15	rip up, 17	tear down, 8
blow away, 15	hand out, 10	stick up, 14	track down, 13
cut off, 11	hold up, 7	take in, 7	use up, 14
drop off, 11	lay off, 10	take out, 11	wake up, 11

1. The hard disk is \_\_\_\_\_ by the computer operator every day.
2. The old buildings are being \_\_\_\_\_ to make room for a new office building.
3. There isn't any paper in the copier. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Last night I was \_\_\_\_\_ by a loud noise.
5. I can't believe I was naive enough to be \_\_\_\_\_ by him.
6. The library book I wanted had already been \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Something amazing happened yesterday. You are going to be \_\_\_\_\_ when I tell you about it.
8. After the old house had been \_\_\_\_\_, it looked a lot better.
9. Many employees are really worried that they're going to be \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I was talking to my brother on the phone when I was suddenly \_\_\_\_\_.
11. My shirt was \_\_\_\_\_ when I fell off my bicycle.
12. The entire building is \_\_\_\_\_ by these four steel beams.
13. The pamphlets will be \_\_\_\_\_ in train stations and airports.
14. The liquor store was \_\_\_\_\_ again last night.
15. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ at the photo lab.
16. The escaped prisoner was easily \_\_\_\_\_ by the FBI agents.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

## 29. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and might, may, and can

Possibility: may and might

Both may and might are used to express a medium level of possibility. When may and might are used to express possibility in the present or future, their meaning is the same, but may has a slightly more formal sound. Might is slightly more common in everyday American English:

Nancy might drop in tonight. Nancy may drop in tonight.

The speaker believes that the possibility that Nancy will drop in and the possibility that she will not drop in are approximately equal.

Requests: may and might

Both may and might are used to make requests. May has a formal sound, and is less common than might. Can is the most common in American English:

most common: Can I drop in tonight? formal: May I drop in tonight? very rare: Might I drop in tonight?

Permission: may and can

May and can are also used to give permission. In this case, may is much more formal and is much less common than can. Might is not used for this purpose:

You can drop in after dinner. You may drop in after dinner.

### ask for

1. ask... for p.v. When you ask for something, you tell someone that you want it.

We asked the waiter for some more coffee.

My wife might ask for more vacation time instead of a raise.

2. ask for p.v. When you say that people are asking for something or asking for it, you mean that they are doing or saying something that is likely to result in punishment or a negative consequence.

I'm warning you — if you keep doing that, you're asking for trouble.

You're asking for it! Don't say that again.

### come apart

1. come apart p.v. When something comes apart, the parts separate because it is old or in bad condition or because the parts were not strongly connected to each other.

This toy airplane is such a piece of junk that it came apart in my hand.

Be careful with this old book. It's coming apart.

### drop in

1. drop in (on) p.v. When you drop in on people, you visit them unexpectedly.

If you're ever in my neighborhood drop in.

Sally dropped in on Marsha last night.

### flip out

1. flip out p.v. [informal] When you flip out, you become very upset or very angry.

Bob flipped out when the city doubled his property taxes.

Keep your hands off Jim's computer — he'll flip out if you screw it up.



**look out**

1. look out (for) p.v. When you look out or look out for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to look out, you are warning them of possible danger. Look out is the same as watch out.

Look out for bears when you camp in the mountains.

There's a lot of ice on the road, so look out.

lockout n. A lockout is someone who looks out for someone or something that is dangerous or important.

The burglars had lockouts on every corner to warn them if the police came.

**luck out**

1. luck out p.v. [informal] When you luck out, something good happens to you or you avoid something bad happening to you.

Todd lucked out when he found that lottery ticket on the ground; it was a \$ 1 million winner.

I missed my flight, and the plane crashed. I guess I lucked out.

**make out**

1. make ...out p.v. When you can make something out, you can see it or hear it even though it is difficult to do so. The audio system is so bad in the bus station that I can never make out what the speakers are saying. I think that might be a mountain goat up there near the top of the mountain. I can just barely make it out with these binoculars.

2. make... out p.v. [always used with "to be"] When you make people or things out to be a certain way or a certain thing, you describe or consider them to be this way or to be this thing.

Stop complaining — my food isn't as bad as you make it out to be.

The critics made the film out to be a real bore, but I liked it.

3. make... out (to) p.v. When you write the necessary information on the front of a check, you make the check out. When you write the name of a person, company, or other organization on the check, you make the check out to that person, company, or organization.

How should I make this check out?

There must be a mistake; this check is made out to my brother, not to me.

Nancy made a check out to the IPS for \$ 17,000.

made out part.adj. After the necessary information has been written on the front of a check, the check is made out.

Is the check made out, or is it blank?

4. make out (on) p.v. When you make out or make out on something, you do something successfully or survive a situation even though it may be difficult.

Karen had a job interview yesterday. I wonder how she made out.

Even though Jerry has lost his job, we'll make out somehow.

How did you make out on the test yesterday?

**run across**

1. run across p.v. When people or things run across a place, room, or building, they move from one side to the other very quickly.

The receiver ran across the field and caught the ball.

It's crazy to run across the street through the traffic instead of waiting for the light.

2. run across p.v. When you run across people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. Come across is similar to run across.

I don't go to that supermarket anymore because I may run across my ex-husband. Bob ran across one of his army buddies at the baseball game.

EXERCISE 29a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Can you tell me what this says? I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ without my glasses.
2. The store we're going to is on the right side of the street, so \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
3. You didn't fix this very well; it's already \_\_\_\_\_ again.
4. Okay, I'll give you the money. Who should I \_\_\_\_\_ the check \_\_\_\_\_ to?
5. I'm going to be in Dan's neighborhood tomorrow, so I might \_\_\_\_\_ on him for a quick visit.
6. Ann's going to \_\_\_\_\_ when she sees this cigarette burn on her antique table.
7. Sally thinks she \_\_\_\_\_ okay on her driving test.
8. I wasn't surprised when I \_\_\_\_\_ Sam at the beach; he goes there a lot.
9. That's enough! If you don't stop bothering me, you're \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. A police officer stopped me for going forty miles over the limit, and all he did was give me a warning. I really \_\_\_\_\_, didn't I?
11. Every night people call and \_\_\_\_\_ money for one charity or another.
12. Leticia was right about that restaurant. It was just as good as she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to be.

EXERCISE 29b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You got very upset when I wrecked your car. What did you do?
2. Timmy might tell Santa Claus that he wants a new bicycle. What might Timmy do?
3. I unexpectedly met my college roommate at the airport this morning. What did I do at the airport this morning?
4. Tom wrote all the necessary information on the check. What did Tom do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the check after Tom wrote all the necessary information on it?
6. Betty isn't expecting me, but I might go to her house this evening to visit her. What might I do to Betty?
7. The pieces of this chair are becoming separated. What is the chair doing?
8. You didn't have your homework ready, but the teacher didn't find out because she forgot to ask you for it. What did you do?
9. I can't read what that sign says because it's so far away. What can't I do?
10. Susie's father told her to be careful about cars when she rides her bicycle in the street. What did Susie's father tell her to do?

EXERCISE 29c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

crackdown, 23   handover, 19   start-up, 26   warm-up, 19  
 cutoff, 11   holdout, 23   stickup, 14  
 fixer-upper, 15   shutoff, 26   takeout, 11

1. The company is accepting applications for the position until the \_\_\_\_\_ date, March 6th.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ before exercise is a good idea.
3. We bought a \_\_\_\_\_, fixed a few things, added a bathroom, and sold it a year later for a nice profit.
4. Mom doesn't feel like cooking tonight, so we're getting \_\_\_\_\_ food.
5. Except for a few \_\_\_\_\_ hiding in the hills, all the rebels surrendered after the peace treaty.
6. The angry citizens demanded a \_\_\_\_\_ on crime in their neighborhood.
7. Most business \_\_\_\_\_ fail in less than three years.
8. If there's a problem with the machine, the \_\_\_\_\_ switch is right here.
9. The prime minister demanded the immediate \_\_\_\_\_ of the hostages.
10. The convenience store \_\_\_\_\_ was recorded on videotape.

EXERCISE 29e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break up, 28   do with, 25   go up, 26   settle for, 25  
 call back, 28   dry off, 27   knock off, 27   stand up, 28  
 call up, 28   give away, 28   lighten up, 25   think up, 25  
 carry out, 28   go over, 26   mess up, 28   zip up, 21

1. The teacher was too strict with her students, and the principal suggested that she \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tom was expecting Nancy to come to his house for dinner, but she \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Letting Timi-ny use my computer was a mistake. He \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, and now it doesn't work.
4. They're asking \$340,000 for their house, but they might \_\_\_\_\_ \$300,000.
5. I told the school principal that Hank might have something to \_\_\_\_\_ the fish in the swimming pool.
6. Andrew Carnegie was a very rich man, but he \_\_\_\_\_ most of his money \_\_\_\_\_ before he died.
7. I gave Erik my telephone number, and he said he might \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
8. Erik called while I was in the shower, so now I need to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
9. After the Soviet Union \_\_\_\_\_ in 1991, several new nations came into existence.
10. The coach is worried that the rain-soaked football field might not \_\_\_\_\_ in time for the game.
11. The company is planning to \_\_\_\_\_ a major reorganization.
12. Don't put the candle there; the cat might \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and start a fire.
13. The students didn't understand the lesson, so the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ it again.
14. It's really cold out there — you might want to \_\_\_\_\_ your coat \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The Wilsons aren't sure where they will spend their vacation. They may \_\_\_\_\_ to Alaska to visit their son.
16. Ned's a dreamer. He's always trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to make money without working.

### 30. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 2

As we saw in Section 14, the past participles of many phrasal verbs can be used as participle adjectives. The adverb *all* is sometimes used to emphasize participle adjectives with the meaning of *very* or *completely*. But the sentence must be logical — *all* is used only to emphasize a participle adjective that describes a condition that can be partial, less than complete, and so on. Look at this example with *very* and two ordinary adjectives:

makes sense: He's *very* sick. does not make sense: He's *very* dead.

The first sentence above makes sense because it is possible to be *very* sick, but the second does not make sense because it is not possible to be *very* dead.

makes sense: The man is *all* spaced-out. does not make sense: The man is *all* locked in.

The first sentence makes sense because it is possible to be slightly spaced-out, but it is not possible to be slightly locked in (a door is either locked or it isn't).

When *all* is used with the meaning of *very* or *completely* in a sentence with a plural subject, it is identical in appearance to *all*'s more common meaning of *all the people*, *all the things*, and so on.

The men are *all* spaced-out.

This sentence is ambiguous: it could be understood to mean that every man is spaced-out or that the men are completely spaced-out.

#### **lock in**

1. *lock... in* p.v. When you *lock* people in, you *lock* a door or gate so that they cannot leave a room, building, or other place.

Seven people died because they were *locked in* the burning building.

It's dangerous to *lock* children in a car.

*locked in* part.adj. When people cannot leave a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are *locked in*.

We're *locked in* — we'll have to break a window.

2. *lock... in* p.v. When you *lock in* an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, you make it definite so that it will not change in the future.

I met with the loan officer at the bank and *locked in* a mortgage rate.

If you want to use the condo at the beach this weekend, you need to pay a deposit to *lock* it in.

*locked in* part.adj. After you make an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, definite so that it will not change in the future, it is *locked in*.

The farmer isn't worried about what happens to the price of soybeans because the price of his crop is *locked in*.

#### **Lock out**

1. *lock... out* (of) p.v. When you *lock* people out or *lock* people out of a place, you *lock* a door or gate so that they cannot enter a room, building, or other place.

The Youngs got home and found that their son had *locked* them out of their house.

I hide an extra key under the bumper of my car so that I won't get *locked out*.

*locked out* part.adj. When people cannot enter a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are *locked out*.

We're *locked out*; we'll just have to wait outside until someone comes home.

2. *lock... out* p.v. When a business *locks out* workers, the workers are prohibited from working by the business management.

Management *locked* the workers out after they refused to sign the new contract.

When the owners heard talk of a strike, they *locked* the employees out.

locked out part.adj. After a business locks out workers in order to prohibit them from working, the workers are locked out.

We're locked out. How can we earn a living?

lockout n. When a business locks out workers in order to prohibit them from working, it is a lockout.

The lockout lasted for three months.

### **punch in**

1. punch... in p.v. When you come to your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have arrived, you punch in.

Don't forget to punch in as soon as you get to work.

Mark was late, so I punched him in.

punched in part.adj. When you are punched in, you are at your workplace, on duty, and being paid.

If you're punched in, you shouldn't be sitting down smoking a cigarette. punch out

punch out & punches out      punching out      punched out      punched out

1. punch ... out p.v. When you leave your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have left, you punch out.

Sally's not at work; she punched out at 5:08. Jim usually forgets, so his boss punches him out.

punched out part.adj. When you are punched out, you are not at your workplace, or if you are there, you are off duty and not being paid.

The manager asked why I wasn't working, and I told him I was punched out.

### **put out**

1. put... out p.v. When you extinguish a fire or something that is burning, you put it out.

Put that cigarette out immediately.

It was two hours before the fire was put out.

2. put ...out p.v. When you take something from inside a building or storage place and leave it outside for someone to take, use, or deal with, you put it out.

The garbage truck comes early tomorrow morning, so put the trash bags out tonight.

Judy put some clothes out for her daughter to wear the next day.

3. put... out p.v. When you put out your hand, arm, foot, or leg, you extend it front of your body.

Mike put out his leg and tripped me.

I put my hand out, but she refused to shake it.

4. put... out p.v. When you put yourself out, you try very hard to help someone.

Sofia really put herself out to make her new daughter-in-law feel welcome.

Don't put yourself out. I can make my own dinner.

5. put ...out p.v. When you put people out, you inconvenience them.

Erik really put Bill out when he asked him for a ride to the airport at 3:00 in the morning.

You've done so much to help me. I'm sorry to have put you out.

6. put out p.v. When you are put out by people, you are annoyed by something they have said or done.

I was really put out by having to take a taxi to work because Mike hadn't returned my car.

Dan was put out by Sam's ungrateful attitude.

put out part.adj. When you are annoyed by something that someone has said or done, you are put out.

Maria's put out; the manager thanked everyone who worked on the project except her.

7. put... out p.v. When a book, magazine, newspaper, or musical recording is published or issued, it is put out.

The publisher is planning to put a new magazine out that will appeal to teenage girls.

Frank Sinatra put out several classic recordings in the 1950s.

### sort out

1. sort... out p.v. When you sort a group of things out, you separate them into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics.

After you take the laundry out of the dryer, you have to sort it out.

The mail arrives at the post office all mixed together, and it has to be sorted out before it can be delivered.

sorted out part.adj. After you separate things into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics, they are sorted out.

The mail is sorted out and ready to be delivered.

2. sort... out p.v. When you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, you sort it out.

Janice was angry with me about what happened last night, but I called her and we sorted everything out.

Everyone is confused about the new plan. We ought to talk to Mrs. Taylor and sort everything out.

sorted out part.adj. After you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, it is sorted out.

Mike and Tom had a big fight, but everything is sorted out now.

### space out

1. space... out p.v. [informal—used mostly by young people] When you space out or when something spaces you out, something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment.

This place is really weird — it's spacing me out. Sorry, what did you say? I wasn't listening — I spaced out.

spaced-out part.adj. When something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment, you are spaced-out.

Half of what Jerry says doesn't make any sense; he's all spaced-out.

### wash up

1. wash up p.v. When you wash up, you wash your hands thoroughly.

Go and wash up — it's time for dinner.

The surgeon washed up before the operation.

2. wash up p.v. When something in a lake, a river, or the sea washes up, it is carried by the water to the land and left there.

The police were called when a dead body washed up on the beach.

Pieces of the sunken boat continued to wash up for weeks.

EXERCISE 30a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I had to break a window when I \_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_ of my car.

2. Judy was \_\_\_\_\_ by her brother's criticism of the way she's raising her children.

3. The guard \_\_\_\_\_ the prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ her jail cell.

4. The Bakers organized a nice party for their daughter's birthday. They really \_\_\_\_\_ themselves \_\_\_\_\_.

5. My brown socks are mixed with my black socks. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Joe was late to work, so the manager \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.

7. The forest fire was \_\_\_\_\_ by the rain.

8. The restaurant manager told the cook to \_\_\_\_\_ before handling food.

9. The factory workers finished their shifts and \_\_\_\_\_.



10. Thanks for helping me move my piano. I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
11. We got a fixed-rate mortgage so we could \_\_\_\_\_ a low rate,
12. The workers were \_\_\_\_\_ by management during a labor dispute.
13. I totally \_\_\_\_\_ and forgot about the cake in the oven,
14. Sally and her brothers had a big argument, but they got everything \_\_\_\_\_.
15. As I was falling, I \_\_\_\_\_ my arm \_\_\_\_\_ to protect my head.
16. Wreckage from the crashed airplane \_\_\_\_\_ on the coast.
17. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ bowls of peanuts \_\_\_\_\_ for his guests.
18. The band hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ a CD in three years.

EXERCISE 30b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. He locked in. (the crazy guy, him)

---

---

---

2. Jim locked out. (his wife, her)

---

---

---

3. Did you punch in? (Rosa, her)

---

---

---

4. Would you punch out? (Linda and Erik, them)

---

---

---

5. They couldn't put out. (the fire, it)

---

---

---

6. The bright lights spaced out. (Janice, her)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 30c — Complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this section.

1. Mark isn't working; he's taking a break. He must be \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You can't leave the building because you're \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The clothes were all mixed together, but now they're \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I forgot my key, and I can't get in my office. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We had a big misunderstanding, but it's all \_\_\_\_\_ now.
6. Joe went to the store, but when he got there, he couldn't remember what he wanted. He was \_\_\_\_\_.



7. Nancy invited her father-in-law for dinner, and after dinner he told Nancy that his other daughter-in-law was a better cook. Nancy was really \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The manager asked, "If you're \_\_\_\_\_, why aren't you working?"

EXERCISE 30d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. There was a fire in the wastebasket, so I got some water to extinguish it. What did I do?
2. I don't want the children in here while I'm working, so I'm going to push the button on the doorknob to lock the door. What am I going to do to the children?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the children after I lock the door?
4. David forgot what he was going to say. What did David do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe David when he forgot what he was going to say?
6. Sally told me to use soap and water to get my hands clean before I handle food. What did Sally tell me to do?
7. The newspaper is published only once a week. What is done to the newspaper only once a week?
8. Lydia put Jim's time card in the time clock when Jim was late for work. What did Lydia do for Jim?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Jim after Lydia put his time card in the time clock?
10. Your books are all mixed together and you ought to separate them into different groups. What should you do to your books?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe your books after you separate them into different groups?
12. I made the thief stay until the police came by putting him in the closet and using a key to prevent him from leaving the closet. What did I do to the thief?
13. In Question 12, how would you describe the thief after I used the key to prevent him from leaving the closet?
14. It really annoyed Erik when Jane told him that he needed to lose weight. How was Erik affected by Jane's remark?
15. In Question 14, how would you describe Erik after Jane told him he needed to lose weight?
16. The employees can't put their time cards in the time clock and go home before 4:30. What can't the employees do?
17. In Question 16, after the employees put their time cards in the time clock, how would you describe them?
18. Jane didn't try very hard to make her brother and his family comfortable when they stayed with her. What didn't Jane do?

EXERCISE 30e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- beefed up, 28   lit up, 13   shut off, 26   worn off, 27  
 broken off, 27   made out, 29   torn off, 27  
 closed off, 13   made-up, 23   washed off, 27  
 dried off, 27   messed up, 28   wiped off, 27

1. The children baked cookies this morning, and they left the kitchen all \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ security force can handle any terrorist attack.
3. Charles didn't pay his bill, and now his electricity is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I can't read the sign because the paint is all \_\_\_\_\_.
5. There aren't any tags on this mattress. They're all \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Those apples aren't \_\_\_\_\_, so don't eat them.
7. You can't drive down that street; it's \_\_\_\_\_.

8. This check isn't blank; it's \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The Christmas tree isn't \_\_\_\_\_ now, but when it is it'll be beautiful.
10. I put the coffee cup with the \_\_\_\_\_ handle downstairs. I'm going to fix it later.
11. The kitchen counter isn't \_\_\_\_\_, so don't put those papers on it — they might get grease on them.
12. That was quite a rain we just had. I don't think I'll drive to work until the roads have \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I didn't believe a word he said. It was just a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ nonsense.

EXERCISE 30f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |               |                |              |              |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| ask for, 29   | fill out, 14   | make out, 29 | wipe off, 27 |
| butt in, 14   | have on, 25    | open up, 26  | work out, 11 |
| carry out, 28 | head into, 17  | stand up, 28 |              |
| drop in, 29   | hurry up, 25   | trade in, 24 |              |
| drop out, 23  | knock over, 25 | wash off, 27 |              |

1. \_\_\_\_\_ of school was the dumbest thing I ever did.
2. The loan application was rejected because it hadn't been \_\_\_\_\_ properly.
3. I'm going to ask the car dealer how much I can \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_ for.
4. My feet are killing me. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ all day.
5. Did you see what Sally was wearing yesterday? She \_\_\_\_\_ a green dress and purple shoes \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ the bartender \_\_\_\_\_ a gin martini, but she made a vodka martini instead.
7. We'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ if we're going to get to the theater before the movie starts.
8. Don't leave that glass there — the baby might \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Dad's hardware store went out of business after a huge discount store \_\_\_\_\_ across the street.
10. You won't be able to \_\_\_\_\_ that paint \_\_\_\_\_ with water; you'll have to use turpentine.
11. It was raining, so I had to \_\_\_\_\_ the water \_\_\_\_\_ my glasses after I came inside.
12. Sergeant Jones has always \_\_\_\_\_ his orders without fail.
13. If you're ever in my neighborhood, \_\_\_\_\_; you're always welcome.
14. Things aren't \_\_\_\_\_ at my new job, and I think I'm going to quit soon.
15. Judy left her home in the suburbs and \_\_\_\_\_ the city.
16. When I met Jim I was surprised at how nice he was. Everyone always \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ to be a real jerk.
17. I would have been next, but then some jerk \_\_\_\_\_ line.

AULAS PARTICULARES

### 31. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and gerund subjects

As we saw in Section 16, gerunds — verbs in the -'ing form that function as nouns — can serve as the objects of many phrasal verbs. But gerunds can also serve as the subject of a sentence:

Eating meat everyday was something we did without.

gerund

Voting was immediately done away with by the dictatorship. gerund

#### care for

1. care for p.v. When you care for children or people who are old or sick, you provide them with the food or medicine they need or you do things to help them. When you care for machines or buildings, you keep them in good condition.

The nurses have to care for several very sick patients.

John has been caring for his eighty-three-year-old mother since her stroke.

2. care for p.v. When you care for people or things, you like them.

Jane doesn't care for coffee; she prefers tea.

I asked Sally to go to the dance, but she said that dancing is not something she cares for.

#### cut out

1. cut... out (of) p.v. When you cut something out or cut something out of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material, you use scissors or a knife to remove part of it.

The bank robber had a pillowcase over his head with two holes cut out.

I cut an interesting story out of the newspaper to show to my father.

cutout n. Something that has been cut out of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material is a cutout.

Timmy made some cardboard cutouts shaped like animals.

2. cut... out p.v. When you cut out part of a film, television program, book, magazine, and so on, you remove that part.

The movie was too long, so the director cut a couple of scenes out. Before the book was published, the parts that were critical of the king had to be cut out of Chapter 4.

3. cut... out p.v. When you cut out something that you consume, you stop using it. When you cut out doing something, you stop doing it. When you say "Cut it out" to people, you want them to stop doing or saying something.

Smoking is the first thing you've got to cut out if you want to improve your health.

If you want to lose weight, you'll have to cut cookies and ice cream out.

It bothers me when you do that, so cut it out!

4. cut out p.v. When a motor suddenly stops working, it cuts out.

I was driving when the motor suddenly cut out.

This plane has only one engine, so if it cuts out, we're in big trouble.

#### do away with

1. do away with p.v. When you do away with something, you eliminate it or prohibit it.

Doing away with smoking is not something that will happen soon.

Some people think the electoral college is obsolete and should be done away with.

2. do away with p.v. When you do away with people, you kill them.

Marvin inherited a fortune after he did away with his older brother.

The woman was accused of doing away with her husband with arsenic.

**do without**

1. do without p.v. When you do without something, you continue living or working without something that you want or need because it is not possible or available.

Washing your hair everyday is something you have to do without when you go camping.

Doing without is something you get used to when you're poor.

**look into**

1. look into p.v. When you look into something or look into doing something, you investigate it or get more information about it.

After receiving many complaints about the company, the attorney general decided to look into the matter.

Maybe leasing a car is something I should look into.

**plan on**

1. plan on p.v. When you plan on something, you expect it.

They wanted a large family, but having thirteen children sure wasn't what they planned on.

You should plan on at least two years to finish the master's degree program.

2. plan on p.v. When you plan on doing something, you intend to do it.

What are you planning on doing tonight?

I plan on fishing and taking a lot of pictures on my vacation.

**put off**

1. put... off p.v. When you put off something or put off doing something, you delay or postpone it. When you put people off, you delay doing something they want you to do.

Buying a new house will have to be put off until we can afford it.

The students begged the teacher to put the test off until the next week.

He pressured me for a decision, but I kept putting him off.

2. put... off p.v. When people put you off, they do or say something that offends you.

Everyone was put off by his racist jokes.

Todd went out to dinner with Nancy last night, and the way she treated the waiter really put him off.

put off part.adj. After people do or say something that offends you, you are put off. What's wrong? You seem a little put off.

**rule out**

1. rule... out p.v. When you rule out people or things, you eliminate them from a list. When you rule out doing something, you decide that it is something you will not do because you do not want to, because it is impossible, and so on.

The detective interviewed all the suspects and ruled everyone out except the victim's ex-wife.

After the hurricane they ruled out moving to Florida.

With all these medical bills to pay, maybe we should consider ruling out buying a new car.

EXERCISE 31 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I suggested moving to Minnesota, but my wife \_\_\_\_\_ moving anywhere cold.
2. My doctor says I should \_\_\_\_\_ scuba diving until my ear gets better.
3. The health department wants to \_\_\_\_\_ smoking within twenty years.
4. I saw a funny cartoon in the paper, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and sent it to my brother.
5. Some countries have an excellent health care system. No one has to \_\_\_\_\_ medical treatment.
6. I was a little \_\_\_\_\_ by his unfriendliness.
7. Let's go to a different restaurant; I don't \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food.
8. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ this situation to see what the problem is.
9. After the revolution, all members of the royal family were \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Several scenes of the film had to be \_\_\_\_\_ before the censors would approve it.
11. Jim had to quit his job to \_\_\_\_\_ his sick wife.
12. I had to take a taxi to work yesterday. My car's motor \_\_\_\_\_ right in the middle of an intersection.
13. What a surprise! Being transferred to Hawaii is something I never \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Getting that tooth fixed is not something you should \_\_\_\_\_.
15. What are you \_\_\_\_\_ doing with your time after you retire?

EXERCISE 31 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You changed your vacation plans. You're not going next week; you're going to go later. What did you do to your vacation?
2. Everyone likes Jim more now that he has stopped acting like such a big shot. What did Jim do?
3. The President said that nothing has been eliminated from the list of things that might be done about the crisis. What did the President say about what might be done about the crisis?
4. Mike's parents don't like his new friend. How do Mike's parents feel about his new friend?
5. A law was passed that prohibits child labor. What does the law do to child labor?
6. There aren't any stores out here in the woods, so if you forgot something, you'll just have to continue without it. What will you have to do if you forgot something?
7. I'm so tired of this car's ugly color; I'm going to investigate having it painted. What am I going to do?
8. If you go to Chicago in January, you can expect to freeze to death. What can you do if you go to Chicago in January?
9. Betty was a little offended by Sam's behavior. How did Betty react to Sam's behavior?
10. In Question 9, how did Sam's behavior make Betty feel?
11. The police suspected that Mr. Mayfield had been killed by a coworker. What did the police suspect about Mr. Mayfield?
12. Dr. Smith removed the entire tumor with a knife. What did he do?
13. My father kept his car in good condition, and it lasted for forty years. What did my father do to his car?

EXERCISE 31 c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerunds as the subjects of some of the sentences.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 31 d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

ask for, 29      cut down, 23      get away, 23      luck out, 29  
beef up, 28      drop in, 29      get back at, 17      make out, 29  
come apart, 29      flip out, 29      get off, 18      make up, 23  
crack down, 23      go about, 17      look out, 29      run across, 29

1. I'm thinking about investing in the stock market, but I'm not sure how to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. The sound on the language lab tapes is so bad that I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what they're saying.
3. The world is \_\_\_\_\_ of many different countries.
4. We'll need to buy a new suitcase soon. This old one is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. That was a terrible thing he did to me — I'll \_\_\_\_\_ him someday.
6. Hank fell from a fifth-floor window, but he landed in a swimming pool and wasn't hurt at all. He sure \_\_\_\_\_, didn't he?
7. The hockey coach said that the team's offense is good, but the defense needs to be \_\_\_\_\_.
8. My dentist said I should \_\_\_\_\_ on sweets.
9. Frank really \_\_\_\_\_ when he found that big snake under his bed.
10. Look at this interesting old book I \_\_\_\_\_ at a used bookstore.
11. The police department is going to \_\_\_\_\_ on crime.
12. You know what a bad temper Joe has. If you keep teasing him, you're \_\_\_\_\_ trouble.
13. The accountant tried to embezzle \$100,000, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
14. Isn't that where Jane lives? Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and say hello.
15. Jake was arrested and charged with bank robbery, but he \_\_\_\_\_ because none of the witnesses could identify him.
16. There are a lot of big trucks on this road. You've really got to \_\_\_\_\_ for them when you're driving.

### 32. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle out

The particle out is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. Among the most frequent meanings of out are to say that something or someone literally moves from the inside to the outside of a place:

He fell out of a tree.

Melanie came out of the house.

We always go out through the back door.

Would you take the garbage out, please?

that something is done completely or thoroughly:

I cleaned out the closet.

The people quickly cleared out.

She emptied her purse out on the table.

Please fill this form out.

that an action or activity has ended:

The fire went out.

The light bulb burned out.

Hank dropped out of school.

Jane chickened out of asking her boss for a raise.

that something or someone is chosen, organized, shared, or distributed:

The manager handed out our paychecks.

Tom picked a new shirt out.

The mailroom clerk sorted out the mail.

that something is produced by or released from a source:

His last book came out two years ago.

Don't let the dog out.

That group hasn't put out a new CD in a long time.

that something is removed, eliminated, or excluded:

A page was accidentally left out of the book when it was printed.

She cut a cartoon out of the paper.

The negative test result ruled out cancer.

His editor took several paragraphs out of the article.

that something is perceived, sensed, found, or acquired:

I figured out the answer.

Did you find out when the movie starts?

That sign is too far away to make out.

Mike screwed me out of a hundred bucks.

that something increases in size, capacity, length, or area:

Paul started to fill out after he got married.

After I gained twenty-five pounds I had to let my pants out.

It's dangerous to stick your head out a car window.

that something important or dangerous should be watched for:

Mike is supposed to meet us here, so watch out for him.

Look out, this is a very busy intersection.

or that something is done for a length of time:

The criminals held out for three hours before surrendering.

College is hard work, but you've got to stick it out.



**clean out**

1. clean ...out p.v. When you clean something out, you clean the inside completely so that no dirt, dust, trash, and so on, remains inside.

Mark was fired and told to clean his desk out and leave.

We clean out our garage every spring.

cleaned out part.adj. After you clean the inside of something completely so that no dirt, dust, or trash, and so on, remains inside, it is cleaned out.

Now that the garage is cleaned out, there's room for my car.

2. clean ... out (of) p.v. [informal] When people clean you out or clean you out of your money, they deceive you or pressure you into giving them all your money or spending all your money for their benefit. When an expense cleans you out, it requires you to spend all your money.

A con artist cleaned my grandmother out of \$50,000.

Having three kids in college at the same time really cleaned me out.

3. clean ... out (of) p.v. [informal] If thieves clean a place out or clean a place out of something, they take everything that is valuable.

I got home and found that my place had been cleaned out.

The thieves cleaned the jewelry store out of all its diamonds and emeralds.

**clear out**

1. clear... out p.v. When people clear out or clear out of a place or they are cleared out of a place, they leave it.

After the police threw tear gas, the crowd cleared right out.

Clear out! This is private property.

2. clear... out p.v. When you clear out a place, you remove things that are unwanted or in the way in order to make more room or to make the place cleaner.

Look how much more room we have in the attic now that we've cleared all that junk out. The car dealer had a sale so that he could clear out some space for the new cars.

**come out**

come out & comes out      coming out      came out      come out

1. come out (of) p.v. When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are not in, they come out of it.

Susie's friend came to the door and asked her to come out and play.

The police held their fire when they saw the gunman coming out of the house with his hands in the air.

2. come out (of) p.v. When something comes out of a certain place or area, it starts there.

This speaker must not be connected; no sound is coming out.

The most wonderful aroma came out of the kitchen.

3. come out (to) p.v. When people leave a city and come out to a place outside the city where you are, they travel to that place.

Would you like to come out and visit our farm?

Ned loves it in the city; he hasn't come out to the suburbs in a long time.

4. come out (of) p.v. When things or people go through an experience or treatment, the condition they are left in by that experience or treatment or the result of that experience or treatment is how they come out.

It was a tough game, but our team came out on top.

How did the investigation come out?

I came out of that awful experience a wiser person.

5. come out (with) p.v. When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, it comes out. When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, the company publishing it or the person who created it comes out with it.

The band's new CD came out last month, and it's already number one on the charts.

Barren's is coming out with a new book on TOEFL soon.

6. come out p.v. When information becomes known to the public, it comes out.

Everyone was shocked when it came out that the butler had murdered the duke.

What really happened when President Kennedy was assassinated may never come out.

7. come out (of) p.v. When dirt or a stain is removed by cleaning, it comes out or comes out of what it is in.

Don't get grape juice on that white blouse — it'll never come out.

That paint might come out of the carpet if you try turpentine.

8. come out p.v. When flowers or leaves start to grow, they come out.

We had a very warm winter, and the flowers started coming out in February.

Oak tree leaves always come out later than the leaves of other trees.

9. come out p.v. When clouds move and the sun becomes visible, it comes out.

The rain stopped, the sun came out, and there was a beautiful rainbow.

Wait till the sun comes out; you'll get a better picture.

10. come out (for/in favor of/against) p.v. When people with authority and influence come out for or come out in favor of people or things, they publicly announce support for them. When people with authority and influence come out against people or things, they publicly announce opposition to them.

We were surprised when the mayor came out for legalizing gambling.

The senator from North Carolina came out against the tobacco legislation.

### **empty out**

1. empty... out p.v. When you completely remove the contents of a space or container, you empty it out.

The police officer told me to empty out my pockets.

After we empty this room out, we can start painting.

emptied out part.adj. After the contents of a container have been completely removed, the container is emptied out.

Now that the room is emptied out, we can start laying the carpet.

1. empty out p.v. When all the people in a place leave it, the place empties out.

After the concert is over, it'll be twenty minutes before the auditorium empties out.

There was trash everywhere after the stadium emptied out.

### **fall out**

1. fall out (of) p.v. When you fall from or through something that is above ground level to the ground below, you fall out or fall out of it.

Did he fall out or was he pushed?

I found a baby bird that had fallen out of its nest.

2. fall out (with/over) p.v. When you fall out with people, you become upset or angry with them. When two people fall out over something, they become upset or angry with each other because of a disagreement about that thing.

Alfonso fell out with his sister when he criticized her husband.

Melanie and Sarah started a company, but they fell out over who would be president and who would be vice-president.

falling-out n. When people have a falling-out, they become upset or angry with each other and no longer have friendly relations.

The manager of the baseball team quit after he had a falling-out with the owner.

### go out

1. go out (of) p.v. When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are in, they go out or go out of it. Come in is the opposite of go out.

I'm trying to study — go out and play in the backyard.

Nancy was so sick that she didn't go out of the house for a week.

2. go out (to) p.v. When people leave a city where you are and go out to a place outside the city, they travel to that place.

Last weekend we went out to Jim's cabin on the lake.

This Thanksgiving I'm going to go out to my brother's house.

3. go out p.v. When something that is burning goes out, it stops burning because it has no more fuel or because something, such as water or lack of oxygen, has caused it to stop burning.

The campfire went out during the night.

The forest fire didn't go out until it started to rain.

4. go out p.v. When an electrical light goes out, it stops producing light because it is no longer receiving power.

The lights in the barracks go out every night at 10:00.

When the old tree fell on the power lines, every light in town went out.

5. go out (with) p.v. When two people with a romantic interest in each other go out, they go together to a place of entertainment in order to have fun and spend time together.

Mike's nervous — he's going out with Heather tonight.

Sally and Jim went out for three years before they got married.

### leave out

1. leave... out p.v. When you leave people or things out, you accidentally or deliberately do not include them in a group.

The director left out several parts of the book when she made the film.

Tell me the entire story from beginning to end. Don't leave anything out.

left out part.adj. When you feel left out, you feel ignored and unappreciated by others in a group.

No one talked to Jerry at the party. He just sat in the corner feeling left out.

stick out

stick out & sticks out

sticking out

stuck out

stuck out

1. stick out p.v. When something sticks out, it extends from what it is attached to.

Be careful walking in the woods, there are a lot of branches sticking out.

I cut myself on a nail that was sticking out of the wall.

2. stick... out p.v. When you stick something out, you extend it outward.

Timmy stuck his tongue out when his mother gave him spinach.

We all stuck our heads out the window to get a better look.

3. stick... out p.v. When you stick out an unpleasant or difficult experience, you continue with it until it is over, rather than quit.

I hate this job, but I need the money, so I'll just have to stick it out until I find a better one. College isn't easy, but if you stick it out, you'll be glad you did.

4. stick out p.v. When a characteristic or feature of something sticks out, that feature is very noticeable.

Alan's nearly seven feet tall and has red hair, so he really sticks out in a crowd.

One thing that really stuck out about him was the strange way he laughed.

EXERCISE 32a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Susie \_\_\_\_\_ of her tree house and broke her arm.
2. The sun finally \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon.
3. I heard some strange voices \_\_\_\_\_ of the next room.
4. A sharp piece of wood was \_\_\_\_\_, and I got a splinter from it.
5. When the truth finally \_\_\_\_\_, you'll all be very surprised.
6. It was a good thing we had those candles when the lights \_\_\_\_\_.
7. This temporary job will last only two weeks, so even though I'm bored, I guess I can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
8. That crook \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ of everything I owned.
9. David's story didn't make any sense because he \_\_\_\_\_ the part about the missionaries and the cannibals.
10. Mike, it's starting to rain. \_\_\_\_\_ and close the car windows, please.
11. Take these wastebaskets out to the Dumpster and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
12. It's a sure sign of spring when the tulips start to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. This wood is green. Even if you can get it to burn, it'll \_\_\_\_\_ right away.
14. The Bakers said they would love to \_\_\_\_\_ to visit us here at our ranch some weekend.
15. The soldiers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ the protesters \_\_\_\_\_ of the plaza.
16. Mike and Bob \_\_\_\_\_ over who would pay for the window they broke playing baseball.
17. The reporter said that he expected the governor to \_\_\_\_\_ against the proposed legislation.
18. Jim's going to be storing some of his stuff in the attic, so let's go up and \_\_\_\_\_ some space for it.
19. Scott \_\_\_\_\_ of the trial with his reputation badly damaged.
20. After the bomb threat was announced, the theater \_\_\_\_\_ in about two minutes.
21. Betty has been \_\_\_\_\_ with Erik since high school.
22. It's not very smart to \_\_\_\_\_ your arm \_\_\_\_\_ the window of a moving car.
23. I like it here in the city. When I \_\_\_\_\_ to David's house in the country I get bored.
24. The talk show host asked the author about his new book which is \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
25. The burglars \_\_\_\_\_ the coin shop \_\_\_\_\_ of its most valuable coins.
26. It's been an hour. Are you ever going to \_\_\_\_\_ of the bathroom?
27. Don't even bother washing this blouse — the ink will never \_\_\_\_\_.
28. Mike wants to sell his car, so he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and wash it before anyone looks at it.
29. I don't remember much about Ned, but one thing \_\_\_\_\_ — he always wore black.

EXERCISE 32b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. The crooked lawyer cleaned them out \_\_\_\_\_ a small fortune.
2. Jake came out \_\_\_\_\_ the bank and surrendered.
3. Would you like to come out \_\_\_\_\_ my place in the country?
4. Several publishers are coming out \_\_\_\_\_ books on the subject.
5. The prime minister liked the idea, so we weren't surprised when he came out \_\_\_\_\_ the plan.

6. As expected, the leader of the opposition came out \_\_\_\_\_ the plan.
7. Mike fell out \_\_\_\_\_ his brother \_\_\_\_\_ who would pay their father's medical bills.
8. Timmy's father told him not to go out \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
9. We're going out \_\_\_\_\_ the suburbs next weekend.
10. Heather's going out \_\_\_\_\_ Tom tonight.
11. Hank fell out \_\_\_\_\_ a hot air balloon.

EXERCISE 32c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. My son cleaned out. (the basement, it)

---

---

---

2. I need to clear out. (the storeroom, it)

---

---

---

3. Sarah emptied out. (the boxes, them)

---

---

---

4. The factory left out. (an important part, it)

---

---

---

5. Don't stick out. (your neck, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 32d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Some important information is being revealed to the public. What is happening to the information?
2. All the people in the plaza left. What did the people do?
3. All the people in the plaza left. What happened to the plaza?
4. I'm going to take my girlfriend to a nightclub. What am I going to do with her?
5. The soldier was killed in the battle. What didn't the soldier do?
6. We didn't ask Mark to join our club. What did we do to Mark?
7. In Question 6, how does Mark feel because we didn't ask him to join our club?
8. The IRS took all your money. What did they do to you?
9. The music company released a new CD last week. What did the music company do?
10. Everyone notices Harry because he has very long hair and a long beard. What does Harry do?
11. The Chicago Tribune announced in an editorial that they were for the Republican candidate. What did the Chicago Tribune do?

12. Bill's angry with Jim, and they're not speaking to each other. What did Bill do with Jim?

13. In Question 12, what did Bill and Jim have?

EXERCISE 32e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

care for, 31	hold out, 23	punch out, 30	sort out, 30
cut out, 31	lock in, 30	put off, 31	space out, 30
do away with, 31	look into, 31	put out, 30	wash up, 30
do without, 31	punch in, 30	rule out, 31	watch out, 23

1. Susie, I told you to stop hitting your sister, so \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!
2. After I lost my job, I learned to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things I used to think were necessities.
3. Watson made a real mess out of the project, so the boss asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I totally \_\_\_\_\_ and drove twenty miles past where I was going.
5. Hey, that's really dangerous, you'd better \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I'm going to get to work late tomorrow. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_?
7. I'm really sick of this city. I'm going to fly to San Francisco and \_\_\_\_\_ the job situation there.
8. Most of the players have signed their contracts, but a few are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Water won't \_\_\_\_\_ an electrical fire.
10. The manager reminded me to \_\_\_\_\_ before going home.
11. During Prohibition, the government tried to \_\_\_\_\_ drinking alcohol.
12. The chances that his horse will win the race are very small, but I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ completely.
13. Look how dirty your hands are! Go \_\_\_\_\_ before you eat dinner.
14. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ a low interest rate before rates go up again.
15. Thanks for inviting me to the concert, but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ rap music.
16. Millions of people \_\_\_\_\_ doing their taxes until the last minute.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

### 33. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and midsentence adverbs

As we saw in Section 17, adverbs are words that modify verbs. Some adverbs are called midsentence adverbs because they are commonly placed in the middle of a sentence. Midsentence adverbs are usually placed before main verbs:

He X goofs around. She X helped him out.

after any form of be:

He is X goofing around. She wasn't X helping him out.

and between an auxiliary (helping) verb and the main verb:

He will X goof around.

She can't X help him out.

In questions, a midsentence adverb is usually placed between the subject and the main verb:

Does he X goof around?

Is he X goofing around?

Has she X helped him out?

The following are common midsentence adverbs. Adverbs of frequency

ever	typically	normally	hardly ever
always	ordinarily	occasionally	almost never
constantly	often	sometimes	never
almost always	frequently	seldom	not ever
usually	generally	rarely	

Other midsentence adverbs

already	merely	ultimately	probably
just	finally	eventually	most likely

#### blow up

1. blow... up p.v. When something blows up or when someone blows something up, it explodes.

Seven people were killed when the building blew up.

The hijackers ultimately blew the plane up.

2. blow... up p.v. When something blows up or when someone blows something up, it becomes much larger because air or something else is being forced into it.

It always takes me an hour or more to blow up the balloons for a party.

Hank blew up a beach ball and threw it in the pool.

3. blow... up p.v. When you make a picture or photograph larger, you blow it up.

I blew the photograph up and framed it.

When you blow this photo of the car up, you can make out the license plate number.

blowup n. A blowup is a picture or photograph that has been made larger. I made a blowup of the photo and framed it.

4. blow up (at/over) p.v. [informal] When you blow up or blow up at someone, you suddenly become very angry.

When you blow up over something, you suddenly become very angry because of it.

Heather blew up when she saw her boyfriend dancing with Linda.

Heather blew up at her boyfriend when she saw him dancing with Linda.

Dad blew up over the increase in our property taxes.



**catch on**

1. catch on p.v. When a fashion or habit becomes popular and is adopted by many people, it catches on. When a product or service becomes popular and is used or bought by many people, it catches on.

Beta VCRs never caught on.

If his striped business suits catch on, the designer will become famous.

2. catch on p.v. When you eventually begin to understand something or begin to learn a skill after practicing and studying, you catch on.

When Sally studies something, she usually catches on right away.

Learning to dance the cumbia wasn't easy, but I eventually caught on.

3. catch on (to) p.v. When you catch on or catch on to people, you realize that they are trying to trick or cheat you.

If you keep lying to everyone, they'll eventually catch on.

It took me a while, but I finally caught on to him.

**come about**

1. come about p.v. When something comes about, it happens, usually as a result of a series of events and actions.

He was the richest man in town, and now he's bankrupt. How did that come about?

Several major medical advances have come about in the last fifty years.

**fall behind**

1. fall behind p.v. When you are in a group that is walking, running, driving, and so on, and they move ahead of you because you are moving more slowly than the others, you fall behind. Keep up is the opposite of fall behind.

Alfonso and Tom are walking so fast that I've fallen behind.

I was supposed to be following Linda to the party, but I fell behind and got lost.

2. fall behind (in) p.v. When you are in a group that is studying, working, and so on, and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you fall behind or fall behind in your work, studies, and so on. When you do not complete work as fast as it was originally planned and expected, you fall behind schedule. Get behind is similar to fall behind. Keep up is the opposite of fall behind.

Timmy was sick last semester, and he fell behind in his studies.

The sales manager wanted to know why I had fallen behind the rest of the department.

The building project will fall behind schedule if the construction workers go on strike.

3. fall behind (in) p.v. When you do not make the regular payments you are required to make, you fall behind or fall behind in your payments.

When I lost my job, I fell behind in my mortgage payments.

Don't fall behind in your payments, or your car will be repossessed.

**goof around**

goof around & goofs around      goofing around      goofed around      goofed around

1. goof around p.v. [informal] When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you goof around. Fool around is the same as goof around.

My brother drives his teachers crazy. He constantly goofs around and creates problems.

Stop goofing around and get to work.

**help out**

1. help... out (with) p.v. When you help out or help people out, you assist them in doing some work or you lend or give them money or something else that they need.

Can you help me out? I need a hundred bucks until payday.

We had a lot of work to do, so Maria helped out.

**know about**

know about & knows about      knowing about      knew about      known about

1. know about p.v. When you know about a situation, plan, or other information, you are aware of it.

Jim isn't here. Maybe he doesn't know about the schedule change.

Thanks for telling me, but I already know all about it.

2. know about p.v. When you have studied something and learned it, you know about it.

I don't know much about history. I was a business major.

Knowing about art and being an artist are two different things.

**pull off**

1. pull ...off p.v. When you pull something off, you succeed in doing something difficult and possibly sneaky or illegal even though the chances of success are not high.

Mike tried to juggle three butcher knives and two bowling balls at the same time, but he couldn't pull it off.

When Jake said he was going to try to rob a Las Vegas casino, no one believed he could pull it off.

2. pull off p.v. When you are driving and you pull off the road, you drive to the side of the road and stop.

If I get sleepy while I'm driving, I always pull off the road and take a nap.

When I heard that strange noise, I pulled off to the side and checked the engine.

EXERCISE 33a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I need to move some furniture, and it's too heavy for me. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?
2. Television was invented in the 1920s, but it didn't start to \_\_\_\_\_ until the 1950s.
3. Math is very difficult for Mike. If he takes the advanced class, he'll most likely \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I didn't think Todd could manage going to school and working at the same time, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When Jim shows his terrible report card to his mother, she'll \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Nancy's a hard worker. She never \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The terrorists tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the embassy.
8. A lot of changes have \_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years.
9. The truck driver was lost, so he \_\_\_\_\_ to the side of the road and checked his map.
10. Sam and Dave are so much faster on their bikes than I am that I always \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Don't ask Ann; she doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. I used to be able to trick my rich uncle into giving me money, but he's starting to \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the balloons now; the party's going to start soon.
14. Bob started taking dance lessons, and he \_\_\_\_\_ right away.
15. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in your credit card payments, you'll damage your credit rating.
16. I usually ask Bill what he thinks before I buy a stock. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot \_\_\_\_\_ investing.
17. I asked the photo lab to \_\_\_\_\_ the photo \_\_\_\_\_ 300 percent.

EXERCISE 33b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. Todd was fired after he blew up \_\_\_\_\_ his boss.
2. Todd is usually so easygoing. What did he blow up \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Karen thinks she's so clever, but I'm starting to catch on \_\_\_\_\_ her.
4. If you don't start working harder, you're going to fall behind \_\_\_\_\_ math.
5. Thanks for helping me out \_\_\_\_\_ my algebra homework.

EXERCISE 33c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The company started to sell chocolate toothpaste, but it never became popular. What didn't chocolate toothpaste do?
2. Sam has a lot of work to do before 5:00, so Lydia is doing some of it for him so that he won't have to work late. What is Lydia doing for Sam?
3. Nobody in the criminal gang thought they could steal an airplane, but they did. What did the gang do?
4. Ali doesn't usually do any work. He usually watches TV and listens to music. What does Ali usually do?
5. They sometimes destroy old buildings by making them explode. What do they sometimes do to old buildings?
6. The teacher frequently gets very angry at his students. What does the teacher frequently do?
7. Janice is aware of the problem because someone told her about it. What can you say about Janice and the problem?
8. The company was supposed to finish the project by September 1, but they didn't finish until November 14. What happened?
9. The professor asked you to explain how this situation happened. What did the professor ask you?

EXERCISE 33d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

come out, 32    fall out, 32    look into, 31    rule out, 31  
 cut out, 31    give away, 28    plan on, 31    sort out, 30  
 do without, 31    go around, 20    put off, 31    space out, 30  
 empty out, 32    go out, 32    put out, 30    stick out, 32

1. Jake was in jail when the crime was committed, so the police were able to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ as a suspect.
2. My fiancée's father got sick suddenly, so we had to \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding until later.
3. I was a little \_\_\_\_\_ when Melanie disagreed with me.
4. Linda's going to \_\_\_\_\_ getting her teeth bleached.
5. No one was surprised when the news \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The family business had to be sold after the family members \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ and forgot to put socks on this morning.
8. I felt like an idiot — I had to \_\_\_\_\_ all day without socks on.
9. You can still eat this apple — just \_\_\_\_\_ the bad part.
10. When we decided on the Bahamas for our honeymoon, we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ a hurricane.
11. I was angry with my sister, but we talked and \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cake, but the chocolate frosting on his face \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If you're studying a language, you can't \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary.

14. Jim's job is very dangerous, but if he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for another year, he can retire with a pension.
15. These trash cans are getting full. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_, please?
16. Put some more wood on the fire — it's starting to \_\_\_\_\_.



### 34. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-and three-word phrasal verbs, 2

As we saw in Sections 5 and 6, phrasal verbs are sometimes accented on the verb and sometimes accented on the particle. It might seem difficult to know whether to accent the verb or the particle since it depends on whether the phrasal verb is separable or nonseparable, transitive or intransitive, or a two- or three-word phrasal verb; however, it boils down to this: always accent the particle after the verb unless the phrasal verb is a nonseparable, transitive, two-word phrasal verb — then accent the verb. Remember that some verbs can be both transitive and intransitive:

Nonseparable, two-word, intransitive

stick **ROUND**

float **ROUND**

Nonseparable, two-word, transitive

STICK to STAND for

STICK around

FLOAT round

Nonseparable, three-word, transitive

lead UP to

Separable, two-word, transitive

take **BACK**

do **OVER**

Separable, three-word, transitive

put UP to

#### do over

1. do ... over p.v. When you do something over, you do it again in order to improve it or to correct mistakes.

This is all wrong — it'll have to be done over.

I got a bad grade on my paper, but the teacher said I could do it over.

#### float around

1. float around p.v. [usually continuous] When something is floating around a place, it is there somewhere, though you are not sure exactly where.

I don't know where the stapler is, but it's floating around here somewhere. The new schedule was floating around the office yesterday.

2. float around p.v. When a rumor or some information is floating around, it is being repeated and discussed among a group of people or within a place.

There's a rumor floating around that the factory's going to be closed. Something about a change of management has been floating around lately. Have you heard anything?

#### lead up to

1. lead up to p.v. When one or more actions, events, or situations lead up to a final action, event, or situation, they precede and cause or partially cause it.

Several minor battles led up to a full-scale war. The detective said, "Jake didn't shoot Hank for no reason — something led up to it."

2. lead up to p.v. When you lead up to something when you are speaking or writing, you gradually move toward an important point by saying or writing information that will support that point.

In his speech, the President didn't immediately announce that he would run for a second term; he led up to it by recalling the accomplishments of his first term.

I've been listening to you talk for thirty minutes. What's your point? What are you leading up to?

### **put up to**

1. put... up to p.v. When you persuade or pressure people to do something that is illegal, dangerous, foolish, or unwise, you put them up to it.

I didn't think it was a good idea to demand a raise, but my wife put me up to it.

When Jake was arrested for shooting Hank, he said Raquel had put him up to it by threatening to tell the police about his other crimes.

### **stand for**

1. stand for p.v. When abbreviations, acronyms, or symbols represent longer words or groups of words, they stand for them.

The "DC" in Washington, DC, stands for "District of Columbia."

"Scuba" stands for "self-contained underwater breathing apparatus."

2. stand for p.v. When people or objects support, represent, or are identified with ideas, values, or beliefs, they stand for them.

This flag stands for freedom. He was a great man who stood for equal rights and opportunity for all people.

3. stand for p.v. When you will not stand for something that you think is illegal, improper, or unjust, you will not tolerate it or allow it to happen.

Cruelty to animals is one thing I will never stand for.

I told my son I wouldn't stand for that kind of language in this house.

### **stick around**

1. stick around p.v. [informal] When you stick around, you stay where you are.

Can you stick around? We're going to have lunch in an hour.

Don't go yet — stick around until Sarah gets here; she'd love to see you.

### **stick to**

1. stick to p.v. When one thing sticks to another, it remains attached to it.

The magnet sticks to the chalkboard because there's metal underneath.

I used the wrong glue, and the tiles didn't stick to the floor.

2. stick to p.v. When you are speaking or writing and you stick to a certain subject, you talk or write about that subject only.

The teacher said, "Do this paper over and stick to the point — don't talk about 100 other things that aren't important."

In his news conference, the President stuck to the new tax legislation, but the reporters kept asking about the latest scandal.

3. stick to p.v. When you stick to a certain belief, claim, policy, habit, plan, type of work, and so on, you continue as before, without change. Stick with is similar to stick to.

Jake claimed he was innocent of Hank's murder. He stuck to his alibi that he had been at the racetrack when the murder occurred.

After the audition, the director told me I was a terrible actor and that I should stick to singing.

4. stick... to p.v. [informal] When you stick it to people, you deliberately try to tease, annoy, or embarrass them with an accusation, provocative statement, or difficult question.

Sam thinks the new manager is an idiot, and he likes to stick it to him.

One woman at the shareholders' meeting really stuck it to the president of the company. She asked why he deserved a \$19 million bonus even though the company had lost money that year and 4,000 workers had been laid off.

### take back

1. take... back (to) p.v. When you take something back or take something back to a place, you take it to where it was before.

If you're finished working on the car, don't leave your tools here; take them back to the garage.

Do you usually take the shopping carts back after you've put your groceries in your car?

2. take... back (to) p.v. When you take something that you have bought to the place where you bought it and ask to have it repaired, to exchange it for something else, or for the money you paid for it, you take it back or take it back to the place where you bought it.

I have to take back these pants that I bought yesterday because the zipper's already broken.

That new TV that Nancy bought was a piece of junk; she took it back to the store and demanded her money back.

3. take... back (from) p.v. When you take something back or take something back from someone else, you accept it from the person you gave, sold, or lent it to.

The guy at the store said he wouldn't take my answering machine back because I had bought it on sale.

The lady I bought this Persian rug from said she would be happy to take it back from me if I changed my mind.

4. take ... back (to) p.v. When you take back something that you have borrowed or take back something that you have borrowed to the person or place that you borrowed it from, you return it.

Lydia borrowed this book from the library six months ago, and she still hasn't taken it back.

I need to take Jim's lawn mower back to him.

5. take... back (to) p.v. When you take people back or take people back to a place where they were before, you go with them to that place.

Our son was home from college for the summer, and we're taking him back tomorrow.

Mike got sick again, so we took him back to the hospital.

6. take ... back p.v. When you take back something that you have said, you admit that what you said was untrue, unfair, or rude.

That's not true! You take that back right now!

I'm sorry, that was very rude of me. I take it back.

7. take ... back (to) p.v. When something reminds you of a place where you were in the past or of something you experienced in the past, it takes you back or takes you back to a time in the past.

Looking through my high school year book sure takes me back.

My grandfather found his old uniform in the attic, and he said it took him back to when he was stationed in England during the war.

EXERCISE 34a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. After being embarrassed last night, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ a policy of minding my own business.

2. Have you seen the manual for this program? It's \_\_\_\_\_ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.

3. It's too bad you can't \_\_\_\_\_. I was just about to barbecue some chicken.

4. Look at these old pictures. They sure \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

5. In my history class we studied the events that \_\_\_\_\_ World War II.

6. Rosa tried to return her engagement ring to her fiancé, but he wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

7. The lawyer told his client to \_\_\_\_\_ the facts when she testifies.



8. The escaped prisoner was \_\_\_\_\_ to prison.
9. It's not like Erik to do such a terrible thing. I think someone \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. I hate it when it's so humid that your clothes \_\_\_\_\_ your skin.
11. "UAE" \_\_\_\_\_ for United Arab Emirates.
12. I felt terrible about what I said, and I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
13. One of the guys at work is a real baseball nut from Chicago, so we love to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him about how bad the Cubs are.
14. I don't have Linda's electric drill anymore; I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
15. When people see our company's logo, they know it \_\_\_\_\_ quality at a fair price.
16. The tailor didn't do what I wanted him to do with this dress. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
17. The restaurant manager told the bartender that she would not \_\_\_\_\_ drinking on the job.
18. Mark did such a bad job painting his house that he had to get a professional house painter to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
19. As soon as the company president mentioned the decrease in sales and the need to reduce labor costs, we knew what he was \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Don't leave these dirty dishes here; \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen.
21. Don't pay any attention to that rumor— it's been \_\_\_\_\_ for three years.

EXERCISE 34b — Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two- and three-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 34a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.

EXERCISE 34c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Janice said I was a cheapskate, but she later admitted that it wasn't true. What did Janice do?
2. A number of situations and events helped to cause the Civil War. What did those situations and events do?
3. You've rewritten this story four times, and you're still not happy with it. What have you done to the story four times?
4. When I opened the box of cereal, it was full of bugs, so I returned it to the store. What did I do to the box of cereal?
5. Bill has a system for picking good stocks, and he always uses it. What does Bill do with his system?
6. Mr. Tucker's fifteen-year-old daughter wants to get a tattoo, but he absolutely will not allow it. What won't Mr. Tucker do?
7. Visiting his old high school brought back a lot of memories. What did visiting his old high school do to him? 262
8. Carlos came to my house and stayed for a while. What did Carlos do after he came to my house?
9. People in my office have been reading the latest issue of Time magazine and then giving it to someone else. What has the magazine been doing?
10. She asked me what "Ph.D." represents. What did she ask me?
11. I felt ridiculous dressing as a pink dinosaur for my nephew's birthday party, but my brother persuaded me to do it. What did my brother do?

EXERCISE 34d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bite off, 27	fall behind, 33	plan ahead, 25	shake up, 24
catch on, 33	get together, 26	print out, 24	stay out, 23
come about, 33	goof around, 33	pull off, 33	stop over, 24
come out, 32	let in on, 26	put together, 26	wear off, 27

1. I asked Sam how his job interview \_\_\_\_\_, and he said it went great.
2. I asked my history teacher what led up to the American Revolution, and he said the war \_\_\_\_\_ as a result of several factors.
3. After the tranquilizer \_\_\_\_\_, the elephant will wake up.
4. The new owners of the company said they planned to \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When you're an adult, you can't just think about today; you have to \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Tonight I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ with some friends and watch the game.
7. Mark has a rich father, so Mark doesn't work; he just \_\_\_\_\_ most of time.
8. The finance minister \_\_\_\_\_ a plan to revive the nation's economy.
9. That's a pretty big project. Are you sure you haven't \_\_\_\_\_ more than you can chew?
10. The new system at the warehouse was a disaster, and we \_\_\_\_\_ in filling orders.
11. I didn't sleep at all last night — I \_\_\_\_\_ dancing until dawn, and I'm really beat.
12. People have been talking about picture phones for years, but they've never \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The boss \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ the new strategy.
14. If you're not busy, would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ for a while? We could watch TV or play cards.
15. The crooks tried to steal a 747 by pretending to be pilots, but they couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I finished my letter, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ because I'm out of toner.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

### 35. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs

In Section 10 we looked at gerunds as the objects of phrasal verbs. Now we will look at phrasal verbs as gerunds themselves. Like ordinary verbs, gerund phrasal verbs can be the subject of a sentence:

Narrowing down the list will be difficult.

subject

the object of a sentence:

We discussed narrowing down the list.

object

or the object of a preposition:

We talked about narrowing down the list.

object of preposition

How and when phrasal verbs can be separated is unaffected by their use as gerunds:

Narrowing it down will be difficult.

We discussed narrowing it down.

We talked about narrowing it down.

#### fool around

1. fool around p.v. When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you fool around. Goof around is the same as fool around.

My son is lazy. He spends his time fooling around instead of looking for a job. My boss said, "I'm not paying you to fool around — get to work!"

2. fool around (with) p.v. When you fool around with something, you do something that may be dangerous or foolish.

Fooling around with drugs is pretty stupid.

You shouldn't fool around with the insides of your computer unless you know what you're doing.

3. foot around (with) p.v. [informal] When two people fool around or fool around with each other, they have sexual relations, even though one or both of them may be married to someone else or even though their families or society may not approve.

Sally's father caught her and Jim fooling around in the basement.

Her husband's been fooling around with his secretary, and everyone in town knows it.

#### go by

1. go by p.v. When people go by a place or thing, they pass near that place or thing. When a thing goes by or goes by you, it passes near you.

We watched the parade go by.

I went by Jim's house to see if his car was in the driveway.

2. go by p.v. When you go by a place, you go there so that you can do something or get something.

Let's go by Paul's house to get his tools before we work on your car.

You can forget about going by the dry cleaner to pick up your stuff— it's closed.

3. go by p.v. When a period of time goes by, it passes.

I can't believe that thirty years have gone by since I got out of high school.

As time went by, Betty moved up in the company until she was the head of the finance department.

4. go by p.v. When you go by a policy or standard, you use it as a reference or a guide in making decisions and determining your behavior. When you go by the book, you follow rules, policies, or laws exactly.

Going by the book has always been my policy.

Jim told me to do one thing, and Tom told me to do another, but since Tom is the boss, I'm going to go by what he says.

5. go by p.v. When you go by a clock, you use it to tell the time.

Don't go by the clock on the wall; it's fast. Go by the clock on the desk.

No wonder I'm always late for work — the clock I've been going by is ten minutes slow.

### **hold against**

1. hold ...against p.v. When you hold things against people, you continue to blame them for something and continue to be upset about it.

Ten years ago I got a promotion that Ned thought he deserved, and he's held it against me ever since.

Jane lost her job because of a mistake Bob made, but she doesn't hold it against him.

leave behind

leave behind & leaves behind      leaving behind      left behind      left behind

1. leave... behind p.v. When you leave someone or something behind, you go to a different place.

The explorers left the mountains behind and entered the jungle.

The enemy soldiers retreated and left behind a city in ruins.

2. leave... behind p.v. When you leave something or someone behind, you do not take them with you because you forgot or because you cannot or do not want to take them.

We packed too much luggage for our trip, so we had to leave some things behind.

Leaving our children behind at a gas station was pretty dumb.

3. leave ... behind p.v. When you move, learn, or work faster than others in your group, you leave them behind.

My husband walks so fast that he always leaves me behind.

If you don't start working harder, you're going to be left behind.

Mark was so good at calculus that he soon left the rest of the class behind.

### **live with**

1. live with p.v. When you live with someone, you live at the same address. When you say that one person lives with a person of the opposite sex, you mean that they live in the same place but are not married.

Living with my in-laws is driving me crazy.

Mike's been living with his girlfriend for five years. Are they ever going to get married?

2. live with p.v. When you live with a disease or other problem, you endure or put up with it.

Living with this disease is not easy.

I can't change the situation, so I'll just have to learn to live with it.

3. live with p.v. When you live with shame, guilt, or a painful memory, you continue with your life in spite of the shame, guilt, or painful memory.

Jake committed suicide rather than live with the shame of what he had done.

He said he couldn't go on living with the knowledge that he had caused the death of 14 innocent people.

### **make of**

1. make of p.v. What you make of something is your understanding or opinion of it.

So what did you make of the prime minister's speech?

What he said was so strange that I didn't know what to make of it.

### narrow down

1. narrow... down p.v. When you narrow down things or people in a list or group, you remove some of them so that the number of things or people is reduced.

All the candidates for the job have excellent qualifications. Narrowing the list down won't be easy.

The detective narrowed the suspects down to the butler, the cook, and the maid.

### trick into

1. trick... into p.v. When you trick people into doing something, you persuade them to do something by fooling or deceiving them. Con into is similar to trick into.

The con artist tricked them into giving him their life savings.

I was an idiot to let Hank trick me into selling him my car for so little money.

EXERCISE 35a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The man who was killed in the accident \_\_\_\_\_ a wife and three children \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The prosecutor \_\_\_\_\_ Jake \_\_\_\_\_ admitting his guilt.
3. I took a job in Japan, and six years \_\_\_\_\_ before I returned to the United States.
4. Paul's been \_\_\_\_\_ his parents since his house burned down.
5. There were fifty contestants at the beginning of the contest, but the judges \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to five finalists.
6. Look at this strange letter I received. Read it and tell me what you \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. I was my parents' favorite, and my brother still \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ me.
8. Frank's wife filed for divorce after she learned that he was \_\_\_\_\_ with her best friend.
9. The train always blows its whistle when it \_\_\_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ diabetes means carefully monitoring your blood sugar.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ your friends and family \_\_\_\_\_ when you emigrate to a new country is very difficult.
12. Todd failed the test because he \_\_\_\_\_ all evening instead of studying.
13. Sergeant Jones was very strict when he was in the Army. He always \_\_\_\_\_ the book.
14. Don't let your kids \_\_\_\_\_ with cigarette lighters; they might start a fire.
15. How can you \_\_\_\_\_ yourself after the terrible thing you did?
16. Melanie has my biology book, so on the way to school I need to \_\_\_\_\_ her house to get it.
17. Mike wasn't ready for the advanced algebra class, and he was quickly \_\_\_\_\_ by the rest of the class.
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ my wristwatch — not the wall clock — because it's more accurate.

EXERCISE 35b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Her disease is incurable, so unfortunately she'll just have to learn to endure it. What will she have to do?
2. Jim and I worked on a project together, but Jim told everyone that he did all the work, and I'm still angry about it. How do I feel about what Jim did?
3. Sally and her sister's husband go to a motel sometimes during their lunch hour. What are they doing?
4. My father has a lot of horrible memories from the war. What does he have to do with them?
5. Bill made a list of cities that he might move to, and then he eliminated those that are too cold or have high crime rates. What did Bill do to his list of cities?
6. When the boss isn't in the office, you just play computer games and make personal phone calls. What do you do when the boss isn't in the office?

7. Hank told his sister that he needed money for his wife's doctor bills, but he really wanted money to buy drugs. What did Hank do to his sister?
8. The scientist asked her colleague his opinion of the test results. What did the scientist ask her colleague about the test results?
9. A police car passed me while I was driving. What did the police car do?
10. Susie's parents are going to take a vacation without her. What are Susie's parents going to do to her?
11. The last year passed quickly. What did the last year do?

EXERCISE 35c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make all the phrasal verbs gerunds and to use them as subjects, objects, or objects of prepositions.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 35d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                |                  |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| break up, 28   | flip out, 29     | lie around, 20 | stand for, 34    |
| come apart, 29 | float around, 34 | luck out, 29   | stay up, 20      |
| do over, 34    | hang around, 20  | mess up, 28    | stick around, 34 |
| end up, 20     | lead up to, 34   | run across, 29 | take back, 34    |

1. The robber was only three feet away when he fired the gun at me, but the gun jammed and didn't fire. I really \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Nancy said being sick wasn't so bad. She \_\_\_\_\_ in bed all day watching TV and eating ice cream.
3. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ if you drop my new camera in the swimming pool.
4. Dan's daughter was very sick last night, so Dan \_\_\_\_\_ all night with her.
5. This is outrageous! I will not \_\_\_\_\_ dishonesty in my company.
6. I told Mark that I would never speak to him again if he didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the nasty things he said.
7. If you're looking for Hank, go to the bar on the corner. That's where he \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A number of minor events will \_\_\_\_\_ the main event.
9. I had a very busy day planned, but I got a flat tire and that \_\_\_\_\_ everything.
10. My boss is a jerk! I worked for three days on this, and just because he found one mistake he made me \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Sam has been very depressed since he \_\_\_\_\_ with his girlfriend.
12. Have you seen the dictionary? It's \_\_\_\_\_ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.
13. Don't stand on that chair — it's \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Do you really have to leave now? Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ for a while.
15. Bill was talking about moving to Florida or Hawaii, but I'm not sure where he finally \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Someone told me that Sarah is in town, but I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ her yet.

### 36. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle down

The particle down is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. Down can be used to say that something literally moves from a higher position to a lower position or from north to south:

Bob went down the ladder.

His friends came down from Canada.

Sit down; dinner is ready.

that something decreases in size, intensity, quantity, or quality:

Her fever has gone down to 100 degrees.

The doctor gave her a sedative to calm her down.

We've narrowed the list down to three choices.

that something or someone is fought, defeated, or overpowered:

Hank backed down when he saw my shotgun.

The police cracked down on street crime.

that something falls to the ground:

The boy was running and fell down.

The warehouse burned down.

Open the door or I'll break it down!

or that a process or activity is ending or has ended:

My car broke down on the highway.

The FBI tracked down the spy.

The campaign is winding down.

#### back down

1. backdown p.v. When one side in a disagreement stops making threats and lets the other have what it wants or do what it wants, the side that stops making threats backs down.

The dictator didn't back down after the United Nations Security Council voted in favor of sending in troops.

The police officer tried to force me to pay him a bribe, but when I said I would report him to the chief of police, he backed down.

#### calm down

1. calm ... down p.v. When you calm down, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you calm other people down, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. Settle down is similar to calm down.

I was very nervous about the test, but I calmed down when I saw how easy it was.

Mike tried to calm his sister down after she had a fight with her husband.

2. calm ... down p.v. When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it calms down. When you calm a confused or violent situation down, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. Settle down is similar to calm down.

The neighborhood where the riot occurred calmed down after the army started patrolling the streets.

A conference between the two sides was organized to try to calm the situation down.

#### fall down

1. fall down p.v. When people or things fall to the ground from a higher position, they fall down.

I slipped on some ice on the sidewalk and fell down.

All the dishes on that shelf will fall down if there's another earthquake.



**go down**

1. go down (to) p.v. When you move to a lower level or position or from north to south, you go down or go down to that place. Go up is the opposite of go down.

Toronto is too cold, so we usually go down to Mexico in the winter.

Going down the mountain was a lot easier than going up.

2. go down (to) p.v. When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something decreases, it goes down. Go up is the opposite of go down.

The temperature went down to zero last night.

The crime rate in New York City has gone down.

3. go down (to) p.v. When something extends to a certain point that is farther south or at a lower elevation, it goes down to that point. Go up is the opposite of go down.

How far south does this road go down?

Does this road go down to the south side of town?

After dinner we went down to the basement and played ping pong.

4. go down p.v. When something goes down in a certain way, people react to or perceive it in this way.

The new no smoking policy didn't go down very well with the smokers in the office.

The judge's decision went down well with the prosecutor.

5. go down p.v. When a computer or computer network stops working because of a problem or because it has been disconnected, it goes down.

I couldn't withdraw any money at the bank because its computers had gone down.

If your computer terminal goes down, you can use the one in the next office.

6. go down p.v. When the sun goes below the horizon, it goes down.

After the sun goes down, it'll get a little cooler.

The sun went down at 8:34 last night.

**lay down**

1. lay... down (on) p.v. When you lay something down, you put it on a horizontal surface. Put down is similar to lay down.

Marsha laid the tray down.

The police ordered Jake to lay down his gun and surrender.

2. lay down p.v. When you lay down a new law, policy, rule, and so on, you create and announce it.

The IRS laid down several new tax regulations.

Congress decided against laying down any new campaign financing laws.

**put down**

1. put ...down p.v. When you put something down, you put something in your hand or something that you are carrying on a horizontal surface.

The suitcase was so heavy that I had to put it down and rest for a minute.

Susie, put that knife down. It's dangerous!

2. put... down p.v. When you put people down, you criticize them.

Jim hates his stepfather and puts him down constantly. I'm not inviting Sam to any more parties. I hate the way he puts everyone down.

put-down n, A put-down is an insult or critical remark.

At the party Sam asked Nancy if she had made her dress from an old curtain.

What a put-down!

3. put... down (on) p.v. When you put money down or put money down on something, you pay a portion of the cost of something you want to buy to be sure that it will still be available to you when you are able to pay the rest of the cost.

The real estate agent asked me how much money I want to put down on the house.

I told her that I could put as much as \$ 15,000 down.

4. put... down (on)for p.v. When you add something to a list or other written material, you put it down or put it down on the list. When you add people to a list in order to assign something to them, you put them down or put them down for that assignment.

Melanie's collecting money for charity, so I told her to put me down for \$50.

I'm making a list of volunteers to help reelect Senator Dolittle. Can I put your name down on the list?

5. put... down (on) p.v. When an airplane puts down or a pilot puts an airplane down, the airplane lands.

After the engine quit, the pilot looked for a place to put down.

Fortunately, the pilot was able to put the plane down on a frozen lake.

### run down

1. run down (to) p.v. When you move quickly to a lower level or place, you run down or run down to that place.

Mike was running down the stairs when he fell and broke his leg.

I saw someone trying to steal my car, and I ran down to the street to try to stop him.

2. run ... down p.v. When vehicles or people driving vehicles hit and injure or kill someone, they run that person down.

The man was run down and killed by a speeding taxi.

Ali was arrested after he ran three people down.

3. run down p.v. When you discuss or review items on a list from the first to the last, you run down the list.

Let's run down the Christmas list and decide what to give everyone.

The teacher ran down the list of students and marked the ones who are failing.

rundown n. A rundown is a discussion or review of items on a list.

The consultant gave the manager a rundown of the problems she had found.

4. run down p.v. When batteries or machines run down or are run down by someone, they gradually lose power or energy.

Don't leave the car lights on for too long when the car isn't running or the battery will run down.

What time is it? My watch ran down last night.

rundown part.adj. A person or thing that is rundown is exhausted, without power or energy.

Maybe I need to go to the doctor; I feel so rundown all the time.

rundown part.adj. A rundown building or neighborhood is in poor condition because it has not been maintained.

I went back to my old neighborhood, and I was shocked to see how rundown it had become.

### sit down

1. sit down p.v. When you sit down, you change from a standing position to a sitting position.

The teacher told his students to sit down and open their books.

I'm exhausted; I haven't sat down all day.

2. sit... down p.v. When you sit people down, you order them to sit, usually so that you can have a serious discussion.

When I found marijuana in my daughter's purse, I sat her down and had a serious talk with her.

The detective sat Hank down and began to interrogate him.

EXERCISE 36a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Heather thinks she's so high-class. She \_\_\_\_\_ other people all the time.
2. The situation \_\_\_\_\_ after the cease-fire was declared.
3. The sun comes up around 6:00, and it \_\_\_\_\_ around 8:00.
4. Here's the list of candidates for the promotion. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the list and decide.
5. The old water tower \_\_\_\_\_ during the storm.
6. You must be exhausted. Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ and take it easy?
7. I saw a tow truck looking for illegally parked cars, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to my car and moved it.
8. My office is on the ninetieth floor, so sometimes it takes me fifteen minutes to \_\_\_\_\_ to the lobby.
9. It's hard to write sympathy notes. I never know what to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The company tried to reduce benefits, but they \_\_\_\_\_ when the union threatened to go on strike.
11. The Appalachian Trail starts in Maine and \_\_\_\_\_ all the way \_\_\_\_\_ to Georgia.
12. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the baby \_\_\_\_\_ there — she might fall.
13. I was furious about what Dan said, and I \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ and told him exactly what I thought about it.
14. If you \_\_\_\_\_ \$ 100,000 \_\_\_\_\_ on that house, you won't need a very large mortgage.
15. What are you so worried about? Just \_\_\_\_\_ — everything's going to be all right.
16. The union's proposal to reduce the workweek to four days didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with the company.
17. The Food and Drug Administration is expected to \_\_\_\_\_ a new set of regulations regarding seafood inspection.
18. The price of computers has \_\_\_\_\_ dramatically in the last few years.
19. Those boxes are too heavy for you. \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ and let me carry them for you.
20. A pedestrian was \_\_\_\_\_ by a truck on Lincoln Avenue.
21. The stock exchange had to stop trading when its computers \_\_\_\_\_.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ a jet \_\_\_\_\_ on an aircraft carrier at night is very difficult.
23. Someone left this flashlight on all night, and the batteries have \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 36b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The jockey calmed down. (the horse, it)
2. The mechanic laid down. (her tools, them)
3. I put down. (my books, them)
4. The taxi ran down. (the traffic cop, him)

EXERCISE 36c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The car dealer reviewed the list of the car's options with me. What did the car dealer do?
2. In Question 1, what did the car dealer give me?
3. The king visited the area where the two tribes were fighting, and the fighting stopped. What did the king do to the area?
4. The houses in this part of town are in very bad condition. How can you describe this part of town?
5. Management's plan got a good reaction from the workers. What impression did the plan make on the workers?
6. Frank told Nancy that she was low-class. What did Frank do to Nancy?

7. In Question 6, what was Frank's comment?
8. Sam sat in a chair. What did Sam do?
9. The company's management stopped threatening to fire the workers and agreed to raise their wages. What did the company do?
10. The dentist's secretary wrote my name in her appointment book. What did the secretary do?
11. The soldiers stopped fighting and put their rifles on the ground. What did the soldiers do with their rifles?
12. You slipped and landed on the ground. What did you do?

EXERCISE 36d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burned up, 22    locked in, 30    punched in, 30    spaced-out, 30  
cleaned out, 32    locked out, 30    punched out, 30    sorted out, 30  
emptied out, 32    paid up, 22    put out, 30    torn off, 27  
left out, 32    plugged up, 22    shaken up, 24

1. David's totally \_\_\_\_\_ today. He has even forgotten his girlfriend's name.
2. I like this coat, but I don't know what size it is because the tag's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't know why that guy from the collection agency called me — all my bills are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Nicole hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet. Either she's late for work or she forgot.
5. Mark borrowed Bob's car and had an accident, and Mark's really \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
6. The manager wondered why I wasn't working, but after I told her I was \_\_\_\_\_, she said it was okay.
7. Take this medicine. It's great for \_\_\_\_\_ noses.
8. Do you have a key? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ and can't get out.
9. Do you have a key? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ and can't get in.
10. Jane's really \_\_\_\_\_. She just found out that her brother was murdered.
11. Jim's socks are mixed with his brother's socks. They're not \_\_\_\_\_.
12. No one wants to sit with me in the school lunchroom, and it makes me feel \_\_\_\_\_.
13. My mother was really \_\_\_\_\_ when Aunt Kathy said our house wasn't very clean.
14. Why isn't the basement \_\_\_\_\_ yet? I told you I'm tired of looking at this junk!
15. There's nothing in the room. It's all \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 36e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blow up, 33    come about, 33    make of, 35    pull off, 33  
care for, 31    do without, 31    make out, 29    put off, 31  
catch on, 33    go out, 32    narrow down, 35    stick to, 34  
clean out, 32    lock out, 30    plan on, 31    wash up, 30

1. Several bodies from the crashed plane \_\_\_\_\_ the day after the crash.
2. After mother had a stroke, we had to hire nurses to \_\_\_\_\_ her.
3. My father was seventy-two years old when he got his first computer, but he \_\_\_\_\_ right away, and now he uses it all the time.
4. The President had a lot of big plans when he took office, but few of them ever \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Mark wasn't successful as a singer. He should have \_\_\_\_\_ songwriting — that's what he does best.
6. How did you \_\_\_\_\_ on your final exam?
7. I had to crawl in through the window after my daughter closed the door and \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ of the house.

8. This situation is very strange. I don't know what to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. I have to finish my project tonight, and I haven't even started it. I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ until the last minute.
10. No one thought Frank could run a mile in less than four minutes, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I really depend on my laptop computer when I travel on business. I don't know how I ever \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. George and Linda \_\_\_\_\_ for three years before they got married.
13. Several people were killed when the bomb \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Bob and Marsha aren't \_\_\_\_\_ spending more than \$250,000 for their new house.
15. My divorce settlement cost me a lot of money. It almost \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The FBI started with a list of six suspects, but they \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to two.



### 37. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 3

When phrasal verbs are used as nouns, the verb is usually in the form; however, a small number use a different form of the verb.

For example, left over and grow up use the past participle:

We ate leftovers the day after Thanksgiving.

The grown-ups sat at one table, and the children sat at another.

talk to and go over use the -ing form:

Mr. Young gave his son a good talking-to.

Before I buy this car, I'm going to give it a good going-over.

and grown-up uses the past participle:

Only grown-ups are allowed to drive.

#### brush off

1. brush ...off p.v. When you brush people off, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

My boss just brushes me off when I try to tell her how to increase our profits.

The reporters tried to ask him some questions, but he brushed them off.

brush-off n. When you give people the brush-off, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

The boss just gave me the brush-off when I tried to give him some advice.

2. brush ... off p.v. When you brush off a critical remark or problem, you ignore it and continue as before without letting it affect you.

I told Dr. Smith that he had made a mistake, but he brushed it off.

My father's cholesterol is very high, but he just brushes it off.

#### come on

1. come on p.v. When an electrical device or machine comes on, it begins to operate, usually automatically. Go off is the opposite of come on.

It was so cold that the heat came on last night.

When you open the refrigerator door, the light comes on automatically.

2. come on p.v. When a television or radio program comes on, it begins.

Do you know when the news will come on?

The late movie comes on at 1:00 A.M.

3. come on p.v. When you want to encourage people to do something or when you want them to do something quickly, you say "Come on!"

Believe me, you're going to love this garlic ice cream. Come on, try it!

Come on! I can't wait all day.

4. come on p.v. [informal] When you think that people have done or said something improper or unreasonable, you say "Come on."

Tom didn't study for one minute, and you're telling me he got 100 on the test? Oh, come on.

Hey, come on! I told you not to do that again.

5. come on p.v. [always continuous] When you begin to feel a headache or an illness developing, you feel the headache or illness coming on.

I might be sick tomorrow; I feel something coming on.

I feel a headache coming on. Do you have any aspirin?

6. come on p.v. When you come on a certain way, you speak or deal with people in that way.

Paul needs to learn to be more of a gentleman. He comes on too strong, and women don't like that.

Bob comes on kind of arrogant, but he's actually a nice guy.

7. come on (to) p.v. [informal] When you come on to people, you approach them and try to interest them in romance or sex.

Toad came on to Judy at the party, and she told him to get lost.

I can't stand that guy Ned. He's always coming on to me.

come-on n. [informal] A provocative comment or action intended to interest a person in romance or sex is a come-on.

Todd uses the same come-on with all the girls, and it never works.

come-on n. A discount or special offer designed to get people to buy something is a come-on.

The bank is offering a free VCR as a come-on if you open an account with them.

### cover up

1. cover... up p.v. When you cover something completely, you cover it up.

I covered the cake up so no bugs would land on it.

Cover this stuff up — I don't want anyone to see it.

covered up part.adj. After something has been completely covered, it is covered up. Is the meat covered up? I don't want flies to land on it.

2. cover... up p.v. When you cover up a crime, you do something to try to prevent other people from learning of it.

There's no point in trying to cover up the crime. Too many people already know about it.

The mayor was accused of covering up his ties to organized crime.

cover-up n. Something you do in order to prevent a crime from becoming known is a cover-up.

The mayor denied being part of a cover-up and claimed he was innocent.

### hang out

1. hang out p.v. [informal] When you hang out at a place, you spend time there without any important purpose.

Hang around is similar to hang out.

Doesn't Nancy have a job? It seems as if she hangs out at the beach every day.

I don't have anyplace to go. Do you mind if I hang out here for a while?

hangout n. [informal] A hangout is a place where you spend time without any important purpose.

The police closed the bar, saying it was a hangout for crooks and gang members.

### leave over

1. leave over p.v. [always passive] When something is left over, it remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

I guess I made too much food; look how much is left over.

I paid all my bills and had only \$ 17 left over.

leftover part.adj. Something that is left over remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

You can have this leftover pasta for lunch tomorrow.

leftovers n. [always plural] Food items that remain uneaten after people have finished eating are leftovers.

Leftovers again? When are we going to have something different for dinner?



**Let down**

1. let ...down p.v. When you promise people you will do something and then fail to do it, you let them down.  
My son promised to stop using drugs, but he let me down.

I really need you to help me move tomorrow. Please don't let me down.

let down part.adj. When people promise you they will do something and then fail to do it, you feel let down.

When you are disappointed because you cannot have something you want to have, because you cannot do something you want to do, or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be, you feel let down.

You broke your promise to me that you would quit smoking. I feel very let down.

letdown n. When you say that something is a letdown, you are disappointed because you cannot have or cannot do something you want to or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be.

I had tickets for the fifth game of the World Series, but my team lost in four games. What a letdown.

After the way everyone talked about how great the movie was, I thought it was something of a letdown.

**Pay off**

1. pay... off p.v. When you pay off money that you owe or pay off the person you owe the money to, you pay all the money that you owe.

I wasn't happy with the people we hired to paint our house. I paid them off and told them not to return.

It took ten years, but I finally paid off my school loan.

paid off part.adj. After you pay all the money that you owe to someone or to a lending institution, the debt or loan is paid off.

I made my last payment yesterday, and now my car loan is paid off.

2. pay... off p.v. When you pay people money so that they will do something illegal or allow you to do something illegal, you pay them off.

The politician tried to cover up the crime by paying off the witnesses.

Don't expect the police in this city to do anything about gambling — they're being paid off.

payoff n. A payoff is money paid to someone to do something illegal or to allow you to do something illegal.

The chief of police was videotaped accepting a payoff.

3. pay off p.v. When something you do pays off, it is successful and is worth the effort you made.

Medical school is a lot of hard work, but it'll pay off someday.

The restaurant changed its menu, and it really paid off. Business increased by 30 percent.

payoff n. A benefit you gain because of an effort you make is a payoff.

Linda doesn't get paid for the volunteer work she does.

The payoff is knowing that she has helped other people.

**talk to**

1. talk to p.v. When you talk to people, you have a conversation with them.

Are you talking to me?

I don't like Bob. He talks to me like I'm some kind of idiot.

talking-to n. A talking-to is a serious discussion in which you scold or lecture someone.

Dan's behavior is outrageous. Someone should give him a good talking-to.

EXERCISE 37a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ the chicken \_\_\_\_\_ after we finished dinner, and the cat ate it.
2. A patient died after Dr. Smith gave her the wrong medicine, and the hospital tried to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't care what Nancy thinks of me. If she criticizes me, I'll just \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I worked for nine years to get my Ph.D., and now I can't find a job in my field. All that work sure didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I set the thermostat so that the air conditioner \_\_\_\_\_ if it gets over eighty degrees.
6. You can trust Erik to keep his promises. He won't \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I didn't like that car salesman we talked to last night. He \_\_\_\_\_ too strong.
8. I called Heather last night, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ her; she was in the shower.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ in bars isn't my idea of fun.
10. I tried to apologize to Jane, but she just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ and continued walking.
11. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ my mortgage \_\_\_\_\_ early, so I'm making two payments every month.
12. Look at TV Guide to see when the show \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Karen sure isn't shy. Did you see how she was \_\_\_\_\_ to my brother at the party?
14. After Thanksgiving so much turkey will be \_\_\_\_\_ that we'll be eating it for two weeks.
15. I hope I'm not getting sick. I feel a cold \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The contractor was accused of \_\_\_\_\_ city officials in exchange for contracts.

EXERCISE 37b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. You need to finish school. The \_\_\_\_\_ won't come for years, but it's worth it.
2. I didn't have time to make anything for dinner, so we're having \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
3. This place isn't as beautiful as it looked in the pictures. What a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Judy isn't interested in anything I say; she always gives me the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The senator was convicted of taking a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The low interest rate the credit card company offers if you switch to their card is just a \_\_\_\_\_. After six months they increase it to 18 percent.
7. The politician was accused of being part of a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You can usually find Joe at the nightclub across the street. That's his favorite \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Timmy's not causing any problems today. Maybe someone gave him a \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 37c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Ned spends a lot of time at Joe's Diner relaxing and talking to his friends. What does Ned do at Joe's Diner?
2. In Question 1, what is Joe's Diner to Ned?
3. Mark said something that I thought was ridiculous, and I told him to be serious and reasonable. What did I say to Mark?
4. You had \$400, but after you went shopping, you had \$100 remaining. What did you have?
5. My favorite TV show begins at 9:00. What does my favorite show do at 9:00?
6. Dan promised his daughter that he would take her to the circus, but he couldn't get off work that day. What did Dan do to his daughter?
7. Maria is going to pay her last car loan payment. What is she going to do to her car loan?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe Maria's car loan after she makes the last payment?
9. Nicole spoke with her brother about his drinking problem. What did she do to her brother?

10. In Question 9, what did Nicole give to her brother?
11. The heat in our house starts to operate when the temperature gets below sixty degrees. What does the heat in our house do?
12. For lunch you ate the spaghetti that your family didn't eat the night before. What did you eat for lunch?
13. The restaurant owner gave the health inspector \$200 to ignore the rats in the kitchen. What did the restaurant owner do to the health inspector?
14. In Question 13, what was the \$200 that the restaurant owner gave the health inspector?
15. The head of the health department tried to keep the payoffs in his department a secret. What did the head of the health department do to the payoffs?
16. In Question 15, what would you call the head of the health department's attempt to keep the payoffs in his department a secret?
17. Linda complained to the city about the garbage in the streets, but the woman she talked to wasn't interested and told her to write to the mayor. What did the woman Linda talked to do?
18. In Question 17, what did the woman that Linda talked to give her?
19. Timmy's friend wanted him to walk faster, and he told Timmy to hurry. What did Timmy's friend say to Timmy?
20. Joe told me again and again how good his favorite restaurant is, but when I went there, I didn't think it was that good. What was my visit to the restaurant?
21. In Question 20, how did I feel after my visit to Joe's favorite restaurant?

EXERCISE 37d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blowup, 33	get-together, 26	grown-up, 10	put-down, 36
breakup, 28	giveaway, 28	lockout, 30	rundown, 36
cutout, 31	going-over, 26	lockout, 29	

1. The movie critic told the director that watching his new movie was worse than going to the dentist. That was quite a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the huge company created several smaller companies.
3. We're having a little \_\_\_\_\_ tonight. Would you like to come?
4. Only \_\_\_\_\_ are allowed to drink alcohol.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ ended after the workers agreed to a 10 percent pay increase.
6. I heard a big \_\_\_\_\_ in Nancy's office. I wonder what the problem was.
7. The drug dealers had a \_\_\_\_\_ on every corner.
8. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cookies, but he had chocolate all over his face, so she knew he was lying. The chocolate on his face was the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Before you spend \$13,000 on a used car, I suggest that you give it a thorough \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Carlos made paper \_\_\_\_\_ shaped like dinosaurs.
11. The police chief gave the mayor a \_\_\_\_\_ of the previous month's crime statistics.

EXERCISE 37e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

calm down, 36	fall down, 36	hold against, 35	narrow down, 35
catch on, 33	fool around, 35	leave behind, 35	pull off, 33
do away with, 31	go by, 35	live with, 35	put down, 36
empty out, 32	go down, 36	make of, 35	sit down, 36

1. My best friend, Heather, really likes Mike, but Mike asked me to go to the dance with him. I hope Heather doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. The real estate agent has shown us several houses, but we've \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to three that we really like.
3. Mike took the wastebaskets outside and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Before we go to the beach, let's \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's house and see if he wants to come with us.
5. Maria's a fast learner. She had never played chess before, but she \_\_\_\_\_ right away.
6. No one thought I could get 100 on the test, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Nothing like that ever happened before. I didn't know what to \_\_\_\_\_ it,
8. You can really screw up your computer with that program, so don't \_\_\_\_\_ with it unless you know what you're doing.
9. Pets aren't allowed where we're moving, so we're going to have to \_\_\_\_\_ our dog \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Polio has been almost completely \_\_\_\_\_.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ that jerk for fifteen years was horrible.
12. Joe was so upset after the accident that it was twenty minutes before he \_\_\_\_\_ enough to tell the police officer what happened.
13. Be careful on that icy sidewalk — you don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ and break your neck.
14. In the summer the sun doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ until 9:00 in the evening.
15. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ \$4,000 \_\_\_\_\_ on my new car and finance the rest.
16. I've been standing all day. I need to \_\_\_\_\_.

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

**38. FOCUS ON: the verb keep and adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability****Phrasal verbs with keep**

Several phrasal verbs are based on the verb keep, and it is important to understand that the essential meaning of keep in these phrasal verbs is no change. As you study these verbs, remember that in each meaning of each verb something is not changing, something is continuing in the same direction or in the same manner, or something is staying in the same place or in the same condition.

**Adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability**

A variety of adverbs and adverbial groups of words that together function as adverbs are used to modify phrasal verbs that relate to something variable, such as distance, time, cost, speed, temperature, amount, or quantity.

Adverbs and adverbials allow the speaker to be more precise about what is being measured — to say whether it was a little or a lot or to be precise about exactly how much. But the verb must be something that is variable. It cannot be something either/or, such as shut off, for example (a TV is either on or off — it cannot be in between).

Adverbs and adverbials are used to strengthen the meaning of the verb:

He fell asleep on the train and went well beyond his stop.

She fell way behind in her work when she was sick.

Keep far away from the fire.

to weaken the meaning of the verb:

I went a bit over my budget.

Keep slightly to the right on that road.

He fell a little behind.

The meeting may run somewhat over.

or to be exact:

We planned two weeks ahead.

Go three floors up.

Sometimes, in informal English, way is repeated for extra emphasis:

What Jim said went way, way, way beyond impolite — it was outrageous.

**keep at**

1. keep at p.v. When you keep at it, you continue with an activity even though it may be difficult. When you say "Keep at it" to people, you encourage them to finish with an activity that is difficult.

I know this work is difficult, but you have to keep at it.

Keep at it; you're almost finished.

**keep away**

1. keep away (from) p.v. When you keep away or keep away from people, you do not come close to them or associate with them. When you keep away or keep away from things, you do not touch them, come close to them, or use them. When you keep away or keep away from places, you do not come close to them or go to them.

Mark was very sick yesterday, so everyone kept away from him.

We're going to eat dinner in a few minutes, so keep away from those cookies.

That's a bad neighborhood, so keep away from it,

2. keep... away (from) p.v. When you keep people or things away or keep them away from something or someone else, you do not allow them to come close to or associate with someone or come close to or touch something.

That dog is dangerous, so keep it away.

Paul has an alcohol problem, so keep him away from the bar at the party tomorrow.

**keep down**

1. keep ... down p.v. When you keep the cost, quantity, or amount of something down, you keep it a low level.  
The company tried to keep its prices down.

They wanted a small wedding, but they have such large families that it was hard to keep the number of guests down.

2. keep... down p.v. When you keep the volume of noise, music, or conversation down, you keep it at a low level.  
When people are being noisy and you want them to be quieter, you tell them to keep it down.

Will you please keep it down; I'm trying to study.

You kids can watch TV, but keep the volume down — your mother is taking a nap.

**keep from**

1. keep from p.v. When you keep from doing something, you do not do it even though it is hard not to.  
I was so angry that I don't know how I kept from punching that guy in the nose.

The movie was so sad that I couldn't keep from crying.

2. keep... from p.v. When you keep people from doing something, you stop them from doing it.

Jim's girlfriend's parents don't like him, and they try to keep him from seeing her.

When I was young, my poor health kept me from doing a lot of things the other kids did.

**keep off**

1. keep... off p.v. When you keep off something, you do not walk or stand on it. When you keep other people or things off something, you do not allow them to walk or stand on it.

The sign says "Keep off the grass." You should keep your kids off the streets and in school.

2. keep... off p.v. When you keep off drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you do not use them. When you keep people off drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you prevent them from using them.

Since getting out of jail, Hank has been able to keep off drugs.

Ned is a nice guy as long as you can keep him off booze.

**keep on**

1. keep on p.v. When you keep on doing something, you continue doing it.

I told her to be quiet, but she just kept right on talking.

Don't stop — keep on going.

2. keep... on p.v. When you keep people on at their place of employment, you continue to employ them.

The company decided against laying all the workers off and will instead keep a few on to maintain equipment until business improves.

Everyone on the hotel staff was fired after the hotel went out of business, except for two guys who were kept on to clean and paint the building.

**keep to**

1. keep... to p.v. When you keep information to yourself, you do not tell anyone.

This is a secret, so keep it to yourself.

I wish she would keep her racist comments to herself; I don't want to hear them.

2. keep... to p.v. When you keep something to a certain cost, quantity, or amount, you do not let the cost, quantity, or amount go higher than that level.

Here's my credit card, but keep your spending to a minimum — don't go crazy with it.



The room doesn't hold a great many people, so we have to keep the number of guests to 200.

3. keep to p.v. When you keep to the right or left, you continue moving to the right or left.

When you pass a big red barn on the highway, keep to the right; the exit is right after the barn.

Faster cars are supposed to keep to the left.

### keep up

1. keep... up p.v. When you keep an activity up, you continue doing it.

Leopards can run extremely fast, but they can't keep it up longer than a minute or two.

I told you to stop doing that. If you keep it up, I'm going to get angry.

2. keep up (with) p.v. When you are in a group that is studying, working, and so on, and you are able to learn or work at the same rate as the others, you keep up or keep up with the group. Fall behind is the opposite of keep up.

Lydia missed several days of school last month, and now she's having a hard time keeping up with the rest of the class.

The assembly line was going so fast that no one could keep up.

3. keep up (with) p.v. When you keep up or keep up with people or things that are moving, you are able to move at the same rate. Fall behind is the opposite of keep up.

Bob walks so fast that it's hard to keep up with him.

The wounded soldiers couldn't keep up with the rest of the army.

4. keep up (with) p.v. When you can understand and respond to a situation that is changing, you are able to keep up with the situation.

Computer technology is changing so fast. How can anyone keep up with it?

Jane always has some new idea. I can't keep up with her.

5. keep... up p.v. When people or things keep you up, they prevent you from going to bed, or if you are in bed, they prevent you from falling asleep.

Ned just would not leave last night; he kept me up until 2:00 in the morning.

That noisy party across the alley kept me up all night.

EXERCISE 38a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The student's excuse for not doing his homework was so ridiculous that his teacher couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.

2. What I'm going to tell you is highly confidential, so \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.

3. The baby's crying \_\_\_\_\_ Judy \_\_\_\_\_ half the night.

4. Don't quit now — you're almost finished. \_\_\_\_\_ it.

5. The company increased its profits by \_\_\_\_\_ costs \_\_\_\_\_.

6. I've tried to quit smoking a hundred times, but I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes longer than a day.

7. Slower traffic should \_\_\_\_\_ the right.

8. Now that I live in New York, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ with local news in my hometown.

9. Sally is really angry at your brother, so it would be a good idea to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ from her.

10. My algebra class is too difficult for me. I can't \_\_\_\_\_.

11. You're going to have to walk faster than that if you want to \_\_\_\_\_ with us.

12. Please \_\_\_\_\_ your dog \_\_\_\_\_ our lawn.

13. If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ your exercise program, you're going to gain all the weight back.

14. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the music \_\_\_\_\_? Your mother's trying to sleep.



15. Parents try to \_\_\_\_\_ their children \_\_\_\_\_ making mistakes, but sometimes it isn't easy.
16. If you \_\_\_\_\_ eating so much butter and so many eggs, you're going to have a heart attack.
17. The new owner said the company was losing too much money to \_\_\_\_\_ all the workers \_\_\_\_\_ and that some would have to be laid off.
18. Look at the prices on this menu! Let's try to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ a hundred bucks, okay?
19. I don't want to talk to you ever again, so \_\_\_\_\_ from me!

EXERCISE 38b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My father asked me to speak more quietly. What did my father ask me to do?
2. I told the travel agent that we have only \$4,000 to spend on our vacation, so she has to make sure the cost doesn't go over that. What did I ask the travel agent to do?
3. My geometry class is so boring that I can't stop myself from falling asleep. What can't I do in my geometry class?
4. My teacher told me that calculus is difficult but that I have to continue trying to understand it. What did my teacher tell me?
5. The political situation in Washington changes every day, and it's hard to understand what is happening. What is it hard to do?
6. Sarah and I were running. I quit after three miles, but she continued running. What did Sarah do?
7. You've got to remain at a great distance from this area because it is radioactive. What have you got to do about the radioactive area?
8. Heather thinks Mike isn't telling her everything. What does Heather think about Mike?
9. Janice got excellent grades in her first year of college. I hope she can continue to do well. What do I hope Janice can do?
10. I asked my husband not to let the children near my computer. What did I ask my husband?
11. The economist said it's important not to let inflation go higher. What did the economist say?
12. Bill hasn't used drugs for five years. What has Bill done?
13. My son is eighteen, so I can't stop him if he wants to join the Army. What can't I do to my son?
14. Sarah's having a little trouble in school. It's hard for her to stay at the same level as the other students. What is hard for Sarah?

EXERCISE 38c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 38d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back down, 36	come on, 37	goof around, 33	leave over, 37
brush off, 37	fall behind, 33	hang out, 37	run down, 36
calm down, 36	fall down, 36	know about, 33	sit down, 36
come about, 33	go down, 36	lay down, 36	talk to, 37

1. Raul is constantly criticizing me, but I usually just \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I can barely hear this radio. The batteries must be \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When the electricians went on strike, the entire construction project \_\_\_\_\_ schedule.
4. Jake's claim that he accidentally shot Tony six times didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with the jury.
5. The dictator \_\_\_\_\_ after three aircraft carriers started sailing toward his country.
6. I need to check the furnace. The temperature got below sixty degrees last night, but the heat didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A big, old tree \_\_\_\_\_ last night and smashed a hole in our roof.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ — there's nothing to get upset about.
9. Several major changes in society \_\_\_\_\_ as a result of the industrial revolution.
10. Are you going to do any work at all today or will you just \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Don't waste your time asking Erik; he doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. Timmy's mother \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ and talked to him about his bad grades.
13. How much money was \_\_\_\_\_ after you finished paying for everything?
14. You can \_\_\_\_\_ those papers \_\_\_\_\_ over there.
15. I don't have anything to do today. I'm just going to \_\_\_\_\_ here and relax.
16. I'm so mad at her. I'll never \_\_\_\_\_ her again!

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

### 39. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 3

As we saw in Section 13, the passive is formed with be and the past participle of the verb. A number of modal auxiliary verbs and similar constructions are commonly used with be:

The meat will be chopped up by the cook.

Mark would never be picked up at the airport by a limo.

This mess can be straightened out only by me.

Such a huge country couldn't be taken over easily.

Her name should be crossed off the list.

The gas tank ought to be filled up before you return the car.

The concert might be sold out.

Your paychecks may not be picked up until after 5:00.

The enemy must be wiped out.

I have to be picked up on time.

The fruit has to be chopped up with a clean knife.

This screwup had better be straightened out soon or you will be fired!

This stuff was supposed to be taken over to Nancy's house yesterday.

Recall from Section 28 that phrasal verbs in the passive cannot be separated by an object because in a passive sentence there is no object.

#### chop up

1. chop... up p.v. When you chop something up, you cut it into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument.

Does this meat have to be chopped up?

Chop it up into pieces about half an inch in size.

chopped up part.adj. After something has been cut into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument, it is chopped up.

Mix the chopped-up onions and celery with the mayonnaise.

#### cross off

1. cross... off p.v. When you cross something off a list, you draw a line through it to remove it from the list.

Why was my name crossed off the invitation list?

Crossing it off was a mistake.

crossed off part.adj. After a line has been drawn through something on a list to remove it from the list, it is crossed off.

Here's the grocery list, but don't get this crossed-off stuff— I already got it.

#### fill up

1. fill ...up p.v. When you fill something up, you fill it completely.

My radiator must be leaking; it has to be filled up with water every day.

We always fill the tank up when we're in Indiana because gas is cheaper there.

filled up part.adj. After something has been completely filled up, it is filled up.

These water containers don't weigh very much. Are you sure they're completely filled up?

2. fill... up (on) p.v. When you fill up or fill up on something, you eat so much that you are no longer hungry and cannot eat any more.

Don't fill up on salad — you won't have any room for dinner.

I filled up on candy and was really sick about an hour later.

3. fill up p.v. When a room or other area fills up, people enter it until it is full.

The dance floor filled up quickly when the band began to play.

The hotels in Rio de Janeiro always fill up at carnival time.

### **pick up**

1. pick... up p.v. When you pick something up, you lift it with your hand.

All this trash has to be picked up.

Sam picked up his briefcase and left his office.

2. pick... up p.v. When you go to a place to get something that was created, prepared, or left for you and is now ready, you pick it up.

The garbage is supposed to be picked up before 9:00 AM.

The travel agent said I could pick the tickets up tomorrow.

pickup n. Something that is to be picked up or the process of picking it up is a pickup.

The restaurant uses the back door for pickups and deliveries.

3. pick... up p.v. When you pick people up, you stop your vehicle and give them a ride away from that place.

You'll be picked up at the airport by the hotel van.

Picking up hitchhikers is dangerous.

pickup n. Someone who is to be picked up or the process of picking someone up is a pickup.

The taxi driver went to 2122 N. dark Street for a pickup.

4. pick... up p.v. When you pick something up in a store, you quickly go into a store to buy something you need.

I need to pick up some milk on the way home.

Could you pick a loaf of bread up on your way over?

5. pick... up p. v. When you pickup a skill, you learn it easily. When you pick up a habit, you aquire the habit.

Children can pick up a new language very quickly. My son is picking some bad habits up from his friends.

6. pick... up p.v. When you resume doing something at the point where you stopped doing it earlier, you pick up at that point.

The teacher started the class by picking up where she had left off the previous week.

When you return to work after a long vacation, it's hard to know where to pick up.

7. pick... up p.v. When you pick up a radio or television station or a certain frequency on a receiver, you are able to tune it to that station or frequency.

When the weather is right, you can pick radio stations up that are hundreds of miles away.

General Johnston's radio transmission was picked up by the enemy.

8. pick... up p.v. When the police or other authorities arrest people, they pick them up.

The border patrol picks up several people every day trying to bring drugs into the country.

Charles was picked up for driving under the influence of alcohol.

9. pick... up p.v. When you get something by chance without looking for it, you pick it up.

I picked up a few stock tips from a guy I met on the plane.

Marsha picked up some interesting books at a used bookstore.

10. pick... up p.v. When you pick up the check or the tab (a tab is a list of money that someone owes) in a restaurant or other place, you pay it.

Tom's a real cheapskate; he never picks up the check.

Heather's father picked up the tab for the entire wedding.

11. pick up p.v. When the speed, level, or condition of something increases or improves, it picks up.

Business is slow this time of year, but it should pick up in December.

The song starts out slowly, but then it picks up.

pickup n. An improvement in the speed, level, or condition of something is a pickup. If a motor vehicle is able to accelerate quickly, it has pickup.

The company's profits increased after a pickup in sales.

I need to take my truck to the mechanic. It doesn't have any pickup.

12. pick... up p.v. When you pick up a place that is messy, you organize or tidy it.

Timmy's mother told him he couldn't play outside until he picked up his room.

Let's pick this place up — it's a mess.

13. pick... up p.v. [informal] When you pick up members of the opposite sex, you approach and successfully interest them in a sexual or romantic encounter.

Hank tried to pick up Frank's sister at the party last night, but she wasn't interested.

Pat picked up someone, and they went to a cheap motel.

### sell out

1. sell out (of) [often passive] p.v. When a store sells out of something or is sold out of something, it sells all of it. The toy store sold out of antigravity boots in two days.

I wanted to buy that new computer game, but every store I went to was sold out of it.

sold out part.adj. After all of something for sale in a store has been sold, the item is sold out.

I saw the most beautiful shoes at the mall, but my size was all sold out.

sold out part.adj. After all the tickets to a concert, play, or other public performance have been sold, the event is sold out.

You'll never get a ticket for the Superbowl — it's been sold out for weeks.

### straighten out

1. straighten ... out p.v. When something is bent, crooked, or curved and you make it straight, you straighten it out.

My elbow is so swollen that I can't straighten my arm out.

As the city grew, many of the winding streets were straightened out.

2. straighten ... out p.v. When you straighten out a confused situation or misunderstanding, you take steps to make it understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved. Sort out is similar to straighten out.

My hotel had me booked for the wrong days in the wrong room, but the manager straightened everything out.

Save your questions for the meeting. Everything will be straightened out then.

straightened out part.adj. After a confused situation or misunderstanding has been made understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved, it is straightened out. Sorted out is similar to straightened out.

Erik was upset with Dan, but they had a talk and now everything is straightened out.

3. straighten ... out p.v. When you straighten out people who are acting foolishly, you do or say something that causes them to act more responsibly. When you straighten out people who are confused, you help them to understand.

I told my son that if he gets in trouble one more time, I'm going to send him to military school. That really straightened him out.

I'm totally confused about what I'm supposed to do. Can you straighten me out?

**take over**

1. take... over (to) p.v. When you take something from one place to another, you take it over or take it over to a person or place.

Jane's at home sick, so I'm going to take some chicken soup over.

After I finished my report, I took it over to the finance department.

2. take... over p.v. When people, groups, or countries take control of a place by force, they take it over.

After the government troops fled, the country was taken over by the rebels.

The hijackers took over the plane and ordered the pilot to fly to Havana.

takeover n. A takeover is an action to take control of a country, city, building, or other place by force.

If the situation doesn't stabilize soon, there's a real chance of a military takeover.

3. take over (from/for) p.v. When people are elected, appointed, or hired to take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and to replace the people in control, they take over, take over as something, or take over from someone.

Carlos Ortega will be taking over as sales manager next year.

Ortega took over from Margaret Cummings, who had been the sales manager for 14 years.

takeover n. When people who are elected, appointed, or hired take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and replace the people in control, a takeover occurs.

After the takeover, the new president made a lot of changes.

4. take over (for) p.v. When you start to do a job or some work that other people are doing in order to allow them to take a break or because the previous shift has ended and a new shift has begun, you take over. When you assume an obligation or accept responsibility from someone, you take it over.

We work from 4:00 P.M. to midnight, and then the graveyard shift takes over.

When Linda was sick she couldn't care for her children, so her sister took over for her until she was well again.

**wipe out**

1. wipe... out p.v. When you remove dirt or liquid from the inside of a container with a cloth, sponge, or paper towel, you wipe it out.

Wipe the microwave out — it's got spaghetti sauce inside it.

I wiped out the inside of the glasses so they wouldn't dry with spots.

2. wipe... out p.v. When you are trying to kill people, weeds, insects, and so on, and you kill all of them, you wipe them out.

An entire regiment was wiped out in the battle.

The general said he would wipe out the rebels.

wipeout n. A situation in which all people, weeds, insects, and so on, are killed is a wipeout.

The battle was a complete wipeout. Not a single soldier survived.

EXERCISE 39a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Your pictures are ready and can be \_\_\_\_\_ between 10:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M.
2. I didn't get the book I wanted because the store was \_\_\_\_\_ of them.
3. There's a lot of confusion about the new policy. We need to have a meeting to \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The vice-president \_\_\_\_\_ after the president died.
5. Susie, your room is very messy. Come in here and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
6. Mr. Nelson asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ for Lydia while she's on vacation.
7. Sales of air conditioners always \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring.
8. If we get a bigger antenna, we might be able to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot more stations \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It took me an hour to \_\_\_\_\_ everything for the beef stew.
10. The soldiers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ the rebels.
11. Sally called and asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ a few things on the way home.
12. A country this small could be \_\_\_\_\_ in a few days.
13. I wish I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ on bread. Now I can't finish my dinner.
14. I'm going to play golf with Charles next week. He's really good, so maybe I can \_\_\_\_\_ a few ways to improve my game.
15. The theater \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes before the start of the opera.
16. My car's frame was so badly damaged in the accident that there was no way it could be \_\_\_\_\_.
17. You don't need to take any money to the restaurant. Karen said she would \_\_\_\_\_ the check.
18. Don't just clean the outsides of the desks — \_\_\_\_\_ the insides \_\_\_\_\_, too.
19. I'll be arriving at 3:40 A.M. Would \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ that early be a problem?
20. Hank's giving orders like he's the president of the company. Someone needs to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
21. Smoking is a bad habit that I \_\_\_\_\_ in the Navy.
22. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ these canteens before we begin our hike.
23. This couch is really heavy. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
24. After you get your paycheck, you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to the cashier to cash it.
25. Can you believe what Hank did? He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the boss's daughter at the company picnic.
26. I finished page 47 yesterday, so I'll \_\_\_\_\_ on page 48 today.
27. You can \_\_\_\_\_ my name \_\_\_\_\_ the list; I've changed my mind.

EXERCISE 39b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Have you chopped up? (the onions, them)
2. You can cross off. (Linda's name, her)
3. Fill up with water, (the aquarium, it)
4. I need to pick up at the train station, (my parents, them)
5. Can you straighten out? (this mess, it)
6. The rebels took over. (the royal palace, it)
7. They wiped out. (the palace guard, them)



EXERCISE 39c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The construction business always improves in the spring. What does the construction business always do?
2. Pirates might take control of the ship. What might happen to the ship?
3. In Question 2, if pirates took control of the ship, what would this action be called?
4. There was a misunderstanding at work, but Nicole explained everything to the people involved, and now they understand. What did she do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the misunderstanding now?
6. Frank was supposed to go to the factory so he could give Ned a ride home. What was supposed to happen to Ned?
7. All the people in the town will be killed when the enemy captures it. What will happen to all the people in the town?
8. Someone ought to draw a line through Karen's name on the list. What ought to be done to Karen's name?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Karen's name after someone draws a line through it?
10. Sarah went to the store to buy a CD, but they had all been sold. What did the store do?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe the CDs?
12. Tom tried to buy a ticket for the concert, but all the tickets had been sold. Why couldn't Tom buy a ticket for the concert?
13. You cut some bacon into very small pieces before you put it on your salad. What was done to the bacon?
14. The laundry closes at 6:00, so Jane has to go there before 6:00 to get her dress. What has to be done to the dress?
15. The copilot flew the plane so that the pilot could eat dinner. What did the copilot do?
16. Todd often asks me to stop at the store and buy a newspaper. What does Todd often ask me to do?
17. I'll tell Susie not to make the water in the bathtub rise all the way to the top. What will I tell Susie?
18. I stopped writing my book at page 94 and later started writing again on page 95. What did I do?

EXERCISE 39d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                |               |               |                 |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| bite off, 27   | come out, 32  | leave out, 32 | pull over, 19   |
| blow up, 33    | cut down, 23  | look over, 21 | settle down, 21 |
| break off, 27  | hand over, 19 | make up, 23   | slow down, 24   |
| bring back, 19 | knock off, 27 | pick on, 21   | wear down, 17   |

1. David's mother told him she'd like some grandchildren, but he's having too much fun as a bachelor and isn't interested in \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I didn't finish my work because I was training a new employee, and explaining everything really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Bob's doctor told him he was doing too much weight lifting and that he should \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The movie wasn't the same as the novel. Several characters were \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When I caught my sixteen-year-old daughter smoking cigarettes, I really \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I didn't say you could use my car. \_\_\_\_\_ those keys right now!
7. There must be something wrong with my camera — none of the pictures I took \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Can I borrow your food processor? I promise I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
9. We've been working since 7:00 A.M. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and finish tomorrow.
10. Everything on the menu looks delicious. I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ my mind.

11. If you don't stop \_\_\_\_\_ me, I'm going to tell Mommy.
12. I told Mark not to pet the lion, but he didn't listen, and his hand was \_\_\_\_\_.
13. He realized he was lost, so he \_\_\_\_\_ his car \_\_\_\_\_ and looked at a map.
14. My son asked me for a motorcycle for his birthday, but I told him no, so he's trying to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ by asking me again and again and again.
15. I gave my job application to the human resources director, and he said he'd \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give me a call.
16. Do you have any glue? One of the arms has \_\_\_\_\_ this ceramic doll.



#### 40. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

We have seen in previous sections that phrasal verbs are sometimes followed by the -ing form. We have also seen that transitive phrasal verbs sometimes take gerund objects. At a glance, there seems to be no difference between these two constructions:

Jim went away singing.

-ing form

Jim stuck with singing.

gerund

But because a gerund is a verb functioning as a noun, it can be replaced with an ordinary nongerund noun.

However, this is not true of the -ing form:

Jim went away it. Jim stuck with it.

##### blow off

1. blow... off p.v. [informal] When you do not do something that you are supposed to do because you do not want to or because you do not think it is important, you blow it off.

I was supposed to report for jury duty Monday morning, but I blew it off.

Bob had a hangover, so he blew off helping Marsha fix her car.

bring up

bring up & brings up      bringing up      brought up      brought up

1. bring ...up (to) p.v. When people bring something from a higher level or position or from south to north to where you are, they bring it up or bring it up to where you are.

Would you please go downstairs and bring up the package that was just delivered?

The rescue workers brought morphine up to the injured mountain climber.

2. bring ... up p.v. When you introduce a new topic into a conversation, you bring it up.

Last night during dinner, Dad brought up the idea of saving money by staying home instead of taking a vacation this year.

You and your big mouth! We were having a great time until you brought that up.

3. bring ... up (to) p.v. When you bring up children, you care for them as they grow to adulthood. When you bring up children to believe something or to behave in a certain way, you try to teach this belief or behavior to them.

Tom was born in Canada, but he was brought up in the United States.

Bringing quadruplets up is a lot of work.

I was brought up to believe in honesty and compassion.

##### burst out

1. burst out p.v. When you burst out laughing or crying, you begin laughing or crying loudly and suddenly.

Heather burst out laughing when I fell into the swimming pool.

When Sam heard the news, he burst out crying.

come back

come back & comes back      coming back      came back      come back

1. come back (to/from) p.v. When people return to a place where you are, they come back or come back to that place or come back from the place where they were before.

Todd went to Florida thinking it would be hot and sunny, but he came back talking about how cold and rainy it was.

I'm never coming back to this awful place again.

2. comeback p.v. When people, organizations, companies, or athletes overcome difficulties and become successful again, they come back.

My home team came back from last place and won the championship.

Senator Dolittle lost in 1988, but he came back to win in 1994.

comeback n. When people, organizations, companies, or sports teams overcome difficulties and become successful again, they make a comeback.

The Bulls were down by 34 points but won the game with an 18-point lead — what a comeback!

3. come back p.v. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it comes back.

I need to see the doctor. The pain in my shoulder has come back.

There isn't much chance that double-digit inflation will come back any time soon.

comeback n. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it makes a comeback.

Health officials are concerned that tuberculosis is making a comeback.

4. come back p.v. When a fashion or fad comes back, it becomes popular again.

Miniskirts are coming back this year.

Western movies and TV shows go out of style and then come back every few years.

comeback n. When a fashion or fad becomes popular again, it makes a comeback. I saved all my wide neckties because I knew they'd make a comeback someday.

### **get off on**

1. get off on p.v. [informal] When you get off on something or get off on doing something, you find it enjoyable and exciting.

Sally loves winter sports, and she especially gets off on snowboarding.

Mountain climbing is what I get off on.

### **go away**

1. go away p.v. When you leave a place or leave a person, you go away.

Go away! I'm trying to study.

Mark went away not realizing he had left his briefcase behind.

2. go away (for) p.v. When you travel for a period of time, you go away for this time.

We always go away for a few weeks in the winter.

Lydia is going to go away for a while.

3. go away (to) p.v. When you leave your home and live temporarily at another place, such as a school, you go away to that place.

Jane didn't go away to school; she went to a school near her home.

Some young people are nervous about going away to school, but others look forward to it.

4. go away p.v. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity disappears or greatly decreases, it goes away.

I have a pain in my back that never goes away.

If the rain doesn't go away, we'll have to call off the game.

### **run around**

1. run around p.v. When you run around a place, you run to various parts of it.

The cat ran around the room chasing the mouse.

The children were running around the museum, and the guard told them to stop.

2. run around p.v. When you run around doing something, you go to various places trying urgently to accomplish something that is important to you.

The woman was running around the store looking for her lost child.

We ran around the house trying to rescue whatever we could from the rising floodwater.

runaround n. When people are not honest with you or helpful to you, they give you the runaround.

Why didn't you just tell me the truth instead of giving me the runaround?

### stick with

1. stick with p.v. When you stick with a habit, plan, or type of work, you continue as before, without change. Stick to is similar to stick with.

I don't like computers. I'll stick with writing letters by hand.

Todd thought about a career change but decided to stick with teaching.

2. stick with p.v. When you stick with something that you use, you continue to use it.

My wife wants me to switch to decaffeinated coffee, but I'm going to stick with regular.

My mother has stuck with Ivory soap for forty years.

3. stick with p.v. When you stick with people, you remain with them or remain loyal to them.

It'll be very crowded at the festival, so stick with me so you don't get lost.

That other guy running for senator has some good ideas, but I'm going to stick with Senator Dolittle.

4. stick ... with p.v. When you stick people with something, you force them to take something or deal with something undesirable or unpleasant.

I'm sorry to stick you with all this work, but you're the only one who can do it.

The shoes I bought don't fit, but the store where I bought them doesn't accept returns, so I guess I'm stuck with them.

EXERCISE 40a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I didn't know anyone at the party except Leticia, so I \_\_\_\_\_ her.
2. All Timmy's friends are \_\_\_\_\_ for the summer, so he won't have anyone to play with.
3. I have a job interview at 8:30 Monday morning, but that's too early for me, so maybe I'll just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Miguel was surprised how much he enjoyed watching figure skating. He really \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. Linda \_\_\_\_\_ from the party talking about what a good time she had.
6. Susie's birthday party exhausted me. The kids were \_\_\_\_\_ yelling and screaming for hours.
7. I gave my grandfather a computer, but he said he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ his old typewriter.
8. My grandmother was \_\_\_\_\_ on a farm, but she moved to the city when she got married.
9. Dan \_\_\_\_\_ buying a motorboat, but his wife said it was a crazy idea.
10. I know running is great exercise, but I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.
11. I hope high-heel shoes never \_\_\_\_\_; they're so uncomfortable.
12. The strange noise in my engine has \_\_\_\_\_, so I'm going to take the car to a mechanic again.
13. I asked the mechanic why the sound keeps \_\_\_\_\_ and coming back.
14. Bob's joke was pretty funny. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.
15. Betty smelled smoke, and she \_\_\_\_\_ the house frantically looking for the source.
16. Why does the boss \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ making coffee every morning? Why can't someone else do it?
17. I saved my father a lot of money by not \_\_\_\_\_ to school.
18. After his defeat, the former champion said he would \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Frank came to my door with flowers and an apology, but I told him to \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Whenever my brother in Florida visits me here in Minnesota, he \_\_\_\_\_ some oranges

EXERCISE 40b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. They're not following the original plan. What aren't they doing?
2. I took some aspirin, and my headache was gone for a while, but now I have a headache again. What did my headache do?
3. You started to cry suddenly and loudly. What did you do?
4. Hank was supposed to meet with his parole officer in the morning, but he didn't go because he wanted to sleep late. What did Hank do to his meeting with his parole officer?
5. The hotel desk clerk didn't tell me he had canceled my reservation by mistake. Instead he invented a lot of crazy excuses that he knew weren't true. What did the hotel desk clerk do?
6. Todd's sister was very upset, and he asked what the problem was, but she told him to leave her alone. What did Todd's sister ask him to do?
7. Skiing is what Heather likes more than anything. How does Heather feel about skiing?
8. Everyone in the factory was busy, so when the delivery truck came, David was forced to unload it by himself. What happened to David?
9. Nancy began talking about joining the Peace Corps. What did Nancy do?
10. The number of people with malaria decreased, but now the number is increasing every year. What is malaria doing?
11. Poverty is a problem that never decreases or disappears. What doesn't poverty do?
12. You went on a business trip three weeks ago, and you haven't returned yet. What haven't you done yet?
13. Ned had to call his broker immediately, so he ran to various places looking for a telephone. What did Ned do?
14. It would be nice to leave this city for a week or two. What would be nice?
15. When I was young, my parents taught me to believe in the golden rule. What did my parents do?

EXERCISE 40c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use either gerunds or the -ing form.

1. \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 40d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back down, 36   go down, 36   lead up to, 34   stick around, 34  
do over, 34   go out, 32   make of, 35   stick to, 34  
fool around, 35   hold against, 35   put up to, 34   take back, 34  
go by, 35   lay down, 36   run down, 36   trick into, 35

1. At school, Luis got into a lot of trouble for something I did, and now he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. If I could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ again, I'd do it differently.
3. The price of gas is expected to \_\_\_\_\_ to \$1 a gallon within a month.

4. The light suddenly \_\_\_\_\_, and I couldn't see a thing.
5. Do you have to go already? Can't you \_\_\_\_\_ for a few minutes?
6. We don't want to forget anything, so let's \_\_\_\_\_ the list one more time to be sure.
7. The announcement was a real surprise. I'm not sure what to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. This book I bought is missing some pages. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to the bookstore for me tomorrow?
9. Crime was getting out of control, so a new sheriff was elected who promised to \_\_\_\_\_ the law.
10. That gun is loaded, so I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ with it if I were you.
11. After I threatened to go to the police and tell them everything, he \_\_\_\_\_ and stopped making threats.
12. My brother always thought I would be a failure, so now that I'm rich, I love to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him by complaining about how hard it is to keep a thirty-room house clean.
13. My son is a good boy. If he was shoplifting, I'm sure someone \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ it.
14. In my history class we studied the various things that \_\_\_\_\_ the current situation.
15. The month we spent in Italy was a lot of fun, but it seemed to \_\_\_\_\_ so quickly.
16. My brother-in-law is so sneaky. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ telling him the combination to my safe.



English  
AULAS PARTICULARES



#### 41. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs with the particle in that require into when used with an object

We have seen in Sections 9 and 23 that some two-word phrasal verbs require a second particle when they are transitive, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs. Many phrasal verbs with the particle in have a meaning that relates to entering or penetrating. When what is being entered or penetrated is named, these verbs become transitive; however, this is not done by adding a second particle but by changing in to into. Another way to look at it is to consider into two particles, in and to, written as one word:

The thief broke in.

The thieves broke into the jewelry store.

But this is true only for meanings of the phrasal verb that relate to entering or penetrating, not for all meanings. Some meanings with in have no into version (and are included in this section), and some meanings with into have no in version (and are not included in this section). Moreover, sometimes into is optional, and the verb can be used transitively with either in or into.

We see also in this section that there is often a phrasal verb with an opposite meaning with in and into corresponding to out and out of:

I sneaked in.

I sneaked out.

I sneaked into the house.

I sneaked out of the house.

##### break in

1. break in/into p.v. When you break in or break into a place, you enter illegally using force or deception.

A thief broke in and stole my TV.

When I saw the smashed glass in the street, I knew my car had been broken into.

break-in n. A break-in is an illegal entry into a place using force or deception. The police investigated a break-in at the liquor store.

2. break... in p.v. When you break in a new mechanical device or a car, you use it slowly and carefully until you are sure it is ready for heavier use. When you break in a pair of shoes, you wear them only occasionally and for a short time until they are comfortable. When you break in people at a new job, you train and supervise them and give them less than the normal amount of work until they are ready for something more difficult.

I don't want to wear these boots on the expedition. I haven't broken them in yet.

We're breaking in a new secretary, so things have been a bit confused at our office lately.

broken in part.adj. After you break in a new mechanical device or a car, a pair of shoes, or people at a new job, they are broken in.

I don't want to wear those shoes to the dance. They're not broken in yet.

##### check in

1. check in/into p.v. When you arrive at a hotel and arrange for a room, you check in or check into the hotel.

After I arrive in Denver, I'll go straight to my hotel and check in.

Jim checked into the hotel while I called home to check on the kids.

2. check... in p.v. When you arrive at an airport and give your ticket to an agent and receive a boarding pass, you check in.

You should check in at least two hours before your flight.

You can wait over there in the lobby while I check you in.

check-in n. The counter at an airport where you give your ticket to an agent and receive a boarding pass is the check-in or the check-in counter. The process of checking in is check-in.

Before your flight you have to go to the check-in counter.

3. check... in p.v. When you give your luggage to an airline agent so that it will be carried in the baggage compartment rather than the passenger compartment, you check it in.

That bag is too big for carry-on — you'll have to check it in.

checked in part.adj. Luggage that has been checked in or passengers that have checked in are checked in.

Now that we're checked in, we can wait in the boarding lounge.

4. check in (with) p.v. When you visit or call people briefly and regularly because you want to get or receive important information from them or to make sure that a situation you are both interested in is satisfactory, you check in or check in with them.

After surgery, you'll need to check in once in a while to make sure the bone is healing properly.

If Hank doesn't check in with his parole officer every week, the police will arrest him.

### Check out

1. check out (of) p.v. When you pay your bill, return your key, and leave a hotel, you check out or check out of the hotel.

There's always a long line of people waiting to check out at that time of the morning.

Mrs. Gorcia checked out of her hotel and took a taxi to the airport.

checked out part.adj. After you have paid your bill, returned your key, and left a hotel, you are checked out.

Okay, we're checked out; now let's get a taxi and go to the airport.

checkout n. The time before which you must check out of a hotel in order to avoid paying for another day is the checkout time.

We can sleep late tomorrow; checkout time isn't until 1:00 P.M.

1. check... out p.v. When you check a place or thing out, you inspect it carefully or learn more about it.

That new Mexican restaurant is great — you should check it out.

Hey George, check out that car Toad is driving. When did he buy it?

3. check ... out p.v. When you check people out, you investigate them in order to learn more about them. If you say that people check out, you mean that the information they have given you about themselves, such as their education and work experience, has been investigated and found to be accurate.

Applicants for child care jobs should be thoroughly checked out.

Before you give that guy money to invest, you should check him out.

Frank didn't get the job he wanted with the CIA. Some things on his resume didn't check out.

4. check out p.v. When you check out at a store, you bring the items you want to buy to the cashier and pay for them.

The store's closing in a few minutes. We'd better check out.

Look at this line. It's going to take forever to check out.

checkout n. The checkout or the checkout counter is where you pay for items in a store.

You get the bathroom stuff, I'll get the groceries, and we'll meet at the checkout counter.

### go in

1. go into p.v. When you go in or go into a place, building, room, and so on, you enter it.

It's getting too dark to play tennis. Let's go in.

Frank went into the kitchen to get a cup of coffee.

2. go in p.v. When something goes in or goes into a place, container, enclosure, and so on, it belongs there, fits there, or can be put there.

That dish goes in the cabinet next to the stove.

All those clothes will never go in this small suitcase.

3. go in p.v. When soldiers enter combat or an area where combat is likely, they go in. Pull out is the opposite of go in.

The National Guard was ordered to go in and stop the riot.

The marine shouted, "We're going in!" as he jumped from the landing craft.

### let in

1. let ...in into p.v. When you let people or things in or let people or things into a place, building, room, and so on, you allow them to enter by giving them permission to enter or by opening a door, gate, and so on.

When the guests arrived, the butler opened the door to let them in.

The guard wouldn't let me into the stadium because I had forgotten my ticket.

2. let... in into p.v. When an opening, such as a window, door, hole, crack, and so on, allows something to enter, it lets it in.

That small window doesn't let in enough light to read by.

The hole in the screen is letting the mosquitoes into the house.

### plug in

1. plug ...in into p.v. When you connect an electrical device to an electrical outlet, you plug it in or plug it into the outlet. When you connect any cord or cable to a socket designed to receive it, you plug it in or plug it into the socket.

I plugged my 110-volt TV into a 220-volt outlet and ruined it.

This phone isn't broken; you just forgot to plug the phone cord in.

plugged in part.adj. When an electrical device is connected to an electrical outlet, it is plugged in.

Be careful with that iron — it's plugged in.

### sneak in

1. sneak in into p.v. When you enter a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you sneak in or sneak into the place.

When I was a kid I used to sneak into the movie theater through the emergency exit.

If you don't have a ticket for the game, you'll have to sneak in.

### sneak out

1. sneak out (of) p.v. When you leave a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you sneak out or sneak out of the place.

Susie's father told her to stay upstairs in her room, but she sneaked out through the window.

The principal caught me sneaking out of my chemistry class.

EXERCISE 41 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Close the door! You're \_\_\_\_\_ the bugs \_\_\_\_\_.

2. One of the students \_\_\_\_\_ and stole the answers for the final exam.

3. My grandfather always \_\_\_\_\_ a new car by not driving it over 50 miles per hour until it had gone 1,000 miles.

4. Mark told me he bought a large-screen TV. Let's go to his house and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

5. My laptop computer is in this bag, so I think it would be better to keep it with me on the flight than to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. These speakers \_\_\_\_\_ sockets in the back of the stereo.
7. Are you sure this is the right key for this lock? It won't \_\_\_\_\_.
8. When I'm away on a business trip, I always \_\_\_\_\_ with my office every morning. 318
9. I was late for class, so I waited until the teacher wasn't looking and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The soldiers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ and capture the enemy position.
11. I don't trust that guy my daughter wants to marry. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Dinner is being served. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the dining room.
13. There's a crack in the basement wall that's \_\_\_\_\_ water.
14. At the supermarket you can \_\_\_\_\_ in the express line only if you have fewer than 15 items.
15. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ the Grand Hotel on Wednesday.
16. After a week at the hotel, we'll \_\_\_\_\_ and go home.
17. Any burglar who tries to \_\_\_\_\_ my house is going to get a big surprise — I've got three big dogs that aren't very friendly.
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ only 15 minutes before my flight time, and I almost missed the plane.

EXERCISE 41 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Janice entered the house quietly so that no one would hear her. What did Janice do?
2. Lydia unlocked the door so that her brother could enter the house. What did Lydia do?
3. Ms. Cummings paid her hotel bill and left. What did Ms. Cummings do?
4. In Question 3, Ms. Cummings had to leave the hotel before noon so that she would not have to pay for another day. What is noon at the hotel?
5. The window of Nancy's house was broken, and her jewelry, TV, and computer were gone. What happened to Nancy's house?
6. In Question 5, what happened at Nancy's house?
7. When I arrive at the airport, I'll give my ticket to the agent, and she'll give me a boarding pass. What will I do at the airport?
8. In Question 7, where will I go in the airport?
9. The room is full of cigarette smoke, and Karen doesn't want to enter it. What doesn't Karen want to do?
10. I saw an interesting house with a "for sale" sign on Pine Street as I was driving home. Tomorrow I'll stop and learn more about it. What will I do to the house tomorrow?
11. When Erik flies to Colorado to go skiing, he always gives his skis to the airline agent so that they will be put in the baggage compartment. What does Erik always do with his skis?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe Erik's skis after he gives them to the airline agent?
13. You opened the window quietly, when no one was looking, and left your house. What did you do?
14. Mr. Baker hasn't arrived at his hotel and arranged for a room yet. What hasn't Mr. Baker done yet?
15. Hank bought a new CD player and connected the plug to the outlet. What did Hank do?
16. In Question 15, how would you describe Hank's new CD player?
17. Before Ned was hired for his job in a nursing home, the human resources manager at the nursing home called his previous employer and asked questions about Ned. What was done to Ned?
18. My feet are killing me. It wasn't very smart to wear new hiking boots that aren't soft and comfortable. Why are my feet killing me?

EXERCISE 41 c — Write seven original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 41 d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blow off, 40    help out, 33    start out, 20  
 come on, 37    leave over, 37    straighten out, 39  
 fill up, 39    let down, 37    take over, 39  
 get off on, 40    live with, 35    talk to, 37  
 go away, 40    narrow down, 35  
 hang out, 37    put down, 36

1. I hope you like spaghetti, because so much was \_\_\_\_\_ after the party that we're going to be eating it for a week.
2. My son has promised me a hundred times that he'll stay out of trouble and work harder in school, but he always \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I want to watch the news. It's going to \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as this game is over.
4. Even though you don't like your brother, you shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ in front of his children.
5. Today \_\_\_\_\_ cold and rainy, but now the sun is out, and it's a lot warmer.
6. I can't drive because of my broken leg, but Carmen said she'd \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ if I need anything.
7. I've got an appointment to get my teeth cleaned tomorrow at 4:00, but if you want to go to the beach, I can \_\_\_\_\_ my appointment \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The company was considering eight cities for the new factory, but they've \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to three.
9. A lot of the employees are confused about the new contract. We should ask management to have a meeting so that we can \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Lydia is going to \_\_\_\_\_ for Judy during her maternity leave.
11. Her husband said he wasn't going to stop smoking and that she would just have to learn to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. The commercial on TV said that if you \_\_\_\_\_ your car's gas tank \_\_\_\_\_ with their gas, you'd get better mileage and a cleaner engine.
13. We're planning to \_\_\_\_\_ for a few weeks. Would you mind watering our plants until we return?
14. David put a pool table and a pinball machine in his basement. It's a great place to \_\_\_\_\_ and relax.
15. Can you believe how rude that guy was to me? Nobody has ever \_\_\_\_\_ me like that before.
16. Bob is very kind and generous. He \_\_\_\_\_ helping other people.

**42. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with get**

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb *get*, and it is important to understand that the meaning of *get* in these verbs is not the same as the nonphrasal form of *get*, meaning *receive*. Instead, *get* has a meaning similar to *become* or *change to*:

I got up at 6:00. (I was not up before, and then I became up — I changed from not being up to being up.)

Many phrasal verbs with *get* that relate to a change in physical location might seem identical in meaning to a variety of phrasal verbs using *come*, *go*, and other verbs that describe physical movement, such as *walk*, *run*, *move*, and so on, and often they can be used with little difference in meaning:

I came back last night. I got back last night.

But there is a difference: *get* emphasizes the change in location; *come*, *go*, and so on, emphasize the movement from one location to another.

It is very common to use the adverbs *right* and *back* with *get* phrasal verbs. To review the adverb *right*, see Sections 19 and 22. To review the adverb *back*, review Section 26 (and do not confuse the adverb *back* with the particle *back*).

Note that two forms of the past participle of *get* are shown: *gotten* and *got*. *Gotten* is more common in American English, but *got* is occasionally used. Both are correct.

**get back**

1. *get back (to)* p.v. When you return to a level or place where you were before, you *get back* or *get back to* that place.

We left three weeks ago, and we didn't get back until yesterday.

Where are you going? Get right back here!

Mark lost a lot of weight when he was sick, and it took him a long time to get back to his old weight.

2. *get... back (to)* p.v. When you get something back or get something back to a person or place, you return it to that person or place.

Jim uses his mother's car in the morning, but she needs it to go to work at 4:30, so he has to get it back before then.

I have to get these books back to the library — they're overdue.

3. *get... back (from)* p.v. When you get something back or get something back from someone or someplace, you have something that you had before.

I couldn't believe I got my stolen car back.

Jim borrowed a book from me three years ago, and I still haven't gotten it back from him.

4. *get back (from)* p.v. When you get back or get back from something that is very hot or dangerous or that you should not be near, you move away from it so that there is more distance between you and it.

Get back from the edge of the cliff! You might fall.

As the President came closer, the police told the crowd to get back.

**get behind**

1. *get behind (in)* p.v. When you are in a group that is studying or working, and so on, and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you *get behind* or *get behind in* your studies or work. When you do not complete work as fast as originally planned and expected, you *get behind schedule*. *Keep up* is the opposite of *get behind*. *Fall behind* is similar to *get behind*.

Linda had some problems last semester, and she got behind in her studies.

With all the bad weather we've been having, the construction project has gotten way behind schedule.



**get by**

1. get by p.v. When you get by or get by something, you pass something or someone while you are walking or driving even though it may be difficult because there is not enough room.

Can you move all that junk in the hallway please? It's hard for people to get by.

There was an accident on the highway, and no one could get by.

2. get by (on) p.v. When you get by or get by on a certain amount of money, you continue with your work or continue with your life even though it may be difficult.

Don't worry about me; I'll get by somehow.

It's not easy getting by on \$250 a week.

3. get by p.v. When something, such as a mistake or a problem, gets by you, you do not notice it.

I've got a great editor; no mistakes get by her.

I checked this report twice. How did all these misspellings get by me?

**get down**

1. get down (to) p.v. When you move to a lower level or place or from north to south, you get down or get down to that level or place. Get up is the opposite of get down. Go down is similar to get down.

You're going to fall out of that tree and break your neck. Get down right now!

The first thing I did after I got down to Miami was go to the beach.

2. get... down (from) p.v. When you get things or people down, you move them from a higher level or place to a lower one.

Why do you always put the dishes on the top shelf? I can't get them down.

The fire fighters got the people down from the roof of the burning building.

3. get down p.v. When you bend your body and lower your head to avoid danger or to prevent people from seeing you, you get down.

When the enemy soldiers started shooting, the sergeant ordered his men to get down.

Get down! If the police catch us here we'll be in a lot of trouble.

4. get... down p.v. When things or people get you down, they make you sad or depressed.

Don't let your troubles get you down. Everything will be all right.

Jim's marriage problems are really getting him down.

**get in**

1. get in/into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, building, room, car, boat, and so on, you enter it.

Get in the car! We're going now.

We'd better get into the school — the bell's going to ring soon.

2. get... in/into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you obtain permission to enter. When you get other people in or get other people into a building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you arrange for them to enter.

We'll never get into that club; we don't know the right people.

I didn't have an invitation to the party, but Nancy got me in.

3. get... in/into p.v. When you get something in or get something into a place, building, room, container, enclosure, and so on, you get the object inside even though it is difficult.

The shoes are too small — I can't get my feet in.

How did they get that elephant into its cage?



4. get... into p.v. When you get in trouble or get into a difficult situation or a mess (a mess is a confused or difficult situation), you become involved in it. When you get people in trouble or get them into a difficult situation or a mess, you cause them to become involved in it.

Susie got in a lot of trouble at school today.

I don't see any solution to this problem. How did I ever get into this mess?

5. get into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, you arrive. When the vehicle you are in gets in or gets into a place, it arrives. Come in is similar to get in.

I'm exhausted. I got in really late last night.

I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train gets into the station.

6. get... in p.v. When a store gets something in, it receives a delivery of something that it will offer for sale.

Karen asked the sales clerk when the store was going to get some summer dresses in.

I wanted to buy that new book, but the bookstore hasn't gotten it in yet.

7. get... in p.v. When you get an activity in, you find the time for it or make the time for it.

Dinner isn't until 7:30, so we've got time to get a tennis game in.

Whenever I go to San Francisco on business, I try to get a baseball game in.

### get out

1. get out (of) p.v. When you get out or get out of a place, building, room, car, boat, and so on, you leave or escape from it.

When Bob heard his car's engine making a strange noise, he got out and looked under the hood.

We smelled gas and got out of the building just seconds before it exploded.

2. get out (to) p.v. When you go to a place that is west of where you are or to a place outside a large city, you get out or get out to that place.

I love it here in the city. I almost never get out to the suburbs anymore.

I told my friend in New York, "If you ever get out to California, please visit me."

3. get... out (of) p.v. When you get people out or get them out of a place, you take them out or you arrange for them to leave.

The soldiers were surrounded, so they called for a helicopter to get them out.

After Hank was arrested, his lawyer got him out of jail.

4. get... out (of) p.v. When you get out or get out of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you avoid it.

When you get people out of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you help them to avoid it.

Erik made a date with two girls for the same night. How is he going to get out of this mess?

You got me into this mess — you get me out!

5. get... out (of) p.v. When you get something out or get something out of a container or place, you remove it.

Mother's coming for dinner tonight, so let's get the good china out.

The videotape is jammed; I can't get it out of the VCR.

6. get... out (of) p.v. When you get dirt or a stain out or get dirt or a stain out of a material, you remove it by cleaning.

This detergent's ad claims it'll get dirt out even in cold water.

Do you think bleach will get this wine stain out of my white blouse?

7. get out p.v. When information gets out, it becomes known to people who are not supposed to know it.

Be careful — we'll be in a lot of trouble if this information gets out.

There was a huge scandal after the news got out.

8. get out (of) p.v. When you leave your house and do things that are relaxing and fun, you get out or get out of the house.

You work too hard; you should get out more.

Ned doesn't get out of the house much; he prefers to stay home and play computer games.

### get over

1. get over (to) p.v. When you get over to a place, you go there. When you tell people to get over here, you want them to come where you are.

Francisco called and he said he needs you to help him with something, so get over to his house right way.

Susie, get over here and clean up this mess immediately!

2. get over p.v. When you get over a problem, illness, or emotionally painful experience, you stop letting it affect you and continue with your life.

I've got a bad cold. I've been sick for a week, and I still haven't gotten over it.

You can't feel sorry for yourself forever — you've got to get over it and get on with your life.

3. get over p.v. When something happens that surprises you or makes you angry, and you cannot stop thinking about it, you cannot get over it.

I can't get over seeing my ex-wife with her new husband.

The coach couldn't get over losing the state championship 47 to 0.

### get up

1. get up (to) p.v. When you move to a higher level or place, or from south to north, you get up or get up to that level or place. Get down is the opposite of get up. Go up is similar to get up.

Tom, your brother is in the basement. Please go tell him to get right up here and start doing his homework.

I haven't gotten up to my brother's house in Canada for a long time.

2. get... up p.v. When you get up or someone gets you up, you rise from your bed. When you get people up, you cause them to rise from their beds.

I don't usually get up until 11:00 on weekends.

I make breakfast; getting the children up and ready for school in the morning is Bill's job.

3. get up p.v. When you change from a sitting or lying position to a standing position, you get up. Stand up is similar to get up.

The teacher told the sleeping students to get up.

After he hit me, I got right up and hit him back.

EXERCISE 42a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. That bomb might explode. Maybe we should \_\_\_\_\_ a little.

2. As soon as the car stopped, I \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ and went inside the house.

3. I'll lose my job if this information \_\_\_\_\_, so don't tell anyone.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Jim's death took me a long time.

5. Now the police are outside. Look at all the trouble you've \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_!

6. I thought these pants were ruined after I got ink on them, but this detergent \_\_\_\_\_ the ink right \_\_\_\_\_.

7. I was working in my office on the third floor, and my boss called from his office on the sixth floor and told me to \_\_\_\_\_ there immediately.

8. Work, work, work — that's all you do. You need to \_\_\_\_\_ more often.

9. It's 4:10. If we hurry, we might \_\_\_\_\_ a round of golf \_\_\_\_\_ before it gets dark.

10. I was trying to leave work a little early, but my boss said, "You can't go home until 5:00. \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ here!"

11. Would you like to go shopping at Wal-Mart tomorrow? They just \_\_\_\_\_ some new stuff \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The game is sold out, but I know someone who might be able to \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_.
13. What time did your plane \_\_\_\_\_ last night?
14. Hank is in a lot of trouble. If he \_\_\_\_\_ of it, it'll be a miracle.
15. Nicole does her work very carefully and never makes mistakes. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ her.
16. Your sister's upstairs sleeping. Go tell her to \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ here and eat breakfast.
17. Look, there's a bear! \_\_\_\_\_ — it might see us.
18. My husband spent his whole paycheck on beer and lottery tickets. I don't know how we're going to \_\_\_\_\_ this month.
19. I wish I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ late. I missed the bus, and now I have to walk to school.
20. This is a very difficult class. If you don't study hard, you'll \_\_\_\_\_.
21. The teacher said, "Your midterm score wasn't very good, but I'm sure if you study hard, you'll do a lot better on the final. Don't let it \_\_\_\_\_ you."
22. Excuse me, could you move? I can't \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Mike usually leaves around 8:00 in the morning and \_\_\_\_\_ around 5:30.
24. My cat has been in that tree for three days. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_?
25. It's amazing. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ how great Tom looks. I'll bet he's lost forty pounds.
26. If you lose your receipt, \_\_\_\_\_ your money \_\_\_\_\_ for something you bought is usually impossible.
27. Timmy's mother said, "Who said you could leave the table? \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ here and finish your vegetables!"
28. Our neighbor called and said "Your dog is in my garden. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!"
29. The situation in that country is very dangerous, so Washington is making plans to \_\_\_\_\_ its embassy staff \_\_\_\_\_.
30. David was so sick he couldn't even \_\_\_\_\_ of bed.
31. It isn't easy to \_\_\_\_\_ this big car \_\_\_\_\_ that small garage.

EXERCISE 42b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My father came into my bedroom, shook my shoulder, and told me that breakfast was almost ready. What did my father do?
2. I live in New Orleans, and it's difficult to find the time to travel to Minnesota to visit my sister. What is difficult?
3. After you were arrested for drunken driving, you were in a lot of trouble. What did you do?
4. You need to return to your home very quickly. What do you need to do?
5. After Judy pays her bills, she just barely has enough money to survive until the end of the month. What can Judy just barely do?
6. If Heather doesn't work harder in her math class, she will not be able to stay at the same level as the other students. What will happen to Heather if she doesn't work harder?
7. It's been five years, but Frank is still sad about his brother's death. What hasn't Frank done yet?
8. I was trapped in my car after an accident, but a rescue worker removed me from my car. What did the rescue worker do?
9. Alex is removing his toy train from the closet. What is Alex doing to his toy train?
10. Carlos is standing on a table so that he can get the toy airplane that he threw on top of the refrigerator. What is Carlos doing?
11. The sofa was too big, and the movers couldn't bring it inside our new house. What couldn't the movers do?
12. There is a huge truck in front of us, and we can't pass it. What can't we do?

13. Lydia left the building when she heard the fire alarm. What did Lydia do?
14. After getting out of her car, Janice entered it again. What did Janice do?
15. Erik's bicycle was stolen, but now he has it again. What did Erik do?
16. The pilot had mechanical problems with her airplane, but the controllers on the ground helped her land. What did the controllers do to the pilot?
17. Bill called and asked me to come to his house very quickly. What did Bill ask me to do?

EXERCISE 42c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

brush off, 37    float around, 34    punch in, 30    sneak out, 41  
call back, 28    go inlinto, 41    punch out, 30    start up, 26  
call up, 28    leave behind, 35    run around, 40  
clear out, 32    pick up, 39    sell out, 39  
cross off, 39    plug inlinto, 41    sneak inlinto, 41

1. There's nothing to eat for dinner tonight. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ some takeout food \_\_\_\_\_ when you come home from work tonight?
2. My brother wants to store some of his stuff in my attic, so tonight I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ some of the junk up there \_\_\_\_\_ to make more room.
3. If you want to get a ticket for the Superbowl, you'll need to hurry — they're \_\_\_\_\_ fast.
4. When I go on vacation, I want to relax at the beach and \_\_\_\_\_ my worries \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Ned is worried. There's a rumor \_\_\_\_\_ that someone is going to get fired.
6. I can't find the toy my daughter wants for her birthday anywhere. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ all day looking for it.
7. I'm going to be late for work. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Dan must still be here in the office somewhere. He hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
9. I haven't talked to Nancy in a long time. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
10. Nancy was in the shower when I called, but her brother said she'd \_\_\_\_\_ me right \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Are you sure this is the right key? It won't \_\_\_\_\_ the lock.
12. Margaret Cummings decided to leave her job with a big company and \_\_\_\_\_ her own company.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the theater was easy. One of our friends went inside and opened the fire exit for the rest of us.
14. My father won't let me go to the dance, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ after he goes to bed.
15. None of the bad things people say about Charles bother him. He just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I made a list of people to invite to my wedding, but after I heard all those nasty things Sarah said about my fiancé, I \_\_\_\_\_ her name \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
17. Well, I think I've fixed the vacuum cleaner. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and see if it works now.

### 43. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect phrasal verbs

Remember that the present perfect is formed with have or the contraction 've and the past participle. The only difference is that has is not used for the third person singular:

He has run up a big bill. He would have run up a big bill.

The meanings of the modal and semimodal auxiliaries are unchanged in the present perfect, except for may and might.

Past speculation and you do not know what happened: might have or may have

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you do not know what happened, either might have or may have can be used:

I wonder where Jim is. He might have stopped off at the bar. I wonder where Jim is. He may have stopped off at the bar.

Because you do not know whether Jim stopped off at the bar, either might have or may have can be used.

Past speculation and you know what happened: only might have

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you know what happened, only might have can be used:

Climbing that tree was stupid. You might have fallen out. Climbing that tree was stupid. You may have fallen out.

Because I know that the person I am talking to did not fall out of the tree, only might have can be used.

present tense -ing form      past tense      past participle  
blow out

blowout & blows out      blowing out      blew out      blown out

1. blow... out p.v. When a flame blows out or is blown out by a strong wind, it stops burning. When you blow out a flame, you use your breath to make the flame stop burning.

Don't open the window — the candles will blow out.

I couldn't light my cigarette; the wind kept blowing the match out.

The stove isn't working. Maybe the pilot light has blown out.

2. blow ...out (of) p.v. When something is moved outward away from where it was by an explosion or a very strong wind, it is blown out or blown out of where it was before.

The force of the explosion blew all the windows out.

Look, there's a dead bird. The wind might have blown it out of its nest.

blowout n. When a tire bursts and suddenly loses its air while you are driving, you have a blowout.

Maria had a blowout while she was driving, lost control of her car, and hit a tree.

3. blow... out p.v. When a piece of electrical equipment or a fuse blows out, it fails because too much electricity is passing through it.

Don't be surprised if the fuse blows out — you have seven lights, your computer, and your TV all plugged into one outlet.

When lightning hit our house, it blew all the telephones out.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle	
give out	give out & gives out	giving out	gave out	given out

1. give ...out (to) p.v. When you distribute something to other people, you give it out or give it out to them. Hand out is similar to give out.

They gave out free hats to the first 5,000 fans to enter the stadium.

The aid workers would have given more food out to the famine victims, but they didn't have enough.

2. give out (on) p.v. When a mechanical or electrical device stops working, it gives out or gives out on you. When a supply of something is completely used, it gives out or gives out on you.

The explorers lost their way in the desert and died after their water gave out.

I bought a Chevrolet in 1964 and drove it more than 300,000 miles before it finally gave out on me.

gross out

gross out & grosses out	grossing out	grossed out	grossed out
-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. gross ...out p.v. [informal] When something grosses you out, it upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting.

You had to dissect a cadaver in your biology class? Yuk, that would've really grossed me out.

Alex hates changing his little brother's diapers — it grosses him out.

grossed out part.adj. When something upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting, you are grossed out.

I was eating an apple, and I found half a worm in it. I was so grossed out that I almost threw up.

head toward	head toward & heads toward	heading toward	headed toward	headed toward
-------------	----------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

1. head toward p.v. When you head toward a certain location, you move toward it. When you say that you are headed toward or are heading toward a certain location, you mean that you are planning to go there or that you are going there but have interrupted your journey and will resume it. Head for is the same as head toward.

The escaped convicts must have headed toward Mexico.

I'm heading toward Portland. Where are you going?

run up

run up & runs up	running up	ran up	run up
------------------	------------	--------	--------

1. run up (to) p.v. When you run to a higher level or place, you run up or run up to that place.

Run up and answer the phone if it rings, okay?

If I'd heard the baby crying, I would have run up to his bedroom.

333

2. run ... up p.v. When you accumulate a number of debts, resulting in a total debt of a certain amount, you run up a bill for that amount.

Giving my son a credit card was a mistake — he ran up a \$2,500 bill in only one month.

Calling your family every week from Australia must have run a big phone bill up.

run-up n. A large, sudden increase in the price, value, or cost of something is a run-up.

Bill was lucky to buy 500 shares of the stock just before the big run-up.

3. run up (to) p.v. When you run toward people, you run up or run up to them.

The prince didn't have any bodyguards. Anyone could have run up and attacked him.

After the explosion, a man covered with blood ran up to me and asked for help.



present tense -ing form      past tense      past participle  
shut up   shut up & shuts up      shutting up      shut up   shut up

1. shut up (about) p.v. [informal] When people stop talking, they shut up or shut up about something they are talking about. When you are angry and want people to stop talking, you tell them to shut up.

Marvin talks and talks and talks — he never shuts up.

I said I was sorry about crashing your car. Now will you please shut up about it!

1. shut... up p.v. [informal] When people or things cause you to stop talking, they shut you up.

Toad was making jokes about his wife at the party until she gave him a look that shut him right up.

I can't hear the TV — can you shut those kids up?

stop off

stop off & stops off      stopping off      stopped off      stopped off

1. stop off (at/in) p.v. When you stop off at a place or stop off in an area on the way to another place, you stop there briefly before continuing your journey.

I would have stopped off at Sally's house this morning, but I was late for work.

Stopping off in Cairo on our way to India would be fun.

try on

try on & tries on      trying on      tried on      tried on

1. try... on p.v. When you try on an item of clothing before deciding whether you will buy it or borrow it from someone in order to see if it fits or to see if you like it, you try it on.

She must have tried on twenty pairs of shoes before making up her mind.

Would you like to borrow this dress for the dance tonight? Here, try it on.

334

EXERCISE 43a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I got into Atlanta last night, and tomorrow I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ Miami.
2. I should've \_\_\_\_\_ this sweater \_\_\_\_\_ before I bought it. It's too small, and now I have to return it.
3. Nicole figured out why all the lights were off: a fuse \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Sam couldn't have finished the marathon; his strength completely \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It's a good thing Linda has health insurance; she has \_\_\_\_\_ a huge bill at the hospital.
6. When the gas exploded, all the doors and windows \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Marsha's always bragging about how smart she is and teasing me about my bad grades, but when I got 100 on the algebra test and she got 52, it really \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We're not flying directly to Japan; we're going to \_\_\_\_\_ in Hawaii for a few days.
9. Hank's bad breath \_\_\_\_\_ everyone \_\_\_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_\_\_! I'm tired of listening to your constant criticism.
11. I was so excited to see Karen after so many years that I \_\_\_\_\_ to her and gave her a big hug.
12. This gas stove isn't working. I think the pilot light may have \_\_\_\_\_ when you opened the window.
13. Job applications were \_\_\_\_\_ to everyone standing in line.
14. When I saw smoke coming from the third floor window, I \_\_\_\_\_ to look for the fire.

EXERCISE 43b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.



1. The flight attendant was blown out \_\_\_\_\_ the hole in the airplane's fuselage.
2. Free samples will be given out \_\_\_\_\_ every customer who walks through the door.
3. His diseased heart finally gave out \_\_\_\_\_ him.

335

4. I was so angry that when I saw him I ran up \_\_\_\_\_ him and hit him.
5. George and Tom might have stopped off \_\_\_\_\_ New York.
6. Maybe they stopped off \_\_\_\_\_ Jim's house in the suburbs.

EXERCISE 43c Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The wind blew out. (the candle, it)
2. They gave out. (information, it)
3. She ran up. (a \$4,000 bill, it)
4. Can I try on? (these pants, these)
5. The smell grossed out. (everyone, them)

336

EXERCISE 43d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Rosa bought a coat, but it's too small. What should Rosa have done?
2. Your car's transmission finally stopped working after several days of problems. What did your car's transmission do?
3. The price of gold increased a lot very quickly. What would you call this increase in the price of gold?
4. Todd didn't know that the taco he ate at Miguel's house was made with cow brains. When Miguel told Todd what he had eaten, what must that have done to Todd?
5. In Question 4, how must Todd have been?
6. The children ran toward Betty very quickly. What did the children do?
7. The truck driver wouldn't have traveled toward Detroit. What wouldn't the truck driver have done?
8. Janice used her breath to stop the kerosene lamp from burning. What did Janice do?
9. Stopping Marvin from talking is nearly impossible. What is impossible?
10. Sally asked her brother how he could have accumulated such a large credit card bill. What did Sally ask her brother?
11. David stayed for a couple of nights in Denver before continuing to Las Vegas. What did David do?
12. My tire burst while I was driving. What did I have?

EXERCISE 43e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- |                 |                 |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| broken in, 41   | crossed off, 39 | plugged in, 41       |
| checked in, 41  | filled up, 39   | put off, 31          |
| checked out, 41 | leftover, 37    | rundown, 36          |
| chopped up, 39  | let down, 37    | sold out, 39         |
| covered up, 37  | paid off, 37    | straightened out, 39 |

337

1. If you're hungry, there's some \_\_\_\_\_ pizza in the refrigerator.
2. This meat isn't \_\_\_\_\_ enough; the pieces are too big.

3. That food isn't \_\_\_\_\_; flies are going to land on it.
4. Someday John wants to move from this \_\_\_\_\_ neighborhood to a better one.
5. My feet really hurt because these shoes aren't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
6. My car loan is \_\_\_\_\_; I made my final payment last month.
7. After forty-five years with the company, I thought they would give me more than this cheap pen at my retirement party. I feel \_\_\_\_\_.
8. There aren't eight names on the list; there are only five — three are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. We're \_\_\_\_\_ now; we can take our luggage up to our hotel room.
10. We can get a taxi for the airport now; we're \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The game isn't \_\_\_\_\_; there are plenty of tickets left.
12. No wonder this radio doesn't work — it's not \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The tank isn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet; there's room for another gallon or two.
14. Is everything \_\_\_\_\_, or do I need to explain it again?
15. Why are you so \_\_\_\_\_? Did I say something that offended you?

EXERCISE 43f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burst out, 40   go inlinto, 41   keep from, 38   keep up, 38  
 come back, 40   keep at, 38   keep off, 38   sneak inlinto, 41  
 get back, 42   keep away, 38   keep on, 38   sneak out of, 41  
 get behind, 42   keep down, 38   keep to, 38   wipe out, 39

1. Susie \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen and took a cookie when her mother wasn't looking.
2. When I was a teenager, I used to \_\_\_\_\_ of the house and meet my friends after my parents went to bed.

338

3. I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. I need to see my physical therapist. That pain I used to have in my knee is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Do you have a bigger envelope? This letter won't \_\_\_\_\_ this small one.
6. Betty asked the bus driver to stop, but he didn't hear her and \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ going.
7. Maria leaves for work at 7:00 in the morning, and she doesn't usually \_\_\_\_\_ to her house until after 8:00 in the evening.
8. Jim has \_\_\_\_\_ way \_\_\_\_\_ in his studies because he's been in the hospital for several weeks.
9. Marvin was acting like such an idiot when he was angry that I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.
10. Don't give up now— \_\_\_\_\_ it!
11. It was hard to \_\_\_\_\_ my magazine article \_\_\_\_\_ only 2,000 words — there was so much I wanted to say.
12. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ crying when his wife told him she wanted a divorce.
13. I try to take notes in my history class, but the teacher talks so fast that I can't \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The enemy soldiers were almost completely \_\_\_\_\_ in the attack.
15. That dog of yours is dangerous, so please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ from my children.
16. The candy company has \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of its products \_\_\_\_\_ despite the rise in the cost of sugar.

339

44. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives and passive phrasal verbs with the verb get

It is important to understand two different but related uses of get in forming the passive voice.

get + adjectives: get = become

It is very common in English to use get followed by an adjective. This is not the passive. In this case get is similar to become:

She got sick yesterday.

She became sick yesterday.

get + past participles: a form of the passive

It is also very common to use get in place of be to form the passive voice. The construction is the same; get is followed by the past participle:

Judy got kicked out of school.

Judy was kicked out of school.

There is a difference, however, between the passive formed with be and the passive formed with get: When the passive is formed with get, there is often (but not always) a suggestion that the subject of the sentence was somehow responsible or partially responsible for what happened:

Judy got kicked out of school.

A person hearing the sentence above might think that perhaps Judy did something wrong that resulted in her getting kicked out of school. Sometimes, to leave no doubt that the subject is responsible for what happened, a reflexive pronoun is used:

Judy got herself kicked out of school. get + participle adjectives: adjective or passive?

As we have seen, in English the past participles of many verbs are used as adjectives. When get is followed by a past participle, it is not always clear whether the sentence is passive or whether the past participle is functioning as an adjective:

340

I got mixed up last week.

I became mixed up last week.

In the examples above, we can see that the past participle is clearly functioning as an adjective since get can be replaced with become, but notice that the sentence can also pass the by test (discussed in Section 13), which indicates that it is passive:

I got mixed up by all the confusing road signs last week.

Again, we see how closely related adjectives and past participles are in English and how it is not always easy to distinguish between the two. Fortunately, it is not usually very important. What is important is to be comfortable using past participles as adjectives, and the key to doing so is not to understand the difference between true adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with an adjective function but instead to understand that there often is no difference.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
beat up	beat up & beats up	beating up	beat up beaten up

1. beat... up p.v. [informal] When you beat people up, you hit them or kick them repeatedly.

The muggers stole my money and then beat me up.

Timmy got beaten up at school today.

beat-up part.adj. When something is in bad condition because of heavy use, it is beat-up.

My car is an old, beat-up piece of junk.

carry away carried away

1. carry away (with) p.v. [always passive] When you get carried away or carried

away with something, you do more than is necessary or proper because you enjoy it or because you think it is important.

I was going to make a dozen cupcakes for desert tonight, but I got carried away and ended up making forty.

You should always start a new exercise program slowly. If you get carried away with it, you might hurt yourself.

kick out

kick out & kicks out

kicked out

kicking out

kicking out

1. kick... out (of) p.v. When you kick people out or kick people out of a group, place, building, room, and so on, you order them to leave. Throw out is similar to kick out.

341

David drank too much and got himself kicked out of the bar.

Bob's in our car pool, but he's always arguing with the other guys about something, so we're going to kick him out.

present tense •ing form

past tense

past participle

lock up lock up & locks up

locking up

locked up

locked up

1. lock... up p.v. When you lock all the doors and windows of a building, you lock it up.

The manager always locks up before he goes home.

We locked our house up before we went on vacation.

locked up part.adj. After all the doors and windows of a building have been locked, it is locked up.

You can't get in the house — it's locked up.

2. lock... up p.v. When you lock people up, you put them in prison.

The police locked Hank up after they caught him shoplifting.

Whoever committed that terrible crime ought to be locked up forever.

locked up part.adj. Someone who has been put in prison is locked up.

Being locked up in jail was a terrible experience.

lockup n. A prison or other place where people are locked up is a lockup.

Omar was put in the lockup after he was arrested for drunken driving.

mix up

mix up & mixes up

mixing up

mixed up

mixed up

1. mix... up p.v. When you mix something up that has two or more ingredients, you stir it so that the ingredients will be thoroughly combined.

Put in the eggs, butter, sugar, flour, and water and then mix it up well.

An electric mixer will mix up the ingredients better than a hand mixer.

2. mix... up p.v. When you mix two things up, you confuse them with each other.

Jerry and his twin brother look exactly the same, and everyone mixes them up.

Newborn babies sometimes get mixed up in the hospital.

mixed up part.adj. When you are confused about something that you want to understand, or when you have emotional or behavioral problems, you are mixed up.

Can you help me with my calculus homework? I'm really mixed up.

Jimmy is a mixed-up kid who gets in trouble with the police a lot.

mix-up n. A mistake, misunderstanding, or confused situation is a mix-up.

Waiter, I think there's been a mix-up. I asked you for a chicken salad sandwich, but you brought me a tuna salad sandwich.

342

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
piss off	piss off & pisses off	pissing off	pissed off	pissed off

1. piss... off p.v. [informal and offensive to some people] When you make people angry, you piss them off.

You'd better stop that! You're pissing me off.

Don't make a lot of noise when Mark is trying to study; it pisses him off.

pissed off part.adj. When you are angry, you are pissed off.

Melonie got really pissed off at Heather for borrowing her necklace without asking and then losing it.

rip off

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
rip off & rips off	ripping off	ripped off	ripped off	ripped off

1. rip ...off p.v. [informal] When you rip people off, you steal something from them, cheat them, or charge them more money for something than it is worth.

Don't do business with Marvin; he rips everyone off. Hank got ripped off by the drug dealer.

rip-off n. When someone steals something from you, cheats you, or charges too much for something, this is a rip-off.

I paid nine dollars to see that awful movie? What a rip-off! stress out

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stress out & stresses out	stressing out	stressed out	stressed out	stressed out

1. stress... out p.v. [informal] When people or things stress you out, they make you worried, nervous, or tense.

Having that new manager around watching me all the time is stressing me out.

Sally's sister has to take care of quadruplets all day without any help. That must stress her out.

stressed-out part.adj. When you are worried, nervous, or tense, you are stressed-out.

I had to make a speech at work today, and I was so stressed-out afterward that I took the rest of the day off.

EXERCISE 44a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The prison guard put Jake in a cell and \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Tom asked the barber to just cut his hair a little bit, but when he looked in the mirror, he could see that the barber was getting \_\_\_\_\_ and cutting his hair too short.

343

3. Erik promised me that he would come to my house to help me move some stuff this morning, but he still hasn't shown up. He's always doing things like that, and it really \_\_\_\_\_ me

4. If Janice doesn't pass her chemistry test tomorrow, she won't graduate with the rest of her class, and worrying about it so much is really \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I got \_\_\_\_\_ of school after I got caught cheating on the test.
6. The robbers \_\_\_\_\_ the shop owner so badly that she had to be hospitalized.
7. Add a cup of water and four eggs to the cake mix and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ well.
8. The night manager forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ when she left the restaurant.
9. The jewelry store \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ I paid \$5,000 for a diamond ring made of glass.
10. The teacher has two students with the same name, and she always \_\_\_\_\_ them

EXERCISE 44b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The thugs beat up. (the woman, her)
2. The hotel manager kicked out. (the rock group, them)
3. The cops are going to lock up. (the crook, her)

344

4. Mixing up is easy. (the twins, them)
5. Getting a tattoo must have pissed off. (your father, him)
6. The contractor was accused of ripping off. (homeowners, them)
7. All these problems are stressing out. (the staff, them)

EXERCISE 44c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom paid a mechanic to replace his car's generator with a new one, but the mechanic put a used generator in and still charged Tom for a new one. What did the mechanic do to Tom?
2. In Question 1, what would you call what the mechanic did to Tom?
3. If they don't stop making so much noise, the manager is going to tell them to leave. What is the manager going to do?
4. You locked all the doors and windows in your house. What did you do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe your house after you locked all the doors and windows?
6. Many cars look the same these days, and it's hard to tell them apart. If it is hard to tell them apart, what is it easy to do?

345

7. Scratching my brother's new car really made him angry. What did scratching my brother's new car do to my brother?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe my brother?
9. Linda is very confused about how to use her computer. How would you describe Linda?
10. Driving in all this traffic is making you nervous and tense. What is driving in all this traffic doing to you?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe yourself?
12. I let Charles use my skis, and when he returned them, they were in very bad condition. How were my skis when Charles returned them?
13. Sam's father was sent to prison for bank robbery. What happened to Sam's father?
14. In Question 13, how would you describe Sam's father?
15. Karen went to the store planning to buy a pair of shoes, but she ended up buying five pairs of shoes, three dresses, four blouses, and a new winter coat. What happened to Karen?
16. When the angry people caught the thief, they hit and kicked him again and again. What did the angry crowd do?
17. When you put all the ingredients in, you have to stir them so they will be combined. What do you have to do?



EXERCISE 44d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break into, 41      keep at, 38      keep off, 38      pay off, 37

bring up, 40      keep away, 38      keep on, 38      put up to, 34

cover up, 37      keep down, 38      keep to, 38      stick with, 40

help out, 33      keep from, 38      keep up, 38      take over, 39

1. The newspaper story claimed that the governor had taken a bribe and had then tried to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

2. That stock I bought really \_\_\_\_\_. It went up nearly 100 percent in only three months.

346

3. After the new manager \_\_\_\_\_ next month, you can expect a lot of changes.

4. Will you kids \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, please? I'm on the phone.

5. I told you to stop. If you \_\_\_\_\_ doing that, I'm going to get pissed off.

6. The police think the burglars may have \_\_\_\_\_ through the back door.

7. If you kids go outside to play, \_\_\_\_\_ from that pile of junk—it's full of broken glass.

8. I need to talk to Jerry about his bad breath, but I'm nervous about \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Dan is so sad about what happened that he can't \_\_\_\_\_ crying.

10. When I went to the car rental office, they had already rented all the good cars, and they \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a beat-up piece of junk.

11. The legislature passed a tough new law designed to \_\_\_\_\_ drunken drivers \_\_\_\_\_ the streets.

12. When you're depressed you should talk to people about what's troubling you, not \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.

13. I'm broke — do you think you could \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ till payday?

14. Nothing the inventor tried worked, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it until he solved the problem.

15. I can't believe that my daughter would steal money from me. That awful boyfriend of hers must have \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ it.

16. Jane did very well in her first semester of college. I hope she can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for the next four years.

347

45. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the verb turn

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb turn. In most cases, phrasal verbs with turn involve two options and a change from one option to the other or, when it is possible, a move closer to one option and farther away from the other. In other words, choosing either A or B or, when it is possible to be somewhere between A and B, moving closer to A and farther away from B, or vice versa.

present tense    -ing form      past tense      past participle

turn down      turn down & turns down      turning down      turned down      turned down

1. turn ...down p.v. When you turn down an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to decrease the level of what it is producing or doing. Turn up is the opposite of turn down.

Could you turn the radio down? I'm trying to sleep.

If it gets too cold, I'll turn down the air conditioner.



2. turn ... down p.v. When you deny a request, you turn down the request or turn down the person who has made the request.

I asked Nancy to go to the dance with me, but she turned me down.

My request for a pay raise was turned down.

Getting turned down every time I apply for a job is getting me down.

turn in

turn in & turns in      turning in      turned in      turned in

1. turn ... in (to) p.v. When you inform the police that certain people have committed crimes or tell the police where they are, you turn them in or turn them in to the police.

The escaped prisoner got tired of running and turned himself in.

When Jake told me that he had murdered Luis, I knew I had to turn him in to the police.

2. turn ... in (to) p.v. When you return something that was given to you by a person in authority, you turn that thing in or turn it in to a person in authority. Hand in is similar to turn in.

The police officer was ordered to turn in her badge after she was caught taking a bribe.

The delivery truck drivers have to turn their keys in to the dispatcher before they go home.

3. turn ... in (to) p.v. When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work to you, you turn it in or turn it in to the person who assigned the work. Hand in is similar to turn in.

348

Melan'ie asked her teacher if she could turn her project in late.

I have to finish this report and turn it in to the sales manager by tomorrow.

4. turn in p.v. When you go to bed, you turn in.

I'm really tired; I'm going to turn in early.

It's getting late; I'm turning in.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn into	turn into & turns into	turning into	turned into      turned into

1. turn into p.v. When something turns into something else, it becomes that thing.

It was cold and rainy this morning, but it turned into a nice day.

It's amazing that this small seed can turn into a huge tree.

2. turn ...into p.v. When you turn something into something else, you change it into that thing.

The Youngs are thinking of turning their house in the country into a hotel.

The children turned the big box into a playhouse.

turn off

turn off & turns off      turning off      turned off      turned off

1. turn ... off p.v. When you turn off an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. Turn on is the opposite of turn off. Switch off and shut off are similar to turn off. Would you turn the light off? I want to go to bed.

When I'm driving and have to wait for a long freight train to pass, I always turn my car off.

turned off part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is turned off. Turned on is the opposite of turned off. Switched off and shut off are similar to turned off.

I can't see anything — the lights are turned off.

2. turn ... off p.v. [informal] Something that turns you off offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that turns you off causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person. Turn on is the opposite of turn off.

When I met Dan I thought he was a nice guy, but his racist comments turned me off.

I got turned off when she lit a cigarette.

turned off part.adj. When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person, you are turned off. Turned on is the opposite of turned off.

What's wrong with Nicole? She was having a good time with Frank a little while ago, but now she seems kind of turned off.

349

turnoff n. Something that offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone is a turnoff.

Something about a person of the opposite sex that causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person is a turnoff. A turn-on is the opposite of a turnoff.

I don't like tattoos. To me they're a real turnoff.

3. turn off p.v. When you turn off a road or path that you are traveling on, you leave it and start to travel on another road or path. When a road or path leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction, it turns off,

Be careful you don't turn off the main road — you'll get lost.

The path to the cabin turns off just after the big tree stump.

turnoff n. A road or path that leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction is a turnoff.

We're lost — I think we should have taken that turnoff we passed a few miles back.

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn on	turn on	turns on	turning on	turned on

1. turn ... on p.v. When you turn on an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. Turn off is the opposite of turn on. Switch on is the same as turn on.

Can you turn the light on please? It's dark in here.

This October has been so warm that I haven't turned the heat on once yet.

turned on part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is turned on. Turned off is the opposite of turned on. Switched on is similar to turned on.

Be careful of the stove — it's turned on.

2. turn ... on p.v. [informal] Something that turns you on pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that turns you on causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person. Turn off is the opposite of turn on.

When I saw this house from the outside, I didn't think I would buy it, but the beautiful woodwork inside really turned me on.

Erik's blue eyes turn on his wife.

turned on part.adj. When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person, you are turned on. Turned off is the opposite of turned on.

Paul was really turned on after seeing all the beautiful women in the Victoria's Secret catalog.

350

turn-on n. Something that pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone is a turn-on. Something about a person of the opposite sex that causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person is a turn-on. A turnoff is the opposite of a turn-on.

I bought my wife an ankle bracelet for Valentines Day; I think they're a turn-on.

3. turn on p.v. When people or animals that you had good relations with turn on you, they stop being friendly and try to hurt you.

Lydia used to be my friend, but now she's telling people terrible things about me.

I wonder why she turned on me like that?

Wild animals don't make good pets. They can be friendly one minute and turn on you the next.

4. turn... on (to) p.v. [informal] When you turn people on to something, you tell them about something you think they will like or something that will help them.

Maria turned me on to a great Colombian restaurant.

This was a good book. Thanks for turning me on to it.

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn out	turn out	turn out & turns out	turning out	turned out

1. turn out p.v. [usually followed by "to be" plus an adjective, an verb plus a noun, or a complete sentence] When things or people turn out to be a certain way, it is discovered or considered that they are that way. When things or people turn out to be something, it is discovered or considered that they are that thing. When you say that it turns out (that) or turned out (that) and then make a statement of fact, you mean that this information, which is contrary to what you believed or expected, was discovered to be true.

I didn't think I would like my brother's new wife, but she turned out to be very nice.

Before I met Rusty's son, Danny, I assumed he had red hair like his father, but Danny turned out to have black hair.

I thought Sam bought a Mercedes-Benz, but it turns out that he bought a BMW.

I thought Sam bought a Mercedes-Benz, but it turned out that he bought a BMW.

2. turn out p.v. When something turns out, it becomes what you want it to become. When something turns out a certain way, it becomes that way.

Did the pictures you took at the wedding turn out?

The pictures turned out perfectly.

Your plan was excellent, but it didn't turn out well.

3. turn... out p.v. When people, companies, factories, workshops, and so on, turn out something, they manufacture it or produce it.

This new factory will turn out 50,000 units per year.

High schools in America are turning out people who can barely read.

351

4. turn out (for) p.v. When people turn out or turn out for an event, they attend or participate in the event. When people turn out to do something, they go to a place to do it.

Are you nuts? How many people do you think would turn out for an outdoor concert In the middle of winter?

Thousands of people turned out to see the Pope when he visited.

turnout n. The number of people who attend or participate in an event is the turnout.

Voter turnout for the election was only around 30 percent.

	present tense -ing form	past tense	past participle
turn over	turn over & turns over	turning over	turned over    turned over

1. turn ... over p.v. When you turn something over, you move it so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa. When something turns over, it moves so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa.

When one side of the steak is cooked, turn it over and cook the other side.

The driver was killed when his car turned over.

2. turn ... over (to) p.v. When you give something to someone because that person demands or requires it or because you are not its rightful owner, you turn it over or turn it over to that person. Hand over is similar to turn over.

The detective always turns the evidence from the crime scene over to the lab for analysis.

After the thieves are captured, the stolen items will be turned over to the rightful owners.

3. turn ... over (to) p.v. When the police or other authorities are looking for people and you take these people or transfer control of them to the police or authorities, you turn them over or turn them over to the police or authorities.

I caught a burglar in my basement, and I turned him over to the police.

The local police chief was relieved to turn the terrorist over to the FBI.

4. turn over p.v. When employees of a company leave their jobs and are replaced by new employees, they turn over.

Conditions at the factory were so bad that employees turned over at a high rate. We have a very stable work force in our plant. Employees turn over very slowly.

turnover n. The rate at which employees of a company leave and are replaced by new employees is the turnover. The new personnel manager said her top priority would be reducing the high turnover.

352

5. turn over p.v. When a business turns over something that it sells, it continually sells it and replaces it with new merchandise.

We're turning over forty cases of bananas a week in this supermarket.

Snowmobiles and skis turn over very slowly in the summer.

turnover n. How much money a business has made in a certain time period is its turnover.

The company's annual turnover increased by 36 percent compared to the previous year.

	present tense -ing form	past tense	past participle
turn up	turn up & turns up	turning up	turned up    turned up

1. turn ...up p.v. When you turn up an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to increase the level of what it is producing or doing. Turn down is the opposite of turn up.

Will you turn up the TV? I can't hear it.

It was freezing in here last night, so I turned up the heat.

2. turn... up p.v. When you turn up something, you find it or learn of it as a result of an investigation or search.

When something turns up, it is found or is learned of as a result of an investigation or search.

The police turned up enough evidence to convict Jake of murder.

Despite a thorough search, the murder weapon still hasn't turned up.

3. turn up p.v. When people or things turn up at a place, they appear there. Show up is similar to turn up.

It's hard to plan a picnic when I don't know how many people will turn up.

Every few years my worthless brother turns up at my door asking for money.

EXERCISE 45a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I thought going camping would be a lot of fun, but it sure didn't \_\_\_\_\_ that way.

2. It's 2:30 in the morning — don't you think you ought to \_\_\_\_\_ soon?

3. Heather was sort of interested in Tom, but his childish behavior \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The store manager said that she usually \_\_\_\_\_ only twenty or twenty-five units per month.

353

5. Jake thought Hank was his best friend, but Hank \_\_\_\_\_ Jake and now they're enemies.

6. All the medical students must \_\_\_\_\_ their lab equipment \_\_\_\_\_ before leaving the lab.

7. Any spies caught behind enemy lines will be \_\_\_\_\_ to the military for questioning.

8. The investigation \_\_\_\_\_ evidence of corruption in City Hall.

9. This old house looks pretty bad now, but with enough time and money, you could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ something really nice.

10. I want to watch TV; please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

11. The volume is too low; please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

12. Now the volume is too high; please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

13. There's nothing good on TV; please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

14. The first thing I noticed when I met my wife for the first time was her beautiful smile; it really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

15. Employees \_\_\_\_\_ at a very high rate in this industry.

16. Not many people are likely to \_\_\_\_\_ for the parade in this miserable weather.

17. The boy was given a reward for \_\_\_\_\_ the bag of money that he found in the street.

18. To get to Uncle John's house, you have to \_\_\_\_\_ the main road after you cross the bridge and drive north for three miles.

19. Mark knows a lot about wine. He's \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ to some excellent wines from California.

20. My supervisor \_\_\_\_\_ my request to be transferred to San Diego.

21. The first few chapters of this novel were a little boring, but now that I'm near the end, it's \_\_\_\_\_ to be a pretty good book.

22. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet \_\_\_\_\_. I want to read the label on the back.

354

23. A huge crowd is expected to \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport to welcome the returning Stanley Cup champions.

24. This company has been \_\_\_\_\_ first-rate merchandise for a hundred years.

25. I told the teacher that I'd been in the hospital and wouldn't be able to \_\_\_\_\_ my project on time.

26. We've had one problem after another — this is \_\_\_\_\_ to be a bad day.

27. When Jake told his mother that he had murdered someone, she told him he had to \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 45b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Caterpillars become butterflies. What do caterpillars do?
2. Dan appeared at his uncle's funeral. What did Dan do?
3. Frank was thinking of asking Jane for a date, but when he saw her smoking one cigarette after another, he changed his mind. What did Jane's smoking do to Frank?
4. In Question 3, what does Frank think smoking is?
5. In Question 3, how did Frank feel when he saw Jane smoking?
6. Whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume, I feel romantic. What does the perfume do to me?
7. In Question 6, what do I think the perfume is?
8. In Question 6, how do I feel whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume?
9. You're changing the controls of the heater to make it warmer. What are you doing?
10. The rate at which old employees are replaced with new employees in my company is very low. What is very low at my company?
11. This factory manufactures 25,000 cars every year. What does the factory do?
12. Nicole didn't change the controls of her radio to make it louder. What didn't Nicole do?
13. The detective asked every bank employee a lot of questions about the missing money, but she hasn't discovered anything. What hasn't the detective done?
14. After the gas station went out of business, it was bought and changed into a Chinese restaurant. What happened to the gas station?
15. Sally wanted to dye her hair red, but it became orange. What did Sally's hair do?
16. Karen's father asked her if he could borrow enough money to pay his property taxes, and Karen couldn't say no to him. What couldn't Karen do?
17. Todd's company will probably make \$4 million this year. What will Todd's company probably do this year?
18. Ned hasn't given his paper to his teacher. What hasn't Ned done?
19. Lydia knows that her brother robbed a bank, but she's not going to tell the police. What isn't Lydia going to do to her brother?
20. So many people attended the political rally that there wasn't enough room in the auditorium. Why wasn't there enough room at the political rally?
21. In Question 20, the number of people who attended the rally was large. What was large?
22. David was too lazy to wash the rug, so he put the dirty side on the bottom and the clean side on the top. What did David do to the rug?

EXERCISE 45c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_



EXERCISE 45d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

beat up, 44    get by, 42    get over, 42    lock up, 44  
 carry away, 44    get down, 42    get up, 42    run up, 43  
 get back, 42    get into, 42    gross out, 43    stop off, 43  
 get behind, 42    get out, 42    head toward, 43    try on, 43

1. I lost a very expensive gold watch, and I'll be very surprised if I ever \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I had dinner with some friends, and we \_\_\_\_\_ a \$500 tab.
3. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ to see your parents in Alaska lately?
4. I should have \_\_\_\_\_ these pants \_\_\_\_\_ before buying them — they're too small.
5. Carlos was hitting his brother Alex, so Alex said to Carlos, "\_\_\_\_\_ of here!"
6. I called my brother in Miami and told him that I was leaving Boston at 8:40 in the morning and that I should \_\_\_\_\_ there around 1:00 in the afternoon.
7. I wish you'd chew with your mouth closed — you're \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Our flight won't \_\_\_\_\_ Santa Fe until after midnight.
9. After I leave Texas, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ Mississippi.
10. Karen's expecting me for dinner tonight at her house way out in the suburbs, but my car is in the shop. I don't know how I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ there.
11. The night manager has to leave early tonight, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ for him.
12. Hank had a fight with a guy in a bar and got \_\_\_\_\_ pretty badly.
13. I had a bad day at work, so I \_\_\_\_\_ at a bar for a drink before going home.
14. Sofia is having a lot of trouble in her history class and is \_\_\_\_\_ further and further \_\_\_\_\_.
15. After her husband died, she had a hard time \_\_\_\_\_ it.
16. You can use my credit card to buy a few things, but don't get \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 46. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of phrasal verbs with the particle into

As we saw in Section 6, three-word phrasal verbs are normally accented on the second, or middle, particle whether they are separable or nonseparable. This also applies to phrasal verbs that convert in to into when they are used with an object. Although these verbs are not made up of three words, recall that into is actually a combination of the particles in and to — two words written as one. For this reason, it is the first syllable of into that is accented:

The speakers are built **INTO** the wall.

This is also true of phrasal verbs using into that do not have an in version:

I bumped **INTO** an old friend.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
build in	build in & builds in	building in	built in    built in

1. build ...into p.v. When you build something in or build something into something else, you put it in the item you are making during its construction or assembly rather than adding it later.

I told the builder that I wanted him to build some shelves in.

In the past, FM radios weren't built into cars — you had to add one later if you wanted one.



built-in part.adj. When something has been put into something else during its construction or assembly, rather than being added later, it is built-in.

The sound from the stereo goes to built-in speakers in every room of the house.

bump into

bump into & bumps into      bumping into      bumped into      bumped into

1. bump into p.v. When you bump into things or people, you accidentally hit them with your body.

I couldn't see where I was going in the dark, and I bumped into the door.

Would you please move these boxes — I keep bumping into them.

2. bump into p.v. When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you bump into them. Run into is the same as bump into.

We bumped into Sarah at the mall today.

Bumping into one of my neighbors while I was in Rome sure was a surprise.

358

present tense -ing form      past tense      past participle  
con into      con into & cons into      conning into      conned into      conned into

1. con ...into p.v. [informal] When you con people into something or con people into doing something, you persuade them to do it by fooling or deceiving them, Trick into is similar to con into.

They weren't sure that it was a good idea to give all their money to Marv'm, but he conned them into it.

That crooked mechanic tried to con me into paying for a lot of repairs my car didn't need.

con out of

con out of & cons out of      conning out of      conned out of      conned out of

1. con ... out of p.v. [informal] When you con people out of something, you per-suade them to give it to you by fooling or deceiving them.

Marvin conned them out of their life savings.

That crooked mechanic tried to con me out of \$547.

freak out

freak out & freaks out      freaking out      freaked out      freaked out

1. freak... out p.v. [informal] When you freak out, you become very upset or very angry. When you freak other people out, you cause them to become very upset or very angry.

Melanie freaked out when she learned that her husband had been arrested for murder.

I wish you would take that Halloween mask off— you're freaking me out.

make for

make for & makes for      making for      made for      made for

1. make for p.v. When something causes another thing, situation, or event to have a certain quality or characteristic, it makes for the other thing, situation, or event.

Beer, pizza, football, and the kids staying with their grandparents make for a perfect Sunday afternoon.

Alcohol and teenage drivers make for trouble.

2. make for p.v. [informal] When you make for a place, you go there in a hurry.

After the robbery, the bank robbers made for the border.

The enemy soldiers are getting closer — let's make for the hills.

talk into

talk into & talks into      talking into      talked into      talked into

1. talk... into p.v. When you talk people into something or talk people into doing something, you persuade them to do it.

359

My father didn't want to let me use his car Friday night, but I talked him into it.

This museum is really boring. I wish I hadn't let you talk me into coming here with you.

talk out of

talk out of & talks out of      talking out of      talked out of      talked out of

1. talk... out of p.v. When you talk people out of something or talk people out of doing something, you persuade them not to do it.

That man was going to jump off the building, but the police officer talked him out of it.

Erik's parents talked him out of changing his major from business to philosophy.

EXERCISE 46a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My daughter is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ getting her a pony, but I keep telling her we can't afford one.
2. When I ordered my computer, I had them \_\_\_\_\_ some extra memory.
3. It was a nice surprise to \_\_\_\_\_ Aunt Kathy today. I hadn't seen her in years.
4. Don't tell your mother you're going to shave your head — she'll \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Joe says he's going to quit school, and we can't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Their sleazy son-in-law \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ lending him \$14,000.
7. It was so dark last night that I \_\_\_\_\_ a tree and broke my nose.
8. Nancy and Tom don't have anything in common — that doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ a happy marriage.
9. Don't trust Marvin — he'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your last penny.
10. When the enemy soldiers attacked, we \_\_\_\_\_ the woods.

360

EXERCISE 46b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Karen is trying to persuade me to help her paint her house. What is Karen trying to do?
2. Francisco unexpectedly met Raul downtown a couple of days ago. What did Francisco do?
3. That lawyer is lying to you and trying to persuade you to give him everything you own. What is the lawyer trying to do?
4. Having both of my ex-wives at the party will make the evening very uncomfortable. What will having both of my ex-wives at the party do?
5. That dishonest guy deceived my Aunt Kathy to get her to sell her house for a lot less than it's worth. What did the dishonest guy do to my Aunt Kathy?
6. Carmen is upset and very nervous because she can't find her children at the shopping center. What is Carmen doing?
7. When my house was constructed, a shelf for a TV was made in the wall. What was done to the wall?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the shelf?
9. Bob has decided to quit his job, and no one can persuade him not to. What can no one do to Bob?

EXERCISE 46c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

361

EXERCISE 46d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blowout, 43    checkout, 41    mix-up, 44    takeover, 39  
break-in, 41    comeback, 40    pickup, 39    wipeout, 39  
check-in, 41    lockup, 44    run-up, 43

1. The guy that got arrested didn't have enough money for bail, so he was put in the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The baseball player had a few bad years, but last year he made an amazing \_\_\_\_\_ and had his best year ever.
3. Not one person was left alive after the battle — it was a complete \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is two hours before the flight.
5. The hotel's \_\_\_\_\_ time is 11:00 A.M.
6. There was a tragic \_\_\_\_\_ at the hospital — a patient's healthy left kidney was removed instead of his diseased right kidney.
7. The detective asked the store owner for a complete list of items stolen during the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Is this a \_\_\_\_\_ or a delivery?
9. After the military \_\_\_\_\_, hundreds of people were executed.
10. Unfortunately, I sold my house before the big \_\_\_\_\_ in real estate prices.
11. The truck driver was killed in an accident after she had a \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway.

EXERCISE 46e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blow off, 40    give out, 43    lock up, 44    stick with, 40  
bring up, 40    go away, 40    piss off, 44    stress out, 44  
burst out, 40    kick out, 44    shut up, 43    turn in, 45  
get by, 42    let in, 41    stand for, 34    turn into, 45

1. Sooner or later he'll get tired of running from the police, and he'll \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.

362

2. I \_\_\_\_\_ my children \_\_\_\_\_ to be honest.
3. When we leave our summer home to go back to the city, we always \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ securely.
4. I took three aspirin, but this headache still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Do you know what "Ph.D." \_\_\_\_\_?
6. I usually check my work pretty carefully. I don't know how this mistake \_\_\_\_\_ me.

7. Worrying about how I'm going to find the money to pay my taxes is really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm tired of listening to my brother talk about winning four million dollars in the lottery. I wish he would just \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Those new computers are really fast, but I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the one I have; it's fine for writing letters.
10. The tennis player had to retire when his elbow \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I'm going to talk to my husband about \_\_\_\_\_ the garage \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment for my mother.
12. Joe promised that he'd help me fix my car yesterday, but he never came; he just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Joe does that sort of thing all the time, and it's very rude. He really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The door was locked, so I knocked on it again and again until someone \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
15. What did Nancy do to get herself \_\_\_\_\_ of school?
16. When I heard about the crazy thing that Nancy had done at school, I \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.

363

#### 47. FOCUS ON: particles used without verbs

The particles of many phrasal verbs, especially phrasal verbs that relate to physical movement, are frequently used alone with a form of be. This is very common in conversation when the verb has already been stated at least once and does not need to be repeated:

Customer: Have you run out of coffee? Store clerk: We're out of regular coffee, but we're not out of instant.

Marsha: When do you have to move out of your apartment? Nancy: I have to be out by next Wednesday.

Jim: Did you turn the air conditioner on? Bob: No, it was on when I came in.

Mother: Has your sister woken up yet? Susie: No, she's still not up.

Using the particle without a verb is also common when a phrasal verb can be understood from the context.

Sometimes, only one verb is obvious:

Ra u l: Are you through ?

Todd: No, I won't be through until after 4:00.

If this conversation occurred at a place of employment, the phrasal verb could only be get through. But often, in a particular situation, more than one verb might be understood, but to the speakers it is not important or necessary to be specific about which one:

Carlos: Is Karen in?

Paul: No, she isn't.

If this conversation occurred in an office building, several verbs might be understood: come in, go in, get in, (be) let in.

## A U L A S P A R T I C U L A R E S

	present tense -ing form	past tense	past participle
brush up	brush up & brushes up	brushing up	brushed up

1. brush up (on) p.v. When you brush up or brush up on something, you study or practice a skill or subject you used to know but have forgotten or partly forgotten.

It's been a long time since I studied algebra, but I'm going to need it if I go back to school to study for my master's degree, so I'd better brush up.

Frank's going to Peru next month, so he's been brushing up on his Spanish.

564

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come	income in & comes in	coming in	came in come in

1. come in into p.v. When people or things enter a place, room, house, and so on that you are in, they come in or come into it. Go out is the opposite of come in.

Welcome to my house. Please come in.

The burglar came into the house through the back door.

2. come in p.v. When a train, bus, airplane, or ship comes in, it arrives. Get in is similar to come in.

Do you know when the train from Kankakee comes in?

David's plane hasn't come in yet.

3. come in p.v. When people arrive at the place where they work, they come in. Get in is similar to come in.

The manager is angry with Linda because she comes in late every day.

I called to tell the boss that I was sick and wouldn't be coming in.

4. come in p.v. When something that a store will sell comes in, it is delivered to the store.

Let's go shopping at Macy's tomorrow; the summer clothes have come in.

I couldn't buy that new book I wanted; it hasn't come in yet.

5. come in p.v. When a thing or skill comes in handy, it is something useful that you like to have available when you need it.

When I travel, I always take a small sewing kit with me; it really comes in handy if a button falls off.

I don't know how to speak Japanese, but knowing how to say the numbers and "please" and "thank you" when I was in Japan sure came in handy.

cut back

cut back & cuts back	cutting back	cut back	cut back
----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

1. cut back (on) p.v. When you cut back, or cut back on the amount of money you spend, you spend less.

The President said he was against cutting back on spending for education.

My father said that we're spending too much and have to cut back.

cutback n. A cutback is a reduction in the amount of money you spend on something.

The people who work on the air force base are worried that they'll lose their jobs because of military spending cutbacks.

2. cut back (on) p.v. When you cut back or cut back on something that you consume, you use it less. When you cut back or cut back on something that you do, you do it less. Cut down is similar to cut back.

Mark hasn't been able to quit smoking, but he has cut back a bit.

You're getting a little overweight; maybe you should cut back on sweets.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
move in	move in & moves in	moving in	moved in moved in

1. move in into p.v. When you move in or move into a place, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live. Move out is the opposite of move in into.

The landlord said we could move right in if we want to.

Erik's moving into a bigger apartment next week.

2. move... into p.v. When you move people in or move them into a place, you bring their furniture and other personal possessions into a place where they will live. When you move things in or move them into a place, you take them in. Move out is the opposite of move into.

The movers moved me in in less than two hours.

Moving all this furniture into a fifth-floor apartment isn't going to be easy.

3. move in (with) p.v. When you move in or move in with people, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live.

Bill moved out of his house for a while when he separated from his wife, but yesterday he moved back in.

My Aunt Kathy might move in with her son and his family.

move out

move out & moves out      moving out      moved out      moved out

1. move out (of) p.v. When you move out or move out of a place, you take your furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where you lived. Move into is the opposite of move out.

Could you help me move out? I have to be out by the end of the month.

Mr. and Mrs. Baker moved out of their big house and into a smaller place after their children grew up.

1. move... out (of) p.v. When you move people out or move them out of a place, you take their furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where they lived. When you move things out or move them out of a place, you take them out. Move into is the opposite of move out.

One of our roommates wasn't paying his rent, so we moved his stuff out while he was at work.

The company had a sale to try to move some merchandise out of the warehouse.

366

present tense   -ing form      past tense      past participle

pull out   pull out & pulls out      pulling out      pulled out      pulled out

1. pull out (of) p.v. When a car, truck, or other vehicle pulls out or pulls out of a parking space, it leaves the place where it was parked and starts driving in the street. When the drivers of cars, trucks, or other vehicles pull out or pull out of a parking space, they leave the place where they were parked and start driving in the street.

The accident happened when the Ford pulled out in front of the Chevy.

You should fasten your seat belt before you pull out of the parking space.

2. pull out (of) p.v. When you pull out or pull out of an agreement or arrangement, you leave it because you decide that you do not want to participate any longer.

The French company reconsidered its agreement to build a plant in Canada and decided to pull out.

I wish I hadn't pulled out of that business deal. Now everyone who stayed in is making a lot of money.

3. pull... out (of) p.v. When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, they pull out or are pulled out. Go in is the opposite of pull out.

When Sergeant Jones saw the enemy soldiers getting closer, he ordered his men to pull out.

General Johnston pulled all the troops out of the occupied territory.

pullout n. When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, a pullout takes place.

General Johnston ordered an immediate pullout of all troops in the occupied territory.

put in

put in & puts in      putting in      put in      put in



1. put ...in into p.v. When you put something in or put something into a container, storage place, or building, you place it inside. Take out is the opposite of put in into.

Please put your clothes in the closet.

The clerk put the bottle into the bag and gave me a receipt.

2. put... in into p.v. When you put money in or put money into a bank or an account at a bank, you deposit the money. Put in into is the opposite of take out.

I'm going to the bank today. How much money do you think I should put in?

We put \$ 10,000 into our savings account.

3. put... in into p.v. When you put people in or put them into a prison, hospital, school, or other institution, you take them there or require them to go there.

Jake got put in jail for twenty years. Marvin should be put into a mental institution.

367

4. put... in into p.v. When you put time or effort in or put time or effort into something, you spend time and work hard to accomplish it.

At the Christmas party, the manager thanked his employees for all the work they had put in.

I put a lot of time into becoming a doctor.

5. put... in into p.v. When you put money in or put money into something, you contribute money to help pay for something or as an investment you hope will return a profit.

When the check came for dinner, we each put \$25 in.

I've already put \$100,000 into this business. I hope it starts making money soon.

6. put ...in in p.v. When you construct or install something in a building, you put it in.

We're having new carpeting put in next week.

Erik and Nancy are thinking about putting in central air conditioning.

7. put... in in p.v. When you cause people to be in a situation, position, or condition, you put them in that situation, position, or condition.

You've put Jim in a very awkward situation.

Margaret Cummings was put in charge of the sales department.

present tense • ing form      past tense      past participle  
run out run out & runs out      running out      ran out run out

1. run out (of) p.v. When people or things run out or run out of a place, room, building, and so on, they leave it very quickly. Run in into is the opposite of run out.

There's Sofia across the street — run out and ask her to come over here.

When I opened the door, the dog ran out of the house.

2. run out (of) p.v. When you do not have any more of something because you have used, consumed, or sold all of it, you run out or run out of it.

I'm sorry I can't give you sugar for your coffee — I've run out.

Sam was late to work this morning because he ran out of gas.

3. run out p.v. When something is completely used, consumed, or sold, it runs out.

I played poker last night, and for a while I was ahead by \$3,000. But then my luck ran out, and I ended up losing it all.



My brother is too lazy to look for a job. He asks me for money, and when the money runs out he comes back for more.

EXERCISE 47a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We have a lot of shopping to do, but the store closes in twenty minutes, so let's try to finish before we \_\_\_\_\_ of time.

368

2. Michael \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time \_\_\_\_\_ getting his pilot's license.

3. The government threatened to \_\_\_\_\_ of the cease-fire agreement after the latest terrorist bombing.

4. This little flashlight on my key chain \_\_\_\_\_ handy when it's dark outside.

5. I haven't stopped drinking completely, but I have \_\_\_\_\_ way \_\_\_\_\_.

6. When Timmy's mother saw him outside throwing rocks at cars, she \_\_\_\_\_ and stopped him.

7. We bought a house in Milwaukee, and we're \_\_\_\_\_ it next month.

8. Instead of spending all your money, maybe you should \_\_\_\_\_ some of it \_\_\_\_\_ the bank.

9. I'm starting a new job as a secretary next week, so I need to \_\_\_\_\_ on my typing.

10. After my mother died, I asked my father to \_\_\_\_\_ with me.

11. I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train \_\_\_\_\_.

12. All these problems are \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a bad mood.

13. How much money are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ this investment fund?

14. We're very busy at work, so my boss asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ early tomorrow.

15. I need to find a new place to live soon. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ of the place I'm in now by the end of the month.

16. These computers are being sold at 15 percent off the regular price for three days only, so hurry before time \_\_\_\_\_.

17. Linda hired a carpenter to \_\_\_\_\_ some shelves \_\_\_\_\_ her son's room.

18. We lost the key for the front door, so everyone's been \_\_\_\_\_ through the back door all day.

19. Since Jim lost his job, we've had to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot on our spending.

20. The troops were \_\_\_\_\_ of Vietnam and sent back to the United States.

369

21. I bought a new bed for Susie, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ her old bed \_\_\_\_\_ of her room and into her brother's room.

22. After my surgery, I was \_\_\_\_\_ the intensive care unit.

23. The store clerk says the new computer I want is supposed to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

24. My couch is huge — there's no way I can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ my new place without help.

25. Erik \_\_\_\_\_ too much salt \_\_\_\_\_ the soup, and now it tastes terrible.

26. Safe drivers always look both ways before they \_\_\_\_\_ and drive away.

EXERCISE 47b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom is going to live with his Uncle John. What is Tom going to do?

2. The government is spending less on the military. What is the government doing?

3. In Question 2, what would you call this reduction in military spending?

4. I can't figure out where the mosquitoes are entering my house. What can't I figure out?

5. My plane didn't arrive on time. What didn't my plane do?
6. Bob's taking all his furniture out of his old apartment. What is Bob doing?
7. You spent all your money, and now you're broke. What did you do?
8. Nancy's truck was parked, but now she's driving it into the street. What is Nancy doing?
9. Sarah shouldn't have built a pool in such a small backyard. What shouldn't Sarah have done?
10. Daniela hasn't studied Italian since high school, but she's been studying it again lately because she's going to Italy soon. What is Daniela doing?
11. Charles might change his mind and decide not to participate in a business deal. What might Charles do?

12. Your dentist told you that you should eat less candy. What did your dentist tell you?
13. Ned is going to arrive at work late tomorrow. What is Ned going to do?
14. Jane is working very hard to learn Chinese. What is Jane doing?
15. The basketball game ended before Jim's team could score enough points to win it. Why didn't Jim's team win the game?
16. Joe hasn't placed his clothes in the washing machine. What hasn't Joe done?
17. Tom asked Sally when she was taking her furniture into her new apartment. What did Tom ask Sally?
18. Bill deposits \$1,000 every month in his checking account. What does Bill do every month?

EXERCISE 47c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bump into, 46    get down, 42    kick out, 43    stop off, 43  
 con into, 46    get into, 42    make for, 46    talk into, 46  
 con out of, 46    get out, 42    rip off, 44    talk out of, 46  
 freak out, 46    get up, 42    shut up, 43    try on, 43

1. Alfonso must have \_\_\_\_\_ thirty pairs of pants before picking one out.
2. Bob got \_\_\_\_\_ of the bar after he started a fight.
3. You can't trust Marvin at all. He \_\_\_\_\_ everyone he does business with.
4. I can't reach those books on the top shelf. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ for me, please?
5. That sneaky real estate agent \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ selling her my house for a lot less than it was worth.
6. My parents live between my job and my home, so sometimes on the way home from work I \_\_\_\_\_ for a visit.
7. Sam's wife didn't want to go camping with him, but he finally \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ it.

371

8. My father-in-law was \_\_\_\_\_ \$800 by a house painter who took the money but never came back to start painting the house.
9. When I was a child, my mother was on drugs and my father was in jail. That situation didn't \_\_\_\_\_ a very happy childhood.
10. Carlos \_\_\_\_\_ the table, and a glass of wine fell on the floor.
11. All you ever do is talk, talk, talk. Will you please \_\_\_\_\_?
12. It sure was hot yesterday. It must have \_\_\_\_\_ to 100 degrees.
13. Our daughter has decided to get her nose pierced, and there's no way we can \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ it.
14. I found my old army uniform in the attic, and I can still \_\_\_\_\_ it even though it's twenty-five years old.

15. My teacher caught me cheating on the test today, and he said he's going to call my parents tomorrow to tell them. How am I going to \_\_\_\_\_ of this mess?

16. I saw a guy today who looked exactly like my dead brother. It really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

48. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect passive phrasal verbs

In Section 43, we discussed the use of several modal and semimodal auxiliaries in the present perfect. These same modals and semimodals are commonly used in passive sentences. The modal or semimodal is followed by have or the contraction 've, been, and the past participle:

could + have + been + past participle would + have + been + past participle should + have + been + past participle  
have to + have + been + past participle must + have + been + past participle might + have + been + past participle  
may + have + been + past participle

Let's compare a present perfect active sentence containing a modal with a present perfect passive sentence containing a modal:

372

active: Jane might have switched on the light. passive: The light might have been switched on.

As we have seen, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence. Also, there is no object in the passive sentence, so the pas-sive phrasal verb cannot be separated. The object of the active sentence can be used in a by phrase:

active: Jane might have switched on the light. passive: The light might have been switched on (by Jane).

And once again we see that it is not always easy to distinguish between a past participle:

The burglar alarm must have been switched off

(by the night manager because he's the only one with a key).

and a participle adjective:

The burglar alarm must have been switched off (because if it had been on, everyone in the neighborhood would have heard it when the burglars smashed the window of the jewelry store).

present tense -ing form past tense past participle  
close down

English  
AULAS PARTICULARES

close down & closes down closing down closed down closed down

1. close... down p.v. When you close down a business or a business is closed down, it closes permanently or for a long time.

The restaurant was closed down by the health department.

The ski resort will close down for the summer on May 1.

knock out

knock out & knocks out knocking out knocked out knocked out

1. knock... out p.v. When you knock people out, you hit them hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness. When people are knocked out, they are hit by someone or something hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness.

The boxer knocked his opponent out with a blow to the head.

David fell and hit his head on the sidewalk so hard that it knocked him out.

knockout n. A hit hard enough to cause someone to lose consciousness is a knockout.

At the count often the referee declared a knockout.

2. knock... out p.v. If something knocks you out, it impresses or surprises you a lot.

373

Tom's new house is fabulous! It really knocked me out.

The Youngs' daughter is only twelve and she's already in college? That just knocks me out.

knockout n. A knockout is something that impresses or surprises you a lot. Have you seen Erik's new girlfriend? She's a real knockout.

3. knock... out p.v. When you try very hard to please other people, you knock yourself out or knock yourself out to do something.

Marsha's Thanksgiving dinner was fabulous. She really knocked herself out.

Thanks for inviting me to spend the weekend with you, but don't knock yourself out — I don't mind sleeping on the couch.

4. knock... out p.v. When soldiers knock out a piece of the enemy's equipment, they destroy it or damage it enough so that it no longer operates.

The enemy radar installation was knocked out by a 500-pound bomb.

I can't contact headquarters. I think our communications system might have been knocked out during the attack.

present tense -ing form

past tense

past participle

look down on

look down on & looks down on looking down on

looked down on

looked down on

1. look down on p.v. When you look down on people, you consider them to be less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

Some people look down on Hank because his father was in prison.

Looking down on people because of things they have no control over is stupid.

look up to

look up to & looks up to

looking up to

looked up to

looked up to

1. look up to p.v. When you look up to people, you admire and respect them.

I've always looked up to my father because of his honesty and concern for others.

You should look up to people who have overcome difficulties to become successful.

put back

put back & puts back

putting back

put back

put back

1. put... back p.v. When you put something back, you return it to where it was before.

After you finish listening to my CDs, please put them back.

Susie, I told you we're eating dinner in ten minutes, so put that cookie right back!

2. put... back p.v. When something slows the development or progress of project, it puts the project back or it puts the people involved in the project back.

The hurricane put the hotel construction project back by at least three months.

I had planned to finish college last year, but being hospitalized for several months put me back.

374

3. put... back p.v. When you put back the date that you plan to do or complete something by, you postpone it.

The closing on the house I'm selling might have to be put back if the buyers can't get their loan approved in time.

The graduation date will have to be put back if the teachers strike doesn't end soon.

4. put... back p.v. [informal] When you put back alcoholic beverages, you drink a lot of them.

Did you see how much David was drinking last night? He sure can put it back.

I'm not surprised he has a hangover — he must have put back half a bottle of tequila.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
switch off	switch off & switches off	switching off	switched off

1. switch ...off p.v. When you switch off an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. Turn off is similar to switch off. Switch on is the opposite of switch off.

Try to remember to switch off the lights when you leave the room.

I switched the engine off and got out of the car.

switched off part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is switched off. Switched on is the opposite of switched off. Turned off is similar to switched off.

Last night the light in the hallway was switched off, and I fell down the stairs. switch on

switch on & switches on	switching on	switched on	switched on
-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. switch ...on p.v. When you switch on an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. Turn on is similar to switch on. Switch off is the opposite of switch on.

Push this button to switch the computer on.

The sign should have been switched on by the manager in the morning.

switched on part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is switched on. Switched off is the opposite of switched on. Turned on is similar to switched on.

When I drove by the restaurant, I noticed that the sign wasn't switched on.

throw out

throw out & throws out	throwing out	threw out	thrown out
------------------------	--------------	-----------	------------

1. throw... out p.v. When you throw something out, you dispose of it by putting it in the wastebasket, trash, and so on. Throw away is the same as throw out.

I can't find some important papers, and I think they might've been accidentally thrown out.

Don't throw that newspaper out — I haven't read it yet.

375

2. throw... out (of) p.v. When you throw people out or throw people out of a group, place, building, or room, you order them to leave. Kick out is similar to throw out.

Frank started a fight and got thrown out of the bar.

I haven't paid the rent in six months, and I'm worried that the sheriff will come and throw us out.

EXERCISE 48a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We might \_\_\_\_\_ our wedding \_\_\_\_\_ until September so that Rosa's parents can attend.
2. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the lights \_\_\_\_\_ — I'm trying to sleep.
3. Bob was \_\_\_\_\_ when the baseball hit him in the head.
4. When I was a little girl, I \_\_\_\_\_ my grandfather and wanted to be like him.
5. Sam must have \_\_\_\_\_ three gin and tonics in about a half an hour last night.
6. It's cold in here — the air conditioner shouldn't have been \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Mrs. Flores was so angry with her husband that she \_\_\_\_\_ him right \_\_\_\_\_ of the house.
8. My wife thinks I forgot our anniversary again, so she's going to be \_\_\_\_\_ when I give her this gold bracelet.
9. The blizzard has \_\_\_\_\_ our efforts to find the crashed plane, but we'll keep looking until we find it.
10. I'm tired of looking at all this junk — why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Citizens of the neighborhood have demanded that the noisy bar be \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ anyone who comes from the poor side of town.
13. If you're finished with these tools, \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The soldier used a bazooka to \_\_\_\_\_ an enemy tank.

376

15. Timmy's mother planned a really nice birthday party for Timmy and all his friends. She really \_\_\_\_\_ herself \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 48b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The health department should close down. (the restaurant, it)
2. Ali's left hook knocked out. (Joe, him)
3. General Johnston had to put back. (the attack, it)
4. Have you switched on? (the TV, it)
5. Are you going to switch off? (the lights, them)
6. Throwing out is going to be a big job. (all this junk, it)

377

EXERCISE 48c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The judge's decision has slowed our fight for justice. What has the judge's decision done to us?
2. Jim respects his uncle and wants to be like him. What does Jim do to his uncle?
3. Todd was really amazed at how good Erik's new book is. What did Erik's book do to Todd?
4. In Question 3, what would Todd call Erik's book?
5. You pushed the button on the remote, and now the TV is on. What did you do to the TV?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the TV after I pushed the button on the remote?
7. The lights were on, but they're not on anymore. What must have been done to the lights?



8. In Question 7, how would you describe the lights now?
9. The bar owner will be ordered to close his bar permanently. What will be done to the bar?
10. Charles thinks people from that part of town are low-class. What does Charles do to people from that part of town?
11. Joe would have been ordered to leave his house if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments. What would have happened to Joe if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments?

EXERCISE 48d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

carryout, 28    lockout, 29    turnoff, 45    turnover, 45  
cutback, 47    make-up, 23    turn-on, 45    rip-off, 44  
falling-out, 32    pullout, 47    turnout, 45    runaround, 40

1. Heather kind of liked Ann's brother until she saw him smoking. To her that's a big \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The Senate voted against a \_\_\_\_\_ in spending for AIDS research.
3. Lydia doesn't want anyone to take pictures of her without her \_\_\_\_\_ on.
4. Bill thinks that Nicole's short skirt is a \_\_\_\_\_.

378

5. The soldiers were ordered to prepare for a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I hate cooking, so we eat \_\_\_\_\_ food almost every night.
7. I've gone to every office in City Hall about my problem, but no will help me. They just give me the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The company's high \_\_\_\_\_ rate is one reason why it lost money last year.
9. Can you believe the frames for these glasses cost \$300? What a \_\_\_\_\_.
10. One thief broke into the store while the other stayed outside as a \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the parade would have been a lot bigger if it hadn't been raining.
12. George had a \_\_\_\_\_ with his brother and hasn't spoken with him for fifteen years.

EXERCISE 48e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blow out, 43    con into, 46    pull out, 47    talk into, 46  
brush up, 47    con out of, 46    put in into, 47    talk out of, 46  
bump into, 46    move in into, 47    stick out, 32    turn over, 45  
carry away, 44    move out, 47    stress out, 44    turn up, 45

1. Your work isn't very good. You ought to \_\_\_\_\_ more effort \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. I was so mad at my boss that I almost quit my job. Fortunately, my wife \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. Did you see Mike's house? He said he was going to put a few Christmas tree lights on the roof, but there must be 5,000. I guess he got \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Don't let that crooked contractor \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ any money for unnecessary home repairs.
5. France was a member of NATO until it \_\_\_\_\_ in 1966.
6. Don't quit now, we're almost finished. You've just got to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for a little while longer.
7. What a surprise! I \_\_\_\_\_ Bob at the train station yesterday. I hadn't seen him in years.

8. The police acted on a tip that the suspect would be at the bus station on Saturday morning, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.



9. If you're not careful that crook will \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ selling him your land for a lot less than it's worth.
10. Mike used to speak Arabic pretty well, but he ought to \_\_\_\_\_ before he goes to Egypt.
11. How could I have been \_\_\_\_\_ doing something stupid?
12. The apartment has been cleaned and painted. You can \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ any time you want.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_. I want to see what's on the other side.
14. Living with Sam is driving me crazy — I have to \_\_\_\_\_.
15. After you make a wish you can \_\_\_\_\_ the candles.
16. Living in a house with seven dogs is really \_\_\_\_\_ my cat \_\_\_\_\_.
49. FOCUS ON: combinations of get, right, back, and to

The focus of this section is an expanded definition of the two-word phrasal verb *get to* and the three-word phrasal verb *get back to*. The purpose is to try to make some sense out of a seemingly limitless number of idiomatic combinations of *get*, *to*, and various particles and adverbs, in particular *right* and *back*, and to demonstrate that many phrasal verbs comprised of *get* and a particle are actually variations of *get to* that can be modified with *right* and/or *back*.

Remember that *back* is sometimes part of a phrasal verb and sometimes an adverb used to modify a phrasal verb (review Section 26), although we will see that there is often no difference in meaning between the phrasal verb *get back (to)*, discussed in Section 42, and the phrasal verb *get to* modified by *back* (*get back to*).

The numbers in the chart correspond with the meanings in the definitions.

*get to*

1. Although the phrasal verb *get to* is defined here as meaning *arrive*, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs that were discussed in Section 42:

Bill *got to* Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria.)

Bill *got back to* Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria.)

Bill *got up to* Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the south.)

Bill *got down to* Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the north.)

380

Bill *got over to* Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or west.)

Bill *got out to* Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or from a larger city.)

We see that *get back (to)*, *get up (to)*, *get down (to)*, *get over (to)*, and *get out (to)* are variations of *get to* but with additional information. These verbs

can be modified with *right*, meaning immediately, quickly, or directly (see Section 10):

Bill *got right back to* Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria quickly.)

381

*Get to work* has two meanings, similar but not the same. *Get to work* can refer to an arrival at a place where someone works:

Ann *got to work*. (Ann arrived at the place where she works.)

But *get to work* (see meaning 3) can also mean start working, without any reference to a change of location:

Joe *got to work*. (Joe started working.)

Joe *got back to work*. (Joe started working again.)

Joe *got right to work*. (Joe started working immediately.)

Joe *got right back to work*. (Joe started working again immediately.)

The difference in these two meanings is illustrated by the following sentence:

I got to work at 9:00, but I didn't get to work until 10:00, which can be paraphrased as I arrived at my office at 9:00, but I didn't start working until 10:00.

2. Although the phrasal verb **get to** is defined here as meaning reach a certain level, number, or amount, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs discussed in Section 42:

Jane got to 120 pounds.

Jane got back to 120 pounds. (Jane weighs 120 pounds again.)

Jane got up to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh less than 120 pounds.)

Jane got down to 120 pounds. Jane used to weigh more than 120 pounds.)

We see that **get back (to)**, **get up (to)**, and **get down (to)** are variations of **get to** but with additional information.

**Get up (to)** and **get down (to)** can be modified by **back**:

Jane got back up to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, lost weight, and then gained it back.)

Jane got back down to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, gained weight, and then lost it.)

3. If you start to do something, you **get to** it:

I'll try to **get to** my homework after dinner.

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later start to do it again, you **get back to** it:

I'll try to **get back to** my homework after dinner.

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later quickly start to do it again, you **get right back to** it:

I'll try to **get right back to** my homework after dinner.

Remember that when both **right** and **back** are used, **right** always comes first:

I'll try to **get back right to** my homework after dinner.

382

**get back to**

1. **Get back to** is a three-word verb meaning talk to someone again later. **Get back to** does not vary in form — neither **back** nor **to** is optional.

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
<b>dog up</b>	<b>clog up</b>	<b>clogs up</b>	<b>dogging up</b>	<b>clogged up</b>

1. **clog... up p.v.** When people or things **clog up** a drain or something else that liquids must flow through, they put something in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

Don't pour that bacon grease in the sink — you'll **clog the drain up**.

Dr. Smith said my arteries were so **clogged up** by plaque deposits that it was a miracle I was still alive.

**clogged up part.adj.** When a drain or something else that liquids must flow through is **clogged up**, something is in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

The mechanic told me that the engine valves in my car were **clogged up**.

**get ahead**

<b>get ahead</b>	<b>gets ahead</b>	<b>getting ahead</b>	<b>got ahead</b>	<b>gotten/got ahead</b>
------------------	-------------------	----------------------	------------------	-------------------------

1. **get ahead p.v.** When you **get ahead**, you become more successful and make progress in your job or your life.

With your pessimistic attitude, you'll never **get ahead**.

**Getting ahead** is pretty easy when your father owns the company.

**get back to**

<b>get back to</b>	<b>gets back to</b>	<b>getting back to</b>	<b>got back to</b>	<b>gotten/got back to</b>
--------------------	---------------------	------------------------	--------------------	---------------------------

1. get back to p.v. When you get back to people, you talk to them later, usually because you do not have time to talk to them at the time or because you will have information for them later that you do not have now.

I don't have time to talk now; I'm really busy. Can I get back to you ?

That real estate agent still hasn't gotten back to me to let me know if our offer was accepted.

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get on	get on & gets on	getting on	got on	gotten / got on

1. get on p.v. When you move your body toward something and stand, sit, or lie on it, you get on it.

The nurse asked me to take off my shirt and get on the examination table.

If you get on that chair you can reach the top shelf.

2. get on p.v. When you mount an animal, bicycle, motorcycle, and so on, you get on it.

Getting on a camel isn't as easy as getting on a horse.

The children got back on their bikes and went home.

3. get on p.v. When you enter a bus, train, airplane, ship, and so on, you get on it.

The bus stopped so that I could get on.

Only people who are going on the cruise can get on the ship.

4. get... on p.v. When you get an item of clothing on, you put it on your body.

Get your coat on. It's cold outside.

These gloves are too small. I can't get them on.

5. get on (with) p.v. When you continue doing something, you get on, get on with what you were doing, or get on with it.

It's getting late. If we're going to finish this work today we'd better get on with it.

I didn't say you could stop! Get on with your work.

get to

get to & gets to	getting to	got to	gotten / got to
------------------	------------	--------	-----------------

1. get... to p.v. When you get to a place, you arrive there. When you get people to a place, you help them to go there or take them there. When you get to work, you arrive at the place where you work.

Sarah left her house at 8:30 and got to the beach at 9:15.

When I get to Tokyo, I'll call to let you know I arrived safely.

Frank got fired because he kept getting to work late.

I went to the restaurant across the street for lunch, and I didn't get back to work until 2:30.

2. get to p.v. When things or people get to a certain level, number, or amount, they reach it.

It sure was hot yesterday. It must have gotten to 100 degrees.

When I run, I always try to get to five miles before I quit.

3. get to p.v. When you get to something that you want or need to do, you find the time to do it. When you get to work, you start working.

I didn't have time to do the ironing last night. I'll try to get to it tonight.

Karen finally got back to her school project yesterday. She hadn't worked on it for weeks.

You've wasted the entire morning. When are you going to get to work?

My boss told me to get off the phone and get back to work.

4. get to p.v. [informal] When you get to doing something, you begin to do it gradually.

Dad got to thinking that maybe we ought to move to Los Angeles and try to find work there.

384

After seeing all those strange lights in the sky, I got to wondering if maybe UFOs really exist after all.

5. get to p.v. When you get to do something, you are allowed to do it or are able to do it.

Timmy was excited because he got to ride a pony.

I hope I get to shake the President's hand after his speech.

6. get to p.v. When something gets to you, it bothers or annoys you, either psychologically or physically.

Jim's constant complaining is really starting to get to his wife.

Let's sit down and rest — this heat is getting to me.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hang on	hang on & hangs on	hanging on	hung on

1. hang on (to) p.v. When you hang on or hang on to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. Hold on is similar to hang on.

I fell off the horse because I wasn't hanging on tightly enough.

If she'd hung on to my hand, she wouldn't have fallen off the cliff.

2. hang on p.v. [informal] When you hang on, you wait for a short time. Hold on is the same as hang on.

Hang on for a minute — I'll be right back.

Judy's coming to the phone now — can you hang on?

start off

start off & starts off	starting off	started off	started off
------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. start off (with/by) p.v. When an activity or event starts off, it begins. When you start an activity or event off with something, you begin with it. When you start an activity or event off by doing something, you begin by doing it.

The singer started the concert off with a song from her latest CD.

Many speakers like to start off a speech by telling a joke.

2. start off p.v. When people or things start off a certain way, they are this way at the beginning of a process that changes them. Start out is similar to start off.

The day started off nice, but it got cold and cloudy.

I thought the movie was good, but it started off kind of boring.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
throw away	throw away & throws away	throwing away	threw away
			thrown away

1. throw... away p.v. When you throw something away, you dispose of it by

385

putting it in the wastebasket, trash, and so on. Throw out is the same as throw away.

If you're finished with these papers, throw them away.

Nancy's outside looking in the trash for her wedding ring; it was accidentally thrown away.

2. throw... away p.v. When you throw away something important or valuable, you foolishly do something that causes you to lose it.

This is your last chance to save your marriage, so don't throw it away.

When I got mad and quit my job, I threw away a chance to become vice-president of the company.

EXERCISE 49a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We were lucky that the floodwater didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the second floor.
  2. These steps have ice on them, so \_\_\_\_\_ to my arm.
  3. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ work at 8:40.
  4. It's important to \_\_\_\_\_ your day \_\_\_\_\_ with a good breakfast.
  5. I never used to care about Maria's bad attitude, but now it's starting to \_\_\_\_\_ me.
  6. I'm a little busy now. Give me your phone number, and I'll \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ you.
  7. Go \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes \_\_\_\_\_ — we're leaving in a minute.
  8. Ann cut her hair in the bathroom, and she \_\_\_\_\_ the sink \_\_\_\_\_ with hair.
  9. Don't let the baby \_\_\_\_\_ the table — he might fall off.
  10. If you hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ the theater late, you wouldn't have missed the beginning of the movie.
  11. \_\_\_\_\_ all that junk in the garage made a lot more room.
  12. As Jerry was \_\_\_\_\_ the train, he realized that he had forgotten his ticket.
  13. Whenever I \_\_\_\_\_ feeling depressed, I call my mother.
  14. If you want to \_\_\_\_\_ in this world, you need a good education.
  15. The trail to the top of the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ level, but then it gets steeper and steeper.
- 386

16. Maybe you should \_\_\_\_\_ with your work and stop wasting time.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ for a couple of minutes — I'm almost ready.
18. This is a great opportunity. Don't be stupid and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
19. I know you're busy, but when do you think you might have time to \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ fixing that leak in the roof?
20. I waited outside Mr. Baker's office for two hours, but I never \_\_\_\_\_ talk to him.
21. Madeleine fell off her bike, but she \_\_\_\_\_ right back \_\_\_\_\_ again.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ work! This has to be finished in three hours, and you haven't even started.

EXERCISE 49b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Linda's three-year-old daughter can't put her shoes on. What can't Linda's three-year-old daughter do?
2. Luis started to feel a little depressed. What did Luis do?
3. Marvin had a nice family and a good job, but he lost them because of drugs. What did Marvin do to his family and job?
4. After I take a break, I'm going to continue working immediately. What am I going to do?
5. Betty doesn't have the information I want, so she's going to call me when she does. What is Betty going to do?
6. The sewer drain became blocked by dead leaves. What happened to the sewer drain?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the sewer drain after it became blocked?
8. Ned has never arrived at his office after 9:30. What has Ned never done?
9. You continued with your work. What did you do?
10. When the temperature inside the turkey reaches 190 degrees, take it out of the oven. When should the turkey be taken out of the oven?

11. Bill said that he couldn't wait any longer. What did Bill say?
12. My taxes are due in three days, so I've got to do them tonight. What have I got to do?
13. Sam's birth certificate must have been accidentally put in the trash. What must have happened to Sam's birth certificate?
14. Dan showed me how to mount a horse. What did Dan show me?
15. Their marriage began well, but things got worse. What did their marriage do?
16. My brother told me that I shouldn't let it bother me. What did my brother tell me?
17. Alex was allowed to pet a baby tiger at the zoo. What happened to Alex?
18. The mountain climber held the rope tightly. What did the mountain climber do?
19. Mike went to the diving board and stood on it. What did Mike do?
20. The bus driver stepped out of the bus to check the tires, and then he entered the bus again immediately. What did the bus driver do after he checked the tires?
21. It's been only fifteen minutes since Heather left. She could not have arrived at the airport already. What couldn't Heather have done already?
22. The salesperson always begins his presentation by introducing himself. What does the salesperson always do?
23. Having an MBA should help you to progress in your career. What should an MBA do?

EXERCISE 49c — Write five original sentences using get to and get back to. Try to use right and back in some of the sentences.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 49d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

close down, 48 get over, 42 look down on, 48 switch on, 48

come into, 47 knock out, 48 look up to, 48 throw out, 48

cut back, 47 know about, 33 put back, 48 trick into, 35

get off on, 40 let into, 41 switch off, 48 turn down, 45

1. The company has decided to save money by \_\_\_\_\_ on advertising.
2. Look at the arrival monitor to see if his plane has \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
3. That sneaky car salesperson \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ paying for a lot of options I didn't want.
4. Those shoes are so ugly. Why don't you just \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Anyone who has done as much good for other people as he has deserves to be \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Charles used to \_\_\_\_\_ me because he went to college and I didn't.
7. What do you \_\_\_\_\_ changing the meeting from Tuesday to Wednesday? No one has said anything to me about it.
8. The opening of the new factory had to be \_\_\_\_\_ because some equipment hadn't been delivered.



9. Janice loves to cook, and she especially \_\_\_\_\_ baking fancy pastries.
10. The antigovernment newspaper was \_\_\_\_\_ by the dictator.
11. Rio de Janeiro is so beautiful. It \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ when I saw it.
12. Jim asked Lydia to marry him, but she \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
13. That chimney is \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of cold air \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Most people \_\_\_\_\_ a cold in four or five days.
15. If it gets too cold in here, \_\_\_\_\_ the air conditioner.
16. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the lights \_\_\_\_\_ please, it's getting dark.

389

#### 50. FOCUS ON: Keep at it!

I hope the time and effort you've put into finding out more about phrasal verbs has paid off. If you've knocked yourself out, stuck with it, and not fallen behind or gotten mixed up or burned out, a great improvement in your ability to understand and use English has come about — you've ended up being better able to figure out what you read and hear and better able to come up with the right word when you write or speak. But don't get stressed out and give up if you can't remember every meaning of every verb — improving your vocabulary takes time. It comes down to regularly brushing up on what you have learned and, when you come across a word you don't know, looking it up in a dictionary. Keep at it!

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
ask out	ask out & asks out	asking out	asked out

1. ask... out p.v. When you ask people out, you ask them to go with you to a place of entertainment in order to have fun and spend time together.

Being asked out by Tom was quite a surprise to Judy.

The Bakers called and asked the Ortegas out.

come down to

come down to & comes down to	coming down to	came down to	come down to
------------------------------	----------------	--------------	--------------

1. come down to p.v. When the key to understanding a situation or problem is knowledge and consideration of a certain aspect of the situation or problem, this aspect of the situation or problem is what the situation or problem comes down to.

Learning a language comes down to practice, practice, practice.

Our marriage problems aren't really that complicated. What it comes down to is whether you're willing to deal with your drinking problem.

deal with

deal with & deals with	dealing with	dealt with	dealt with
------------------------	--------------	------------	------------

1. deal with p.v. When you deal with a project or a problem, you do what you must do to complete the project or to solve the problem.

There are many problems, but I can deal with only one at a time.

After school the principal will deal with the boys who broke the window.

2. deal with p.v. When a book, film, article, speech, and so on, deals with a certain subject, that is what it is about.

The governor's speech dealt with the growing crime rate.

I read an interesting article dealing with the issue of legalizing marijuana.

390



present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hold on	hold on & holds on	holding on	held on / held on

1. hold on (to) p.v. When you hold on or hold on to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. Hang on is similar to hold on.

When the horse jumped over the fence, I held on as hard as I could.

Hold on to the rail when you get out of the bathtub — it's slippery.

2. hold on (to) p.v. When you hold on or hold on to people, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from leaving. When you hold on or hold on to things, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from being taken.

Sam grabbed the robber's legs and held on while the guard handcuffed her.

We were holding on to each other as the tornado passed.

3. hold on p.v. [informal] When you hold on, you wait for a short time. Hang on is the same as hold on.

Can you hold on just a little longer? I'll be right with you.

I've been holding on for fifteen minutes. I can't wait any longer.

pay back

pay back & pays back	paying back	paid back	paid back
----------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

1. pay... back p.v. When you pay people back, you give them money that you borrowed from them.

Would you lend me \$200? I'll pay you back next Friday when I get paid.

Mark has never been paid back for all his sister's medical bills.

2. pay... back (for) p.v. When you pay people back or pay people back for something bad they have done to you, you do something bad to them.

I'll pay that guy back for the terrible things he's done to me if it takes the rest of my life.

Jake shot Hank to pay him back for turning him in to the police.

take up on

take up on & takes up on	taking up on	took up on	taken up on
--------------------------	--------------	------------	-------------

1. take... up on p.v. When you take people up on an offer, you accept their offer.

My brother has invited us many times to visit him in Hawaii, and last winter we took him up on the offer.

Nicole has never taken me up on my offer to lend her the money she needs for her dental bills.

present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn around			

turn around & turns around	turning around	turned around	turned around
----------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

391

1. turn ... around p.v. When you turn around, you move a vehicle or your body so that it faces the opposite direction. When you turn something around, you move it so that it faces the opposite direction.

Someone called my name, and I turned around to see who it was.

You should turn this house plant around so that the other side can get some light.

2. turn ...around p.v. When you turn around a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and so on, you improve it so that it is successful.

Turning this money-losing company around is going to take several years.

The quarterback completed four passes in the last five minutes of the football game and completely turned it around.

turnaround n. A turnaround is a major improvement in a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and soon. We won the game in a last-minute turnaround.

This company was losing money, but there's been a major turnaround since the new manager took over.

wear out

wear out & wears out      wearing out      wore out      worn out

1. wear... out p.v. When something wears out or you wear it out, it becomes damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

People who live in the city wear out their car brakes faster than people who live in the country.

The carpet in the hallway wore out and had to be replaced.

worn-out part. adj. When something is worn-out, it has become damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

I need new running shoes. These are totally worn-out.

2. wear... out p.v. When something wears you out, it makes you very tired.

Playing with his grandchildren really wore Fred out.

Shoveling snow for three hours would wear anyone out.

worn-out part.adj. When something has made you very tired, you are worn-out. I have to sit down and rest for a minute — I'm worn-out.

EXERCISE 50a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I lent Sally \$1,000 last year, but she still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Children usually get too big for their clothes long before the clothes \_\_\_\_\_.

392

3. The company's new CEO promised the shareholders that he would \_\_\_\_\_ the company \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Judy told me that she said all those terrible things about me at work to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ for stealing her boyfriend.

5. Dr. Wood's new book \_\_\_\_\_ with preventive medicine.

6. Carrying those boxes of books up to the attic \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Like so many things in life, this problem \_\_\_\_\_ money.

8. Jim drove right past Bob's house, so he had to \_\_\_\_\_ and go back.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ to my hand, Susie — it's very crowded here, and I don't want you to get lost.

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ that problem yesterday, so you don't need to worry about it anymore.

11. Linda isn't sure who she'll go to the dance with, but she said she might \_\_\_\_\_ Todd \_\_\_\_\_.

12. It was so windy that I had to \_\_\_\_\_ to a signpost to keep from falling over.

13. Mike has invited me to his house for dinner several times, but I've never \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ the offer.

14. \_\_\_\_\_ just a minute! Where do you think you're going?

EXERCISE 50b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom's been waiting for ten minutes. What has Tom been doing?

2. My shoes have holes in the bottom, and now I can't wear them. What has happened to my shoes?

3. In Question 2, how would you describe my shoes?

4. The country's economy was bad, but now it's improving. What is the country's economy doing?
5. The main thing that Lydia will consider when she chooses a college is how good the MBA program is. What is important to Lydia in choosing a college?
6. You called Betty and asked her to go to a movie. What did you do?

393

7. Bill's baseball team was way behind, but they ended up winning the game. What would you call the game?
8. Mike lent Frank \$20, and tomorrow Frank is going to give Mike \$20. What is going to happen to Mike tomorrow?
9. Sarah asked me if I would like her to come to my house to help me with my homework, and I said yes. What did I do?
10. Ms. Cummings will do whatever she needs to do to solve the problem after dinner. What will Ms. Cummings do after dinner?
11. The purse snatcher couldn't take my mother's purse because she held it tightly in her hand. What did my mother do to her purse?
12. Shampooing the carpet was a lot of work, and it made Janice really tired. What did shampooing the carpet do to Janice?
13. In Question 12, how did Janice feel after shampooing the carpet?

EXERCISE 50c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 50d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from this section and previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

beat-up, 44    mixed up, 44    turned off, 45  
 built-in, 46    pissed off, 44    turned on, 45  
 clogged up, 49    stressed-out, 44    worn-out, 50  
 grossed out, 43    switched off, 48

locked up, 44    switched on, 48

394

1. Trying to take care of my family and work full-time has made me really \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You should get rid of those \_\_\_\_\_ shoes and buy some new ones.
3. I felt really \_\_\_\_\_ after dancing the merengue with Maria.
4. Maria seemed a little \_\_\_\_\_ when she saw my big belly hanging over my belt.

5. While I was driving on the interstate, about a billion bugs splattered all over the windshield. I was really \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My car looks pretty \_\_\_\_\_, but it runs all right.
7. This sink is all \_\_\_\_\_. We'll have to call a plumber.
8. Could you help me with my calculus homework? I don't understand it at all, and I'm totally \_\_\_\_\_.
9. You should keep guns \_\_\_\_\_ if there are children in the house.
10. Mike's really \_\_\_\_\_ about having to work on Sunday. He was planning to go to the football game, but now he can't.
11. Most computers today have a \_\_\_\_\_ CD-ROM drive.
12. I like to leave the radio \_\_\_\_\_ when I'm not home so that burglars will think that someone is at home.
13. It sure is hot in here. Why is the air conditioner \_\_\_\_\_?

EXERCISE 50e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

build in into, 46 get on, 49 throw away, 49 turn off, 45  
 clog up, 49 get to, 49 turn down, 45 turn on, 45  
 get ahead, 49 hang on, 49 turn in, 45 turn out, 45  
 get back to, 49 make for, 46 turn into, 45 turn up, 45

1. Jake was nice when he was a boy, but as he got older he \_\_\_\_\_ a criminal.
2. Stop bothering me about washing the dishes — I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it when I have time.
- 395

3. The teacher said, "After you \_\_\_\_\_ your tests, you can leave."
4. These stereo speakers weren't added later; they were \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.
5. Business has been very good; in fact, this may \_\_\_\_\_ to be our best year ever.
6. I'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ you — I don't have time to talk now.
7. If I had known you wanted those old clothes, I wouldn't have \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It was getting dark, so I \_\_\_\_\_ the light.
9. I've gained so much weight that I can't \_\_\_\_\_ these pants \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Having a good education helped me to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. \_\_\_\_\_, I'm almost ready.
12. It's too hot in here; could you \_\_\_\_\_ the heat \_\_\_\_\_ a little?
13. My father said, "\_\_\_\_\_ the TV \_\_\_\_\_ and do your homework."
14. Who put all this stuff in the sink and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
15. The champagne, flowers, and gourmet dinner \_\_\_\_\_ a very special evening.
16. It's hot in here; who keeps \_\_\_\_\_ the heat?

EXERCISE 50f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from this section and previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

ask out, 50 get ahead, 49 hold on, 50 start off, 49  
 come down to, 50 get back to, 49 pay back, 50 take up on, 50  
 deal with, 50 get to, 49 put in into, 47 turn around, 50  
 freak out, 46 give out, 43 run out, 47 wear out, 50

1. I like to go to the supermarket on Saturday because they \_\_\_\_\_ free samples.
  2. My teacher said that my project wasn't very good and that it was obvious I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ much effort \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  3. Don't lend money to Marvin; he'll never \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
- 396
4. Thanks for inviting me to go sailing with you. I just might \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the offer someday.
  5. Sergeant Jones \_\_\_\_\_ the problem in his usual efficient manner.
  6. We're \_\_\_\_\_ of coffee. Can you make some more?
  7. Jim likes Maria, but he's too shy to \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. Nowadays, it's hard to \_\_\_\_\_ in the business world if you don't know something about computers.
  9. Janice was talking to her father on the other telephone line when I called, so she asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ for just a minute while she said good-bye to him.
  10. Ann used to have a lot of problems, but she has \_\_\_\_\_ her life \_\_\_\_\_, and now she is very happy and successful in her job.
  11. I called the restaurant manager to complain about the bad food we were served yesterday, a she said she would investigate and \_\_\_\_\_ me.
  12. Heather was very excited that she had \_\_\_\_\_ go backstage after the concert and meet the band.
  13. We had a hard time deciding which of the two houses to buy. We liked both of them, but it \_\_\_\_\_ which one was in a better school district.
  14. I'm not as young as I used to be. That fifteen-mile hike \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
  15. I hate walking through cemeteries at night; it really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
  16. The president of the company \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ by welcoming everyone.

### Index of Phrasal Verbs by Section

The number after each phrasal verb is the section in which that phrasal verb is described.

aim at, 19	come over, 17	get off on, 40	keep down, 38	plan for, 4	step on, 21
ask for, 29	come through, 15	get on, 49	keep from, 38	plan on, 31	stick a round, 34
ask out, 50	come up, 12	get out, 42	keep off, 38	plug in, 41	stick out, 32
back down, 36	come up with, 6	get out of, 6	keep on, 38	plug up, 22	stick to, 34
back off, 12	con into, 46	get over, 42	keep to, 38	point out, 7	stick up, 14
back up, 11	con out of, 46	get over with, 3	keep up, 38	point to, 4	stick with, 40
beat up, 44	cool off, 19	get through, 16	kick back, 10	print out, 24	stop off, 43
beef up, 28	count on, 16	get to, 49	kick out, 44	pull off, 33	stop over, 24
believe in, 16	count up, 22	get together, 26	knock off, 27	pull out, 47	straighten out, 39
bite off, 27	cover up, 37	get up, 42	knock out, 48	pull over, 19	stress out, 44
blow away, 15	crack down, 23	give away, 28	knock over, 25	pull through, 2	switch off, 48
blow off, 40	cross off, 39	give back, 1	know about, 33	punch in, 30	switch on, 48
blow out, 43	cut back, 47	give in, 2	lay down, 36	punch out, 30	take apart, 7
blow up, 33	cut down, 23	give out, 43	lay off, 10	put away, 14	take back, 34
boil down to, 6	cut off, 11	give up, 9	lead up to, 34	put back, 48	take in, 7
break down, 5	cut out, 31	go about, 17	leave behind, 35	put down, 36	take off, 1
break in, 41	cut up, 7	go after, 4	leave off, 13	put in, 47	take out, 11

break off, 27	deal with, 50	go ahead, 10	leave out, 32	put off, 31	take out on, 21
break out, 9	do away with, 31	go along with, 3	leave over, 37	put on, 1	take over, 39
breakthrough, 18	do over, 34	go around, 20	let down, 37	put out, 30	take up on, 50
break up, 28	do with, 25	go away, 40	let in, 41	put past, 16	talk down to, 3
bring back, 19	do without, 31	go back, 19	let in on, 26	put to, 4	talk into, 46
bring over, 19	doze off, 2	go back on, 6	let off, 13	put together, 26	talk out of, 46
bring up, 40	dress up, 14	go beyond, 18	let out, 7	put up, 12	talk to, 37
brush off, 37	drop in, 29	go by, 35	let up, 24	put up to, 34	tear down, 8
brush up, 47	drop off, 11	go down, 36	lie around, 20	put up with, 3	tear off, 27
build in, 46	drop out, 23	go for, 16	lift up, 18	ring up, 8	tell apart, 18
bump into, 46	dry off, 27	go in, 41	light up, 13	rip off, 44	tell on, 15
burn down, 5	dry out, 15	go in for, 3	lighten up, 25	rip up, 17	think about, 16
burn out, 8	dry up, 14	go off, 20	line up, 18	rule out, 31	think ahead, 21
burn up, 22	eat up, 22	go on, 20	live with, 35	run across, 29	think up, 25
burst out, 40	empty out, 32	go out, 32	lock in, 30	run around, 40	throw away, 49
butt in, 14	end up, 20	go over, 26	lock out, 30	run down, 36	throw out, 48
call back, 28	fail apart, 17	go through with, 6	lock up, 44	run into, 1	throw up, 2
call in, 5	fall behind, 33	go up, 26	look around, 21	run out, 47	track down, 1
call off, 13	fall down, 36	go with, 15	look at, 5	run over, 7	trade in, 24
call up, 28	fall for, 2	goof around, 33	look down on, 48	run up, 43	trick into, 35
calm down, 36	fall off, 10	gross out, 43	look for, 1	screw on, 12	try on, 43
care for, 31	fall out, 32	grow out of, 17	look forward to, 3	screw out of, 3	try out, 11
carry away, 44	fall over, 8	grow up, 10	look into, 31	screw up, 10	turn around, 50
carry on, 16	fall through, 12	hand back, 5	look out, 29	see about, 7	turn down, 45
carry out, 28	feel up to, 3	hand in, 13	look over, 21	sell out, 39	turn in, 45
catch on, 33	fight back, 8	hand out, 10	look up, 4	set up, 5	turn into, 45
catch up, 9	figure on, 18	hand over, 19	look up to, 48	settle down, 21	turn off, 45
cheat on, 4	figure out, 1	hang around, 20	luck out, 29	settle for, 25	turn on, 45
check in, 41	fill in, 10	hang on, 49	make for, 46	shake up, 24	turn out, 45
check out, 41	fill out, 14	hang out, 37	make of, 35	show off, 24	turn over, 45
chicken out, 9	fill up, 39	hang up, 9	make out, 29	show up, 1	turn up, 45
chop up, 39	find out, 5	have on, 25	make up, 23	shut off, 26	use up, 14
clean out, 32	fix up, 15	head back, 15	mess up, 28	shut up, 43	wake up, 11
clear out, 32	flip out, 29	head for, 15	mix up, 44	sign in, 12	warm up, 19
clear up, 22	float around, 34	head into, 17	monkey around	sign out, 12	wash off, 27
clog up, 49	follow up, 11	head toward, 43	with, 6	sit down, 36	wash up, 30
close down, 48	fool around, 35	hear about, 2	move in, 47	slow down, 24	watch out, 23
close off, 13	freak out, 46	hear of, 8	move out, 47	sneak in, 41	wear down, 17
come about, 33	get a head, 49	heat up, 22	narrow down, 35	sneak out, 41	wear off, 27
come across, 12	get along, 9	help out, 33	open up, 26	sort out, 30	wear out, 50
come apart, 29	get around to, 6	hit on, 13	pay back, 50	space out, 30	wind up, 14
come back, 40	get away, 23	hold against, 35	pay for, 4	stand around, 18	wipe off, 27
come down, 24	get back, 42	hold off, 16	pay off, 37	stand for, 34	wipe out, 39
come down to, 50	get back at, 17	hold on, 50	pay up, 22	stand up, 28	wipe up, 22
come down with, 6	get back to, 49	hold out, 23	pick on, 21	start off, 49	work in, 8



come from, 1	get behind, 42	hold up, 7	pick out, 8	start out, 20	work out, 11
come in, 47	get by, 42	hook up, 9	pick up, 39	start up, 26	work up, 9
come off, 2	get down, 42	hurry up, 25	pile up, 5	stay off, 2	wrap up, 4
come on, 37	get in, 42	keep at, 38	piss off, 44	stay out, 23	zip up, 21
come out, 32	get off, 18	keep away, 38	plan ahead, 25	stay up, 20	

come from

figure out

give back

look for

put on

run into

show up

take off

come off

doze off

fall for

give in

hear about

pull through

stay off

throw up

feel up to

get over with

go along with

go in for

look forward to

put up with

screw out of

talk down to

cheat on

go after

look up

pay for

plan for

point to

put to

wrap up

break down

burn down

call in

find out

hand back





look at  
setup  
boil down to  
come down with  
come up with  
get around to  
get out of  
go back on  
go through with  
monkey around with  
cut up  
hold up  
let out  
point out  
run over  
see about  
take in  
burn out  
fall over  
fight back  
hear of  
pick out  
tear down  
work in  
break out  
catch up  
chicken out  
get along  
give up  
hang up  
hook up  
work up  
fall off  
kick back  
lay off  
screw up  
backup  
cut off  
drop off  
follow up  
take out  
try out  
wake up  
work out  
back off



come across  
come up  
fall through  
put out  
call off  
dose off  
hand in  
let off  
light up  
track down  
butt in  
dress up  
dry up  
fill out  
put away  
stick up  
use up  
blow away  
come through  
dry out  
fix up  
go with  
head back  
tell on  
believe in  
carry on  
count on  
get through  
go for  
hold off  
put past  
think about  
come over  
get back at  
go about  
grow out of  
rip up  
wear down  
breakthrough  
figure on  
get off  
go beyond  
lift upon  
line up  
stand around



tell apart  
aim at  
bring back  
bring over  
cool off  
go back  
hand over  
pull over  
warm up  
end up  
go around  
Go off  
hang around  
lie around  
start out  
stay up  
look around  
look over  
pick on  
settle down  
step on  
take out on  
think ahead  
zip up  
burn up  
clear up  
count up  
eat up  
heat up  
pay up  
plug up  
wipe up  
crack down  
cut down  
drop out  
get away  
hold out  
make up  
stay out  
watch out  
come down  
Let up  
print out  
show off  
slow down



stop over  
trade in  
do with  
have on  
hurry up  
knock over  
lighten up  
plan ahead  
settle for  
think up  
get together  
go over  
go up  
let in on  
open up  
put together  
shut off  
start up  
bite off  
break off  
dry off  
knock off  
tear off  
wash off  
wear off  
wipe off  
beef up  
break up  
call back  
call up  
carry out  
give away  
mess up  
stand up  
ask for  
come apart  
drop in  
flip out  
look out  
luck out  
make out  
run across  
lock in  
Lock out  
punch in



put out  
sort out  
space out  
wash up  
care for  
cut out  
do away with  
do without  
look into  
plan on  
put off  
rule out  
clean out  
clear out  
come out  
empty out  
fall out  
go out  
leave out  
stick out  
blow up  
catch on  
come about  
fall behind  
goof around  
help out  
know about  
pull off  
do over  
float around  
lead up to  
put up to  
stand for  
stick around  
stick to  
take back  
fool around  
go by  
hold against  
leave behind  
live with  
make of  
narrow down  
trick into  
back down



calm down  
fall down  
go down  
lay down  
put down  
run down  
sit down  
brush off  
come on  
cover up  
hang out  
leave over left over  
Let down  
talk to  
keep at  
keep away  
keep down  
keep from  
keep off  
keep on  
keep to  
keep up  
chop up  
cross off  
fill up  
pick up  
sell out  
straighten out  
take over  
wipe out  
blow off  
burst out  
come back  
get off on  
go away  
run around  
stick with  
break in  
Check out  
go in  
let in  
plug in  
sneak in  
sneak out  
get back



get behind  
get down  
get in  
get out  
get over  
get up  
blow out  
give out  
gross out  
run up  
shut up  
stop off  
try on  
beat up  
mix up  
piss off  
rip off  
turn down  
turn in  
turn into  
turn off  
turn on  
turn out  
turn over  
turn up  
build in  
bump into  
con into  
con out of  
freak out  
make for  
talk into  
talk out of  
brush up  
come in  
cut back  
move in  
move out  
pull out  
put in  
run out  
close down  
knock out  
look down on  
look up to





put back  
switch off  
throw out  
dog up  
get ahead  
get back to  
get on  
get to  
hang on  
start off  
throw away  
ask out  
come down to  
deal with  
hold on  
pay back  
take up on  
turn around  
wear out

15. In Question 14, what would you call my second alarm clock?  
16. Nicole takes her friend to the train station every morning. What does Nicole do to her friend?  
17. I have an appointment with my doctor next month so that he can see if my surgery was successful. What would you call my appointment next month?  
18. Maria's plan isn't happening the way she expected. What isn't Maria's plan doing?  
19. Bill went with Judy to dinner and a movie and he paid for everything. What did Bill do?  
20. Two hundred guests at \$45 each calculates to \$9,000. What does 200 guests at \$45 each do?  
21. I have never stopped sleeping at 3:30 in the morning before. What have I never done before?

EXERCISE 11 e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

come from, 1	give back, 1	hand out, 10	look for, 1
fall off, 10	go ahead, 10	hear about, 2	screw out of, 3
feel up to, 3	go along with, 3	kick back, 10	screw up, 10
fill in, 10	grow up, 10	lay off, 10	stay off, 2

- If the company doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ 20 percent of its employees, it's going to go out of business.
- Blankets and boxes of food were \_\_\_\_\_ to the flood victims.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ in Germany because my father was in the Army there.
- Kathy didn't close her car window last night, and it rained. She really \_\_\_\_\_.
- You \_\_\_\_\_; I'll catch up with you later.
- The percentage of people who smoke \_\_\_\_\_ after smoking was linked with lung cancer and heart disease.

7. What can I do to get my black cat to \_\_\_\_\_ my white couch?
8. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment that allows dogs, but I can't find one.
9. He's \_\_\_\_\_ New York and will be here in two hours.
10. I was so stuffed from that huge dinner my mother cooked that I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ playing tennis afterward.
11. Their lawyer tried to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ \$ 120,000.
12. I don't feel like going anywhere tonight. Let's just \_\_\_\_\_ and take it easy.
13. I'm sorry I can't agree with you, Joe, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ Linda on this decision.
14. Here's my flashlight. Make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ when you're finished using it.
15. I didn't get 100 on the test because I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ one of the blanks.
16. This restaurant is wonderful. I'm surprised I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ it before.

